Workshop Manual
Audi Q3 2012 ➤
Audi Q3 China 2013 ➤
General body repairs, interior

Edition 09.2014

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

00 - Technical data
68 - Interior equipment
69 - Passenger protection
70 - Trim, insulation
72 - Seat frames
74 - Seat - padding, covers

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2015 Audi AG, Ingolstadt

Contents

00 - Technical data 1
1 Safety precautions 1
1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system 2
1.2 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components 3
1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components) 4
1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags 5
1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags 5
1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) 6
1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version 6
1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version 7
1.9 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident 7
1.10 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident 9
1.11 Accident in which no airbag was triggered 10
1.12 Checking seat belts 10
1.13 Checking belt 10
1.14 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action) 11
1.15 Visual inspection of belt buckle 12
1.16 Functional check of belt buckle 12
1.17 Checking guide fittings and latch plate 12
1.18 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident 12
1.19 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version) 13
1.20 Checking child seat anchors following an accident 13
1.21 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror 13
2 Notes on repairs 15
2.1 Contact corrosion 15
2.2 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring 15

68 - Interior equipment 16
1 Shelves / trim panels 16
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - shelves/covers/trim panels 16
1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side) 18
1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim 19
1.4 Exploded view - glove box 20
1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side) 21
1.6 Removing and installing trim cover for dash panel insert 22
1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (top) 23
1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom) 24
1.9 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism 24
1.10 Removing and installing glove box 25
1.11 Removing and installing glove box lid 28
1.12 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid 28
2 Equipment 29
2.1 Exploded view - sun visors 29
2.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover 30
2.3 Removing and installing sun visor 31
2.4 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor 31
2.5 Removing and installing grab handle 32
2.6 Removing and installing handle for luggage compartment cover 33
3 Centre console 34

Audi
Information in copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1 Exploded view - centre console . . . 34
3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear) . . . 39
3.3 Removing and installing ashtray (front) . . . 40
3.4 Removing and installing insert for centre console . . . 40
3.5 Removing and installing centre console storage box (front) . . . 42
3.6 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front) . . . 44
3.7 Removing and installing centre console . . . 45
3.8 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console . . . 49
3.9 Removing and installing cup holder . . . 50
3.10 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (rear) . . . 50
3.11 Removing and installing bracket for centre console . . . 51

4 Centre armrest (front) . . . 52
4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front) . . . 52
4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front) . . . 53
4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section) . . . 53

5 Interior mirror . . . 55
5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror . . . 55
5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror . . . 58
5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off . . . 61
5.4 Switching compass display on and off . . . 61
5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone . . . 61
5.6 Calibrating digital compass . . . 62
5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles . . . 62
5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map . . . 63
5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror . . . 68

69 - Passenger protection . . . 70

1 Seat belts . . . 70
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points . . . 70
1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front) . . . 72
1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 75
1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 76
1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front) . . . 77
1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear) . . . 78
1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) . . . 79
1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 82
1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (front) . . . 85
1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) . . . 86
1.11 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) . . . 87
1.12 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear) . . . 89
1.13 Removing and installing belt height adjuster . . . 90
1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (front) . . . 91
1.15 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) . . . 92

2 Child seat anchors . . . 93
2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front) . . . 93
2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear) . . . 94
2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front) . . . 96
2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear) . . . 97

3 Airbag system . . . 100
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system . . . 100

4 Airbag control unit . . . 102
4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit . . . 102
4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 . . . 102

5 Battery isolation igniter . . . 106

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter . . . 106
5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter . . . 106
6 Airbag (driver side) . . . 110
6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side) . . . 110
6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters . . . 111
6.3 Renewing connector at airbag . . . 114
7 Airbag (front passenger side) . . . 116
7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side) . . . 116
7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters . . . 117
7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag . . . 120
8 Side airbags . . . 123
8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front) . . . 123
8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear) . . . 124
8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter . . . 124
8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter . . . 125
9 Curtain airbags . . . 128
9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag . . . 128
9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter . . . 129
10 Crash sensors for airbags . . . 134
10.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags . . . 134
10.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283 . . . 136
10.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 . . . 140
10.4 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (rear) G256 / G257 . . . 144
11 Seat position sensor . . . 146
11.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor . . . 146
11.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor . . . 146
12 Belt-fastened recognition system . . . 149
12.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) G128 . . . 149
13 Seat occupied recognition system . . . 152
13.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system . . . 152
13.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor . . . 154
14 Deformation element . . . 158
14.1 Exploded view - deformation element . . . 158
14.2 Removing and installing deformation elements . . . 159

70 - Trim, insulation . . . 162
1 Door trim (front) . . . 162
1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front) . . . 162
1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim . . . 165
1.3 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim . . . 165
1.4 Removing and installing bass loudspeaker trim . . . 166
1.5 Removing and installing trim panel . . . 166
1.6 Removing and installing door trim (front) . . . 167
1.7 Removing and installing armrest (front) . . . 170
1.8 Removing and installing door puller (front) . . . 171
1.9 Removing and installing interior door handle . . . 172
1.10 Removing and installing window frame trim . . . 172
2 Door trim (rear) . . . 175
2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear) . . . 175
2.2 Removing and installing interior door handle . . . 177
2.3 Removing and installing door trim (rear) . . . 177
2.4 Removing and installing armrest (rear) . . . 180
2.5 Removing and installing door puller (rear) . . . 180
2.6 Removing and installing trim for window frame . . . 180

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Dash panel ... 183
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - dash panel ... 183
3.2 Exploded view - dash panel ... 184
3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side) ... 186
3.4 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel ... 187
3.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim ... 188
3.6 Removing and installing dash panel ... 190
3.7 Removing and installing dash panel vent ... 194
3.8 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre) ... 195
3.9 Removing and installing defroster vent (side) ... 196
4 Central tube for dash panel ... 197
4.1 Exploded view - central tube for dash panel ... 197
4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel ... 198
5 Passenger compartment trim panels ... 202
5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels ... 202
5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim ... 204
5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim ... 206
5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim ... 207
5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim ... 208
5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim ... 209
5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering ... 210
5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf ... 211
5.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim ... 211
5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim ... 214
5.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim ... 215
5.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim ... 217
5.13 Removing and installing D-pillar trim ... 219
5.14 Removing and installing foot rest ... 220
5.15 Removing and installing floor covering ... 221
5.16 Removing and installing rear shelf ... 222
6 Luggage compartment trim panels ... 223
6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels ... 223
6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim ... 225
6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor ... 226
6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom) ... 227
6.5 Exploded view - rear lid trim (top) ... 228
6.6 Exploded view - lock carrier trim ... 229
6.7 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) ... 229
6.8 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top) ... 231
6.9 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim ... 232
6.10 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor ... 233
6.11 Removing and installing fastening ring ... 234
6.12 Removing and installing bag hook ... 234
6.13 Removing and installing handle for luggage compartment floor (rear) ... 234
6.14 Removing and installing cover for warning triangle ... 236
6.15 Removing and installing tail light cover ... 236
6.16 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock ... 236
6.17 Removing and installing lock carrier trim ... 236
7 Roof trim panels ... 238
7.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim ... 238
7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner ... 239
7.3 Removing and installing moulded headliner ... 240
7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body ... 243
72 - Seat frames ... 245

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 Overview - seat versions . . . 245
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions . . . 245
1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand . . . 246
2 Front seats . . . 248
2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components . . . 248
2.2 Exploded view - front seat . . . 252
2.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest . . . 257
2.4 Exploded view - head restraint . . . 262
2.5 Exploded view - seat pan . . . 263
2.6 Removing and installing front seat . . . 278
2.7 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter . . . 284
2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit . . . 288
2.9 Removing and installing seat rake adjuster . . . 291
2.10 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit . . . 297
2.11 Removing and installing front seat backrest . . . 301
2.12 Removing and installing head restraint . . . 308
2.13 Removing and installing head restraint guide . . . 308
2.14 Dismantling and assembling seat pan . . . 310
2.15 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism . . . 329
2.16 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 . . . 330
2.17 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 . . . 330
2.18 Removing and installing heated front seats control unit J774 . . . 332
3 Rear seats . . . 333
3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats . . . 333
3.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism . . . 335
3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide . . . 336
3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest . . . 337
3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest . . . 339
3.6 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats . . . 340
3.7 Removing and installing head restraint . . . 340
3.8 Removing and installing head restraint guide . . . 341
3.9 Removing and installing rear seat backrest . . . 342
3.10 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism . . . 346
3.11 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest . . . 347
3.12 Removing and installing trim frame for load-through hatch . . . 347
3.13 Removing and installing flap for load-through hatch . . . 348
3.14 Removing and installing centre armrest . . . 349

74 - Seat - padding, covers . . . 351
1 Covers and padding on front seats . . . 351
1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding . . . 351
1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding . . . 354
1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding . . . 355
1.4 Overview - seat heating elements . . . 356
1.5 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding . . . 357
1.6 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding . . . 360
1.7 Separating seat pan cover and padding . . . 362
1.8 Separating backrest cover and padding . . . 364
1.9 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding . . . 364
1.10 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 . . . 367
1.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 . . . 369
2 Covers and padding on rear seats . . . 371
2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding . . . 371
2.2 Removing and installing cover and padding . . . 374
2.3 Detaching cover from padding . . . 377

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Safety precautions

(ARL004019; Edition 09.2014)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system”, page 2

⇒ “1.2 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components”, page 3

⇒ “1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)”, page 4

⇒ “1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags”, page 5

⇒ “1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags”, page 5

⇒ “1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)”, page 6

⇒ “1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version”, page 6

⇒ “1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version”, page 7

⇒ “1.9 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident”, page 7

⇒ “1.10 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident”, page 9

⇒ “1.11 Accident in which no airbag was triggered”, page 10

⇒ “1.12 Checking seat belts”, page 10

⇒ “1.13 Checking belt”, page 10

⇒ “1.14 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)”, page 11

⇒ “1.15 Visual inspection of belt buckle”, page 12

⇒ “1.16 Functional check of belt buckle”, page 12

⇒ “1.17 Checking guide fittings and latch plate”, page 12

⇒ “1.18 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident”, page 12

⇒ “1.19 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)”, page 13

⇒ “1.20 Checking child seat anchors following an accident”, page 13

⇒ “1.21 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror”, page 13

1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system

When performing repairs on vehicles with start/stop system, note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to automatic engine start on vehicles with start/stop system.

- ***On vehicles with activated start/stop system (indicated by a message in the instrument cluster), the engine may start automatically on demand.***

- *Therefore it is important to ensure that the start/stop system is deactivated when performing repairs (switch the ignition off, and if required switch the ignition on again).*

1.2 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components

Note

Pyrotechnic components are:

- Airbag units
- Belt tensioners
- Belt force limiters (depending on equipment version)
- Battery isolation elements (depending on equipment version)

General notes

- Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- There are no specified intervals for renewing airbag units.
- Never perform tests with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- Only check pyrotechnic components when they are installed in the vehicle and always use suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems which have been approved by the manufacturer.
- When working on the airbag system (pyrotechnic components, the airbag control unit - J234- , wiring), always disconnect the battery earth strap with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Subsequently cover negative terminal.
- After disconnecting the battery, you must wait for 10 seconds.
- The battery must be connected with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Make sure there is no one in the vehicle. Exception: Vehicles in which the battery is in the passenger compartment.
- If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.
- Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching earthed metal components such as the door striker plate.
- Always wash your hands after handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system which have been triggered.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).
- Pyrotechnic components which have been dropped onto a hard surface or which show signs of damage must not be used.
- Pyrotechnic components should be installed immediately after removing them from their packaging.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- If the work is interrupted, the pyrotechnic component should again be placed in its packaging.
- The pyrotechnic component must never be left unattended.
- When connecting pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, there should be no-one in the vehicle other than the person performing the work.
- Pyrotechnic components must never be treated with grease, cleaning agents or similar.
- Always renew airbag unit if fabric is contaminated by oil, grease, paint, solvent or similar.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be exposed to temperatures higher than 100 °C even for brief periods of time.

Special notes for driver's and front passenger's airbags

- Following removal, driver's and front passenger's airbag units must be stored with the cushioned side facing upwards.

Always keep to the following sequence when renewing airbag units:

1 - Remove old airbag unit and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.

2 - Take new airbag unit out of packaging and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.

3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in packaging.

4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

Special notes for belt tensioners

- When removing and installing belt tensioners, proceed very carefully. If belt tensioner units are not handled correctly, there is a high danger and injury risk.
- Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must always be renewed.
- Never point the open end of a belt tensioner at another person.
- When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical components (including those of the three-point seat belt) must be secured properly. Should there not be enough space to connect the belt tensioner unit, the belt must be retracted completely before connecting the tensioner unit. In this case, there is no increased safety risk if you observe the safety precautions, i.e. most importantly the mechanic must disconnect the battery and discharge static electricity before connecting the belt tensioner unit.
- Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. These components must be handled in the same way as non-ignited components.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)

- Storage must be in accordance with the statutory regulations of the countries in question.
- Transportation must be in accordance with the national and international guidelines which regulate the details of the packaging, marking, labelling and accompanying documents.

- Non-ignited pyrotechnic components must be disposed of in their original packaging and in accordance with national regulations. Please contact your importer if you require further information.
- Only pyrotechnic components that have been triggered completely may be disposed of with commercial refuse.

WARNING

- *This does not apply to belt tensioners which are Wankel-powered. These must be treated in the same manner as non-ignited pyrotechnic components (for example air-bags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).*
- *Reason: The workshop does not have the means to check whether the Wankel-type belt tensioners have ignited fully (in all ignition stages).*

1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags

- We recommend using genuine seat covers (same as original equipment).
- It is NOT permissible to use seat covers or protective covers which have not been approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags.
- The backrest foam fill must not be cut away in the area of the side airbag.
- When installing, make sure seam for side airbag is straight.
- All upholstery clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- We recommend using only genuine upholstery clips (same as original equipment).
- When installing, all new upholstery clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- For safety reasons, the cover should always be renewed if it is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the area of the side airbag, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- Never repair backrest cover in area of side airbag (due to special thread and precisely defined seam).
- Always renew backrest padding after side airbags have been triggered.
- All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.
- If side airbag units are renewed, remove sticker with airbag number from new side airbag unit and stick it over old sticker on seat pan.
- Never pierce the seat cover fabric with upholstery needles or other sharp objects in the vicinity of the airbag, seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- and the seat occupied sensor mat.

1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags

- Before carrying out any installation work always visually inspect trim for damage.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. ©Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Trim repairs (A-pillar trim (top), B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and D-pillar trim) are not permitted.
- When installing, make sure that trim panels are fitted securely.
- When carrying out repairs behind the curtain airbag, always remove the complete unit.
- When removing and installing curtain airbag units, proceed very carefully to prevent possible damage.
- After removal, store old curtain airbag units in their transport containers or on a clean, level surface (on a blanket).
- After performing body repairs in area of curtain airbag, check body for welding spatter, deformation and abrasion by comparing with opposite side.
- It is important that you hold the gas generator at all times when handling it (during transportation, removing and installing etc.) until it has been bolted on.
- Never twist, turn, knot, throw, pull, hang, pinch, press or clamp curtain airbag unit.
- It might be possible to fold it, as long as you are careful not to damage it (and in particular its protective cover).

1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)

The crash sensors for side airbags are very sensitive to pressure changes and must therefore be handled with great care. Please note the following:

- Always observe correct installation position: ONLY install in correct fitting location in door.
- Protect crash sensor from jolts and knocks. Crash sensors which have been dropped must NOT be used. Remove crash sensor to perform body repairs at door.
- The crash sensor is adapted to the air volume inside the door: If the door is deformed, causing the air volume in the door to be reduced, the function of the crash sensor will be impaired.
- Make sure the crash sensor is not badly soiled: Do not use compressed air near the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor against filings or drilling swarf (e.g. on service installation of door loudspeakers). Do not use cavity sealant or oil sprays near crash sensor.
- Protect against heat and cold: Protect crash sensor against heat, e.g. when painting or carrying out other body work. Crash sensors should never be exposed to temperatures of less than –40 °C (e.g. in non-air-conditioned aircraft cargo holds).
- The crash sensor must be protected against moisture, both during storage and when installing.

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor may not function correctly. Please note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.
- The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. Renew retaining clips if necessary.

1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling de-

activation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version

- Following any repair work on the front passenger seat during which the seat and/or backrest cover are/is disengaged, the basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- The mat for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- The mat must be renewed if it is damaged (service kit).
- The pressure hose for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- Make sure that the components of the seat occupied recognition system (service kit) do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and cannot be damaged by sharp objects.
- Make sure that the mat, the fleece and all covers are not creased when they are installed.
- Make sure that the seat padding and seat cover are in the correct installation position.
- Renew all staples/clips and make sure they are correctly positioned on the seat.
- The system's basic setting is only possible at temperatures between 0°C and + 40°C if airbag units 8.R and 9.* are installed, and only between 5°C and 35°C if airbag unit 10.* is installed.
- Make sure there are no objects lying on the seat before or while you are performing the basic setting.
- The use of loose seat covers - such as cushions or similar - impairs the function of the seat occupied recognition system and thus the function of the airbag system.

1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version

- The basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must be performed whenever the airbag and/or front passenger's belt tensioner has/have been triggered ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- If the seat rail and/or seat pan has/have to be renewed after a crash due to deformation, the seat occupied sensor must be renewed using the “seat occupied recognition service kit”. The “basic setting” for the seat occupied recognition control unit must then be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.9 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester

Note

- *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generation 8.* »not 8.R« for up to two side airbag and/or belt tensioner triggering operations.*
- *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generations 9.*, 10.* and 8.R for side airbags, driver's airbag, front passenger's airbag and/or belt tensioners which together have triggered not more than twice.*
- *After the third activation the fault display will show “Control unit defective”.*

Airbag control unit must be renewed:

- If driver's/front passenger's airbag has been triggered (except with airbag generations 9.*, 10.* and 8.R) ⇒ page 8
- After side airbags, driver's airbag, front passenger's airbag or belt tensioners have triggered three times
- If housing is damaged
- In the event of a tunnel deformation within 200 mm radius of control unit

Always renew the following:

- All triggered airbag units
- Battery isolation igniter - N253-

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Dash panel
- Supports for front passenger's airbag unit which have become deformed (must not be bent back into shape)
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If driver's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Return ring with slip ring
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If side airbag(s) has/have been triggered, also renew:

- Pressure sensors on the side on which the airbag was triggered
- Lateral acceleration sensors on the side on which airbag was triggered
- Seat cover
- Padding
- Folding rear seat backrest: side padding (if fitted)
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

Additionally:

- All automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- All automatic belt retractors with belt force limiters (depending on equipment version) which have been triggered
- Belt buckles for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened
- Belt height adjusters (manual and electrical) for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened

– If you suspect that belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) has/have been triggered, connect a vehicle diagnostic tester .

– In “15 - Airbag” of the »Guided Fault Finding« function, check whether there is an entry recording a crash in the airbag control unit.

– Check whether at the same time the fault “Resistance too high” is entered for belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s). Belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) which have been triggered must fulfil both conditions. Condition: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed.

Note

- *The fault “Resistance too high” can also be entered if there is an open circuit. In this case, there should usually be no crash entry.*
- *Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. In this case, observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components* ⇒ page 4 .
- *Also observe the notes on checking seat belts* ⇒ page 10 .

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

– In addition, the following must also be renewed if necessary (visual check): all damaged components

– After renewing airbag units or the control unit, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the appropriate Sales Centre or to the importer for registration.

1.10 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident

It is essential to always renew all damaged mounting components - it is not permissible to »reshape« or rework damaged components.

The following components must be checked after an airbag has been triggered.

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered:

- Central tube for dash panel; it must be possible to install front passenger's airbag supports and front passenger's airbag unit so that they are free of stress. Otherwise central tube should also be renewed.
- Check glove box for damage. Renew glove box if it is damaged.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

If driver's airbag has been triggered:

- Steering wheel: Remove steering wheel and place it on a level surface (resting on rim). The full area of the rim must lie flat. If it does not, the steering wheel has to be renewed.

- Check steering wheel for smoke marks. Renew steering wheel if such marks are found.

1.11 Accident in which no airbag was triggered

- Pyrotechnic components do not have to be renewed if airbag warning lamp - K75- does not indicate a fault. The seat belts must be checked separately.

1.12 Checking seat belts

WARNING

A systematic check of the seat belt system must be carried out after every accident. If any damage is identified (see section on points to check), the customer must be informed that one or more of the seat belts have to be renewed.

Points to check:

- Check belt ⇒ page 10 .
- Check automatic belt retractor (locking action) ⇒ page 11 .
- Visual inspection of belt buckle ⇒ page 12 .
- Functional check of belt buckle ⇒ page 12 .
- Check guide fittings and latch plate ⇒ page 12 .
- Check securing components and anchorage points ⇒ page 12 .
- Check child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific version ⇒ page 13 .

Caution

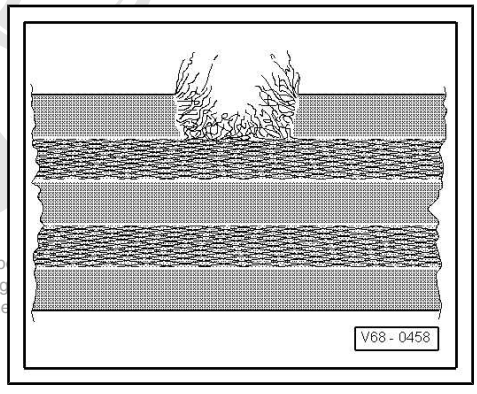
If customers decide not to have damaged seat belts renewed, this must be noted accordingly in the Service Schedule.

1.13 Checking belt

Procedure

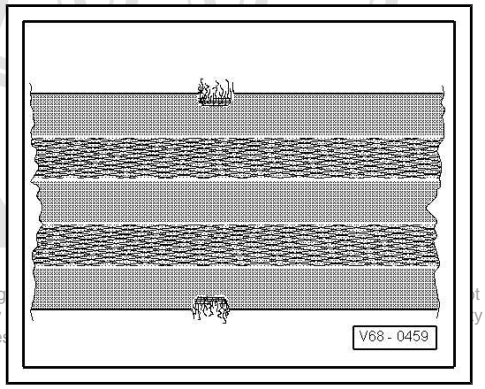
– Pull belt as far as it will go out of automatic belt retractor or lap belt adjuster.

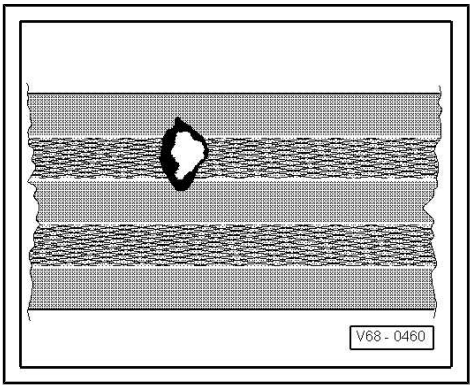
– Inspect belt for dirt and, if necessary, wash it with mild soap solution ⇒ Owner's Manual .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

Protected by copyright. Copying
permitted unless authorised by
with respect to the correctnes





- If the following type of damage (shown in illustrations 1 and 2) is identified on a vehicle following an accident you must renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.
- If damage as shown in illustrations 1, 2 or 3 is identified on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to only renew the damaged belt.
- 1 – Belt is cut, torn or chafed
- 2 – Frayed fabric at edge of belt
- 3 – Burn marks caused by cigarettes or similar

1.14 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.

♦ The first locking function is triggered by pulling the belt quickly out of the automatic belt retractor.

First check

– Pull belt out of automatic belt retractor in a sharp quick movement.

- No locking effect - renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If you encounter difficulties when pulling belt out or retracting it, first check whether position of automatic belt retractor has changed.
- The second locking function is triggered if vehicle motion changes (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Second check

WARNING

For safety reasons, test drive must be performed on a road with no traffic to avoid putting other road users at risk.

– Fasten seat belt.

– Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then press foot brake firmly (emergency braking).

- If braking does not activate seat belt locking mechanism, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.15 Visual inspection of belt buckle

– Inspect belt buckle for cracks and fracturing.

• If you identify any damage, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.16 Functional check of belt buckle

Checking belt buckle

– Push latch plate into belt buckle until you hear it engage. Pull belt firmly to check whether locking mechanism has engaged.

• Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate does not engage properly in belt buckle in one or more of the tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

Reproduction of this publication or its parts in any form without the prior written permission of AUDI AG is forbidden. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Checking release function

– Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle. Latch plate must be automatically ejected from belt buckle when belt is slack.

• Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate is not ejected in one or more of these tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

WARNING

Under no circumstances apply lubricant to belt buckle to eliminate noises or to stop buttons sticking.

1.17 Checking guide fittings and latch plate

When a seat belt has been under strain in an accident the plastic-covered guides will show fine parallel scoring. (By contrast, a guide fitting which is worn because of frequent use will have a smoothly worn surface, but no scoring).

– Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in the plastic.

• If you identify any scoring and/or damage, renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.

1.18 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident

♦ Latch plate deformed (strained)

♦ Height adjustment not functioning

♦ Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) deformed or thread damaged

• If you identify any damage on these parts, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

• If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.

• Renew anchorage points.

Note

In the event of damage not resulting from an accident (for example wear) only the corresponding damaged part must be renewed.

1.19 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)

To check this function fit the complete belt assembly (including side panel trim).

Activating locking function of retractor mechanism:

- Pull out belt as far as it will go.

Correct function

- The belt should retract with an audible clicking sound.
- Once you stop the belt retracting any further, it should no longer be possible to pull the belt out.

Deactivating

- Allow the belt to retract as far as the last approx. 100 mm.
- The locking function of the retractor mechanism should be deactivated at the latest by the time the belt has been retracted as far as the last 100 mm. The belt then functions as "normal" again.

If child seat restraint function of seat belt is not operating properly, seat belt must be renewed.

1.20 Checking child seat anchors following an accident

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Points to check:

- After an accident, child seat anchors must be checked for damage and deformation.
- Child seat anchors welded or bolted to body or seats/backrests must not be repaired or straightened.
- Child seat anchors bolted to the body or seats/backrests must be renewed if they are damaged or deformed.
- Bolts for securing child seat anchors must be renewed if retainer is damaged.

1.21 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

WARNING

- *The interior mirror glass consists of several layers and contains an electrolyte which gives the mirror its properties. Beware of liquid electrolyte escaping from a broken mirror.*
- *Liquid electrolyte can cause irritation to skin, eyes and respiratory organs.*
- *Should liquid electrolyte come into contact with the eyes or skin, rinse it out/off immediately with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, consult a doctor immediately.*

Caution

If liquid electrolyte escapes from a broken mirror glass it will damage all plastic surfaces with which it comes into contact. Make sure you clean away any leaked electrolyte immediately using clean water and a sponge.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Notes on repairs

⇒ “2.1 Contact corrosion”, page 15

⇒ “2.2 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring”, page 15

2.1 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners (bolts, nuts, washers etc.) are used on the vehicle.

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

In addition, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Should you have any doubts whether certain parts can be re-used, use new parts ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Please note:

- We recommend using genuine replacement parts only, as these have been checked and are compatible with aluminium.
- We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

2.2 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic lines or electrical wires. This ensures re-installation at the original location.

Data storage for private, private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

68 – Interior equipment

1 Shelves / trim panels

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - shelves/covers/trim panels”, page 16

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 18

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 19

⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 20

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 21

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing trim cover for dash panel insert”, page 22

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)”, page 23

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)”, page 24

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism”, page 24

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing glove box”, page 25

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing glove box lid”, page 28

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid”, page 28

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - shelves/covers/trim panels

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Centre console

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 34

2 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 18

3 - Trim

- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 19

4 - Dash panel

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 184

5 - Central tube

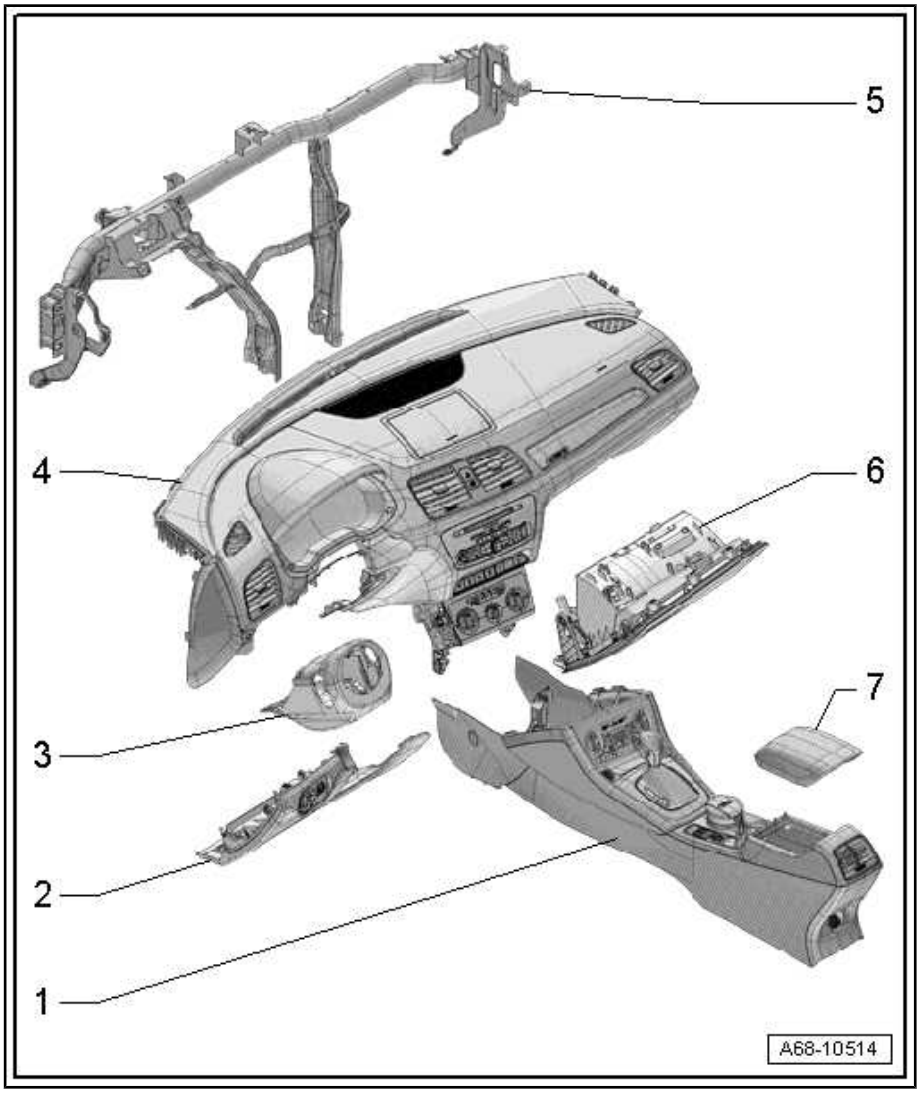
- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 197

6 - Glove box

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 20

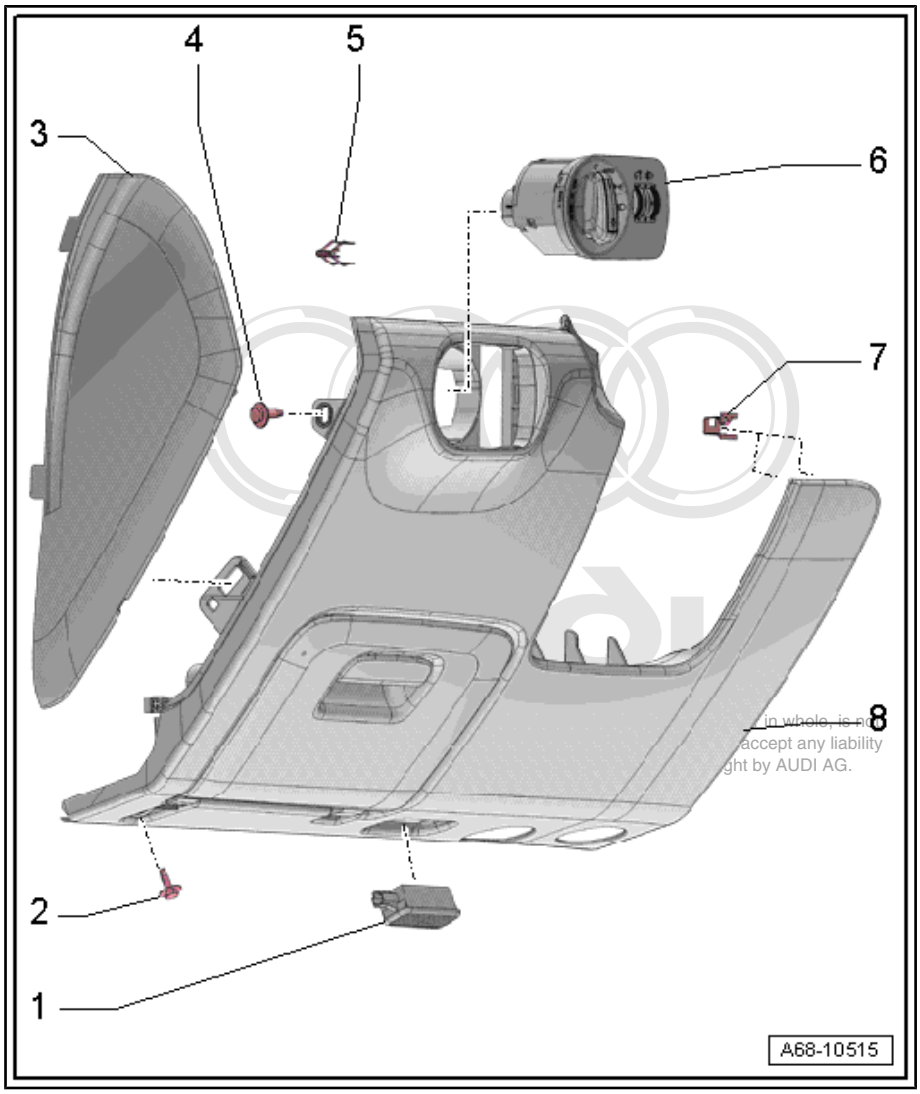
7 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 52



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)



1 - Left footwell light - W9-

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing footwell light -W9- / -W10-

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 1x or 2x (depending on equipment version)
- ❑ 3 Nm

3 - End trim

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 186

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

5 - Spring clip

- ❑ For dash panel cover (driver side)
- ❑ Renew spring clip if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in dash panel cover

6 - Light switch - E1-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

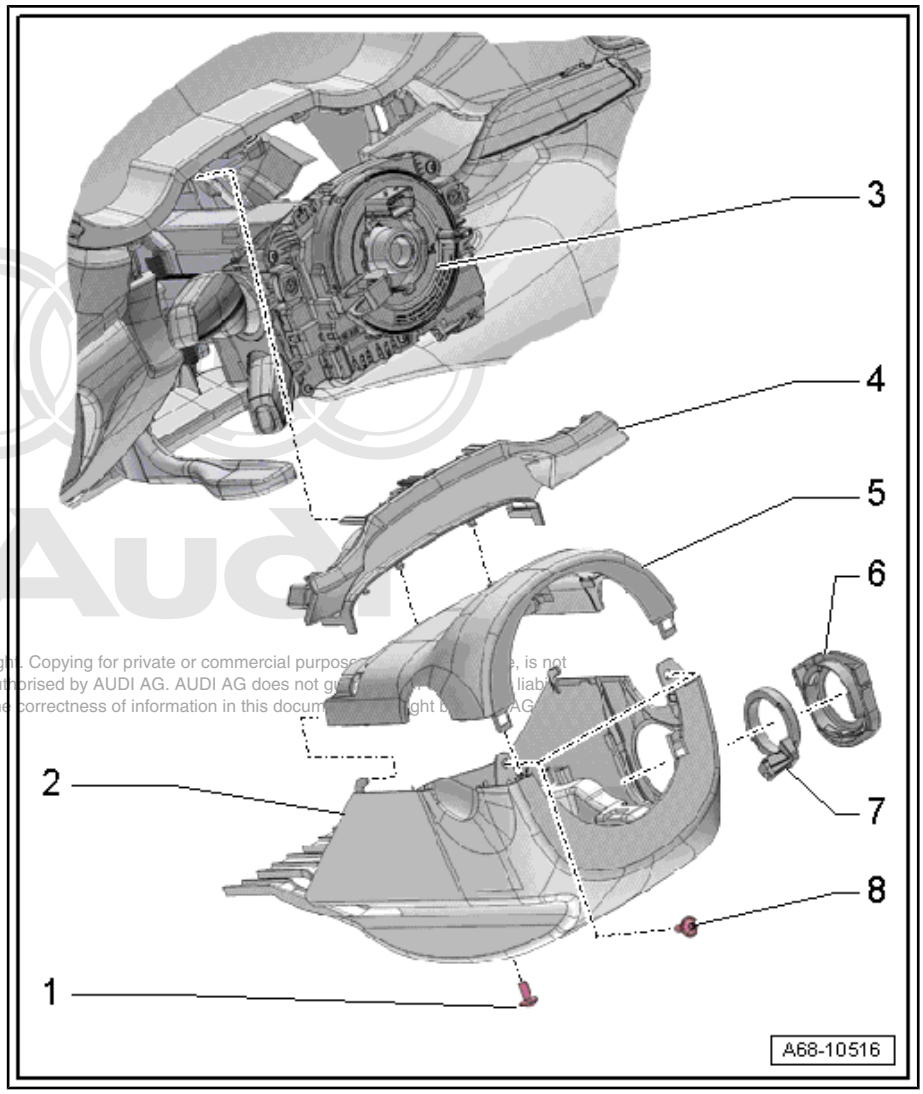
7 - Spring clip

- ❑ For dash panel cover (driver side)
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Renew spring clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Press into dash panel

8 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 21

1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

2 - Trim (bottom)

- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24

3 - Steering column switch module

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column switch module

4 - Trim cover

- ❑ For instrument cluster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 22
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

5 - Trim (top)

- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 23

6 - Mounting

- ❑ For reader coil
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Immobilizer; Removing and installing immobilizer reader coil

7 - Immobiliser reader coil - D2-

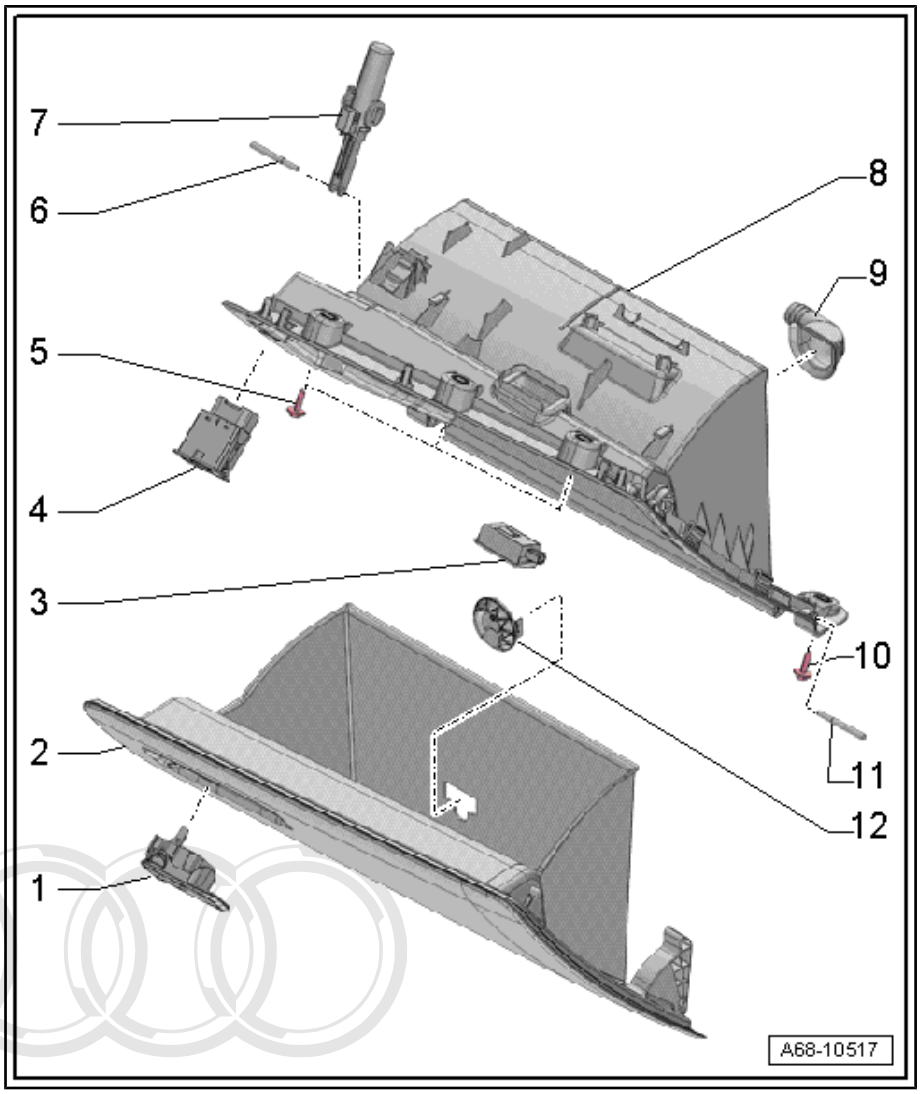
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Immobilizer; Removing and installing immobilizer reader coil

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose... is not authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu... liabi... with respect to the correctness of information in this docum... ght b... AG.

1.4 Exploded view - glove box



1 - Glove box opening mechanism

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24
- ❑ Press into glove box lid until it engages audibly

2 - Glove box lid with storage compartment

- ❑ Manually releasing the glove box lid ⇒ page 25
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 28

3 - Glove box light - W6-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing glove box light - W6-

4 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 120
- ❑ Press into installation opening until it engages audibly

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 3 Nm

6 - Hinge pin

- ❑ For cushioning element

7 - Cushioning element

- ❑ For glove box lid
- ❑ With glove box light switch - E26-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 28

8 - Glove box

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25

9 - Connection for glove box cooling

- ❑ Depending on equipment version

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 3 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - Hinge pin

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For glove box lid

12 - Vent for glove box cooling

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Dummy cover on vehicles without glove box cooling

1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)

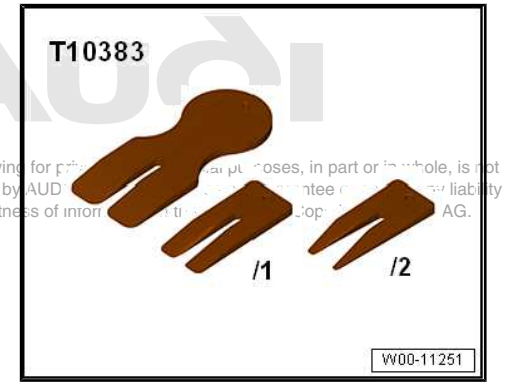
Note

The new cover supplied as a replacement part features an additional attachment point.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this copy.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Wedges - T10383-



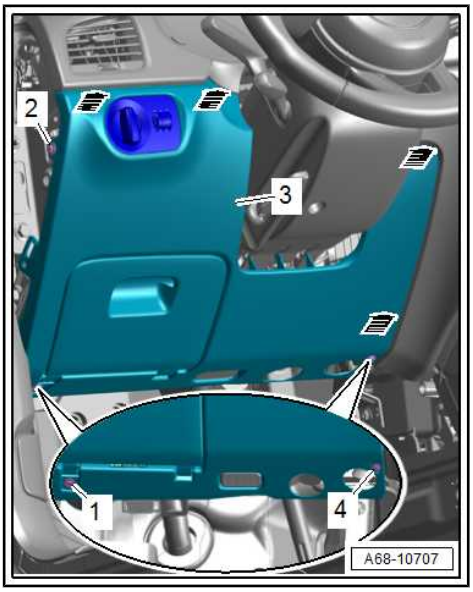
Removing

– Remove side dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 186 .

– Remove bolt -2- at side.

– Unscrew bolts -1, 4- (bottom).

– Unclip dash panel cover -3- (driver side) from dash panel -arrows- using wedge -T10383/1- .



Note

Considerable force is required to unclip the cover from the dash panel.

– Unplug electrical connector for light switch.

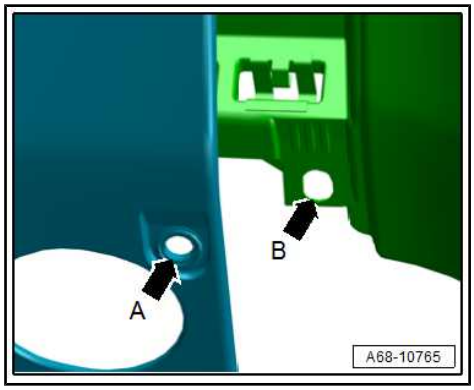
– Equipment version with footwell light: Unplug electrical connector.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *The new cover supplied as a replacement part features an additional attachment point.*
- *If a new cover is fitted to the old dash panel, the attachment points -arrow A- and -arrow B- may be approx. 1 mm out of line with each other.*
- *If the attachment points are out of line, the hole on the dash panel must be reworked. To do so, proceed as follows:*



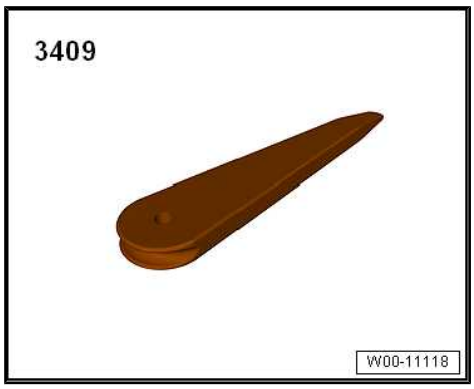
– Remove approx. 3 mm of projection at hole -arrow B- on dash panel with a small file.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)", page 18

1.6 Removing and installing trim cover for dash panel insert

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



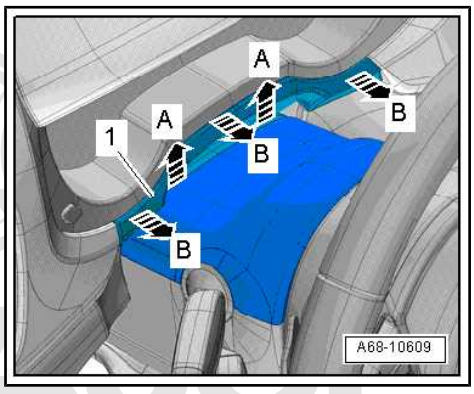
Removing

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Using a small flat screwdriver, carefully unclip trim cover -1- from trim (top) for steering column switch module -arrows A-.

– Unclip trim cover for instrument cluster from dash panel -arrows B- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Detach trim cover.



Installing

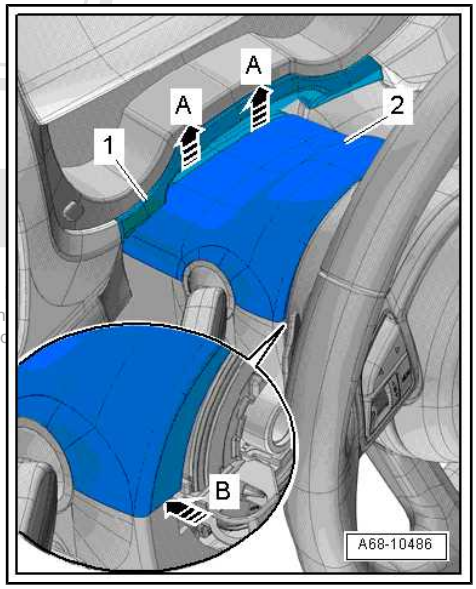
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim", page 19

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)

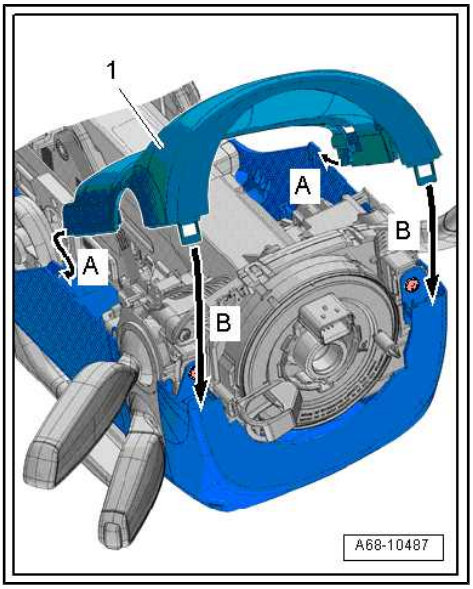
Removing



- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Using a small flat screwdriver, carefully unclip trim cover -1- -arrow A- from trim (top) -2- for steering column switch module.
- Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.
- Using a small flat screwdriver, carefully prise trim (top) off trim (bottom) for steering column switch module -arrow B-.
- Turn steering wheel back through 180° and repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Disengage trim (top) at trim (bottom) for steering column switch module and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

Installing



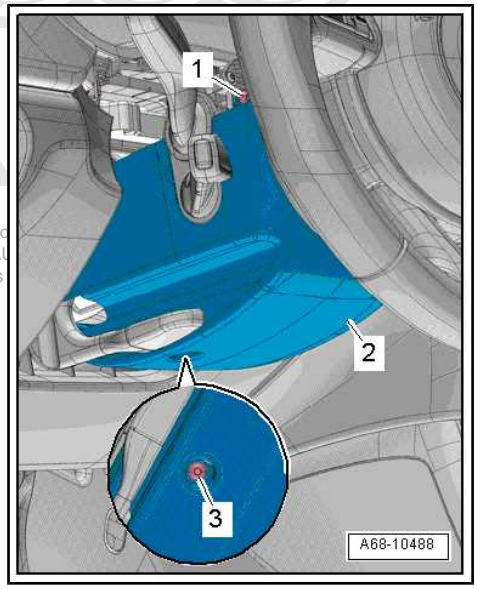
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Start by engaging trim (top) -1- in trim (bottom) -arrows A-.
- Make sure that lug on trim (bottom) engages in recess at retaining tab on trim (top) -arrows B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 19

1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)

Removing



– Remove trim (top) for steering column switch module ⇒ page 23 .
– Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Turn steering wheel back through 180° and unscrew bolt on opposite side.

Protected by copyright. Copying fo
with respect to the correctness

Note

If bolt -1- is not accessible, steering wheel must be removed before performing remaining work steps ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .

– Unscrew bolt -3- and detach trim (bottom) -2- for steering column switch module.
– Unplug electrical connector.

Installing

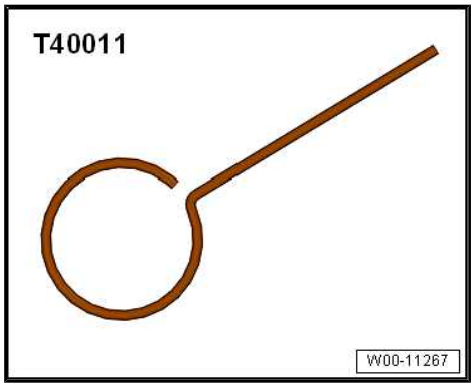
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim", page 19

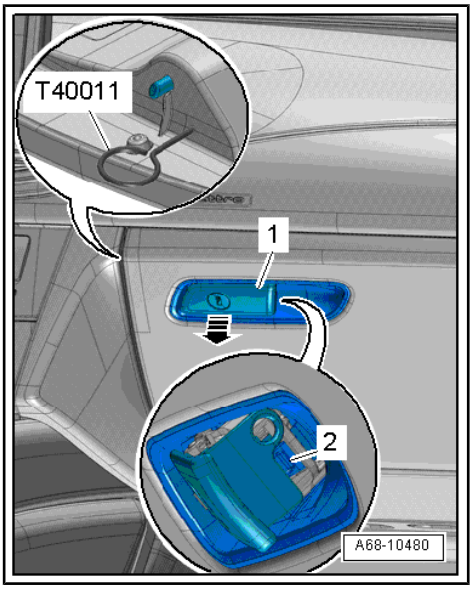
1.9 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Locking pin - T40011-



Removing



Note

If the glove box lid cannot be opened in the normal way, you can release it manually ⇒ page 25 .

- Actuate glove box opening mechanism -1- and release retaining hook -2- on side of glove box opening mechanism using a screwdriver.
- Insert locking pin - T40011- through opening in side of glove box lid and release retaining hook for glove box opening mechanism.
- Take glove box opening mechanism out of glove box lid -arrow-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 20

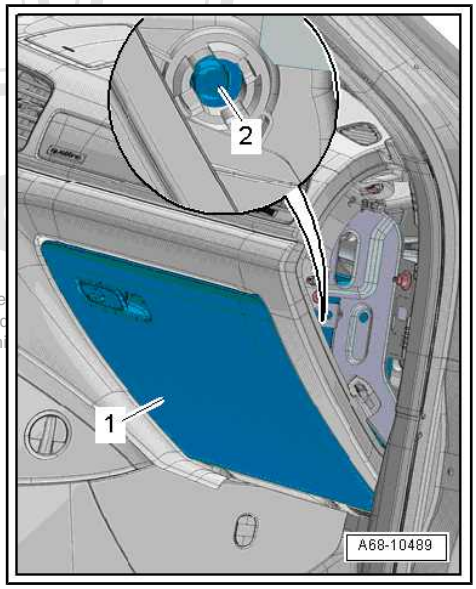
1.10 Removing and installing glove box

⇒ "1.10.1 Manually releasing glove box lid", page 25

⇒ "1.10.2 Removing and installing glove box", page 25

1.10.1 Manually releasing glove box lid

Procedure



- Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side) ⇒ page 186 .
- Using a screwdriver (or other suitable tool), open glove box lid -1- by pressing down locking pin -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d
with respect to the correctness of information in thi

1.10.2 Removing and installing glove box

Removing

Note

If the glove box lid cannot be opened in the normal way, you can release it manually ⇒ page 25 .

WARNING

On equipment version with key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- , observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

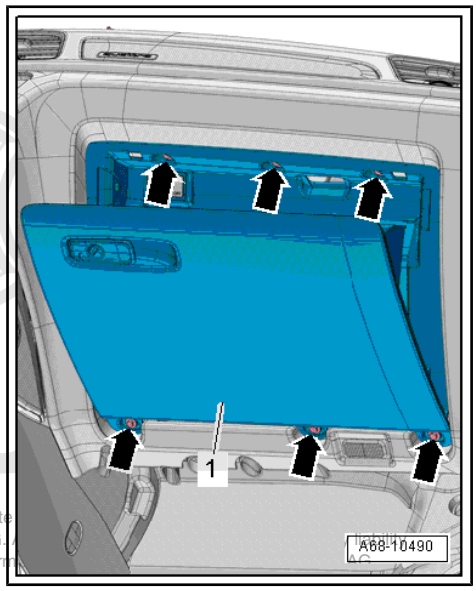
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Open glove box lid and unscrew bolts -arrows-.

WARNING

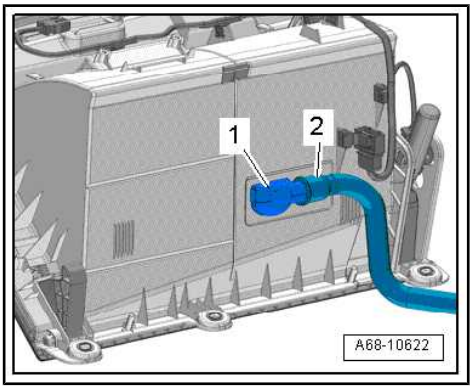
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Detach glove box -1- and pull it out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connector at main connector.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of inform

– Equipment version with glove box cooling: Disconnect air hose -2- from vent -1-.
– Equipment version with card reader: Unplug electrical connectors.
– Equipment version with headlight range control unit - J431- : Unplug electrical connector.



Installing

WARNING

- *On equipment version with key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- , observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Plug in electrical connector until it engages audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 20

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.11 Removing and installing glove box lid

Removing

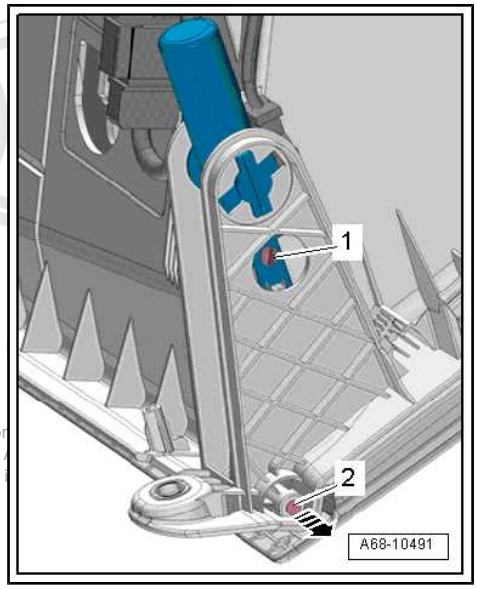
– Remove glove box ⇒ page 25 .
– Set down glove box on a soft surface.
– Pull hinge pin -1- out of cushioning element.
– Use a drift punch to knock out hinge pin -2- (left and right) for glove box lid in direction of -arrow-.
– Detach lid from glove box.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 20

...ropyright. Copying for private or cor... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI ... with respect to the correctness of information ...



1.12 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid

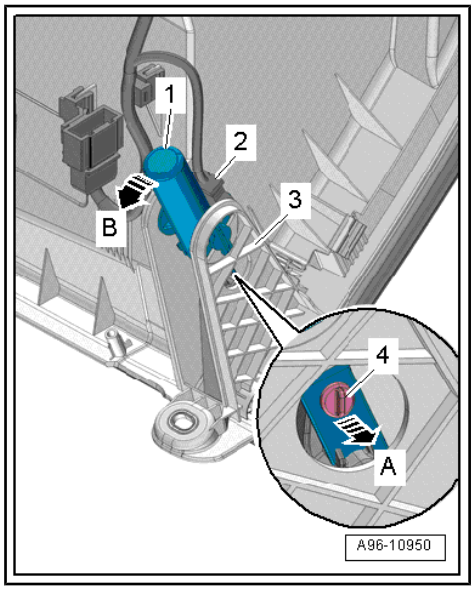
Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 25 .
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Pull out hinge pin -4- -arrow A-.
– Release switch -1- in anti-clockwise direction -arrow B-.
– Take out switch; to do so, press outer mounting -3- slightly to the side.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 20



2 Equipment

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - sun visors”, page 29

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover”, page 30

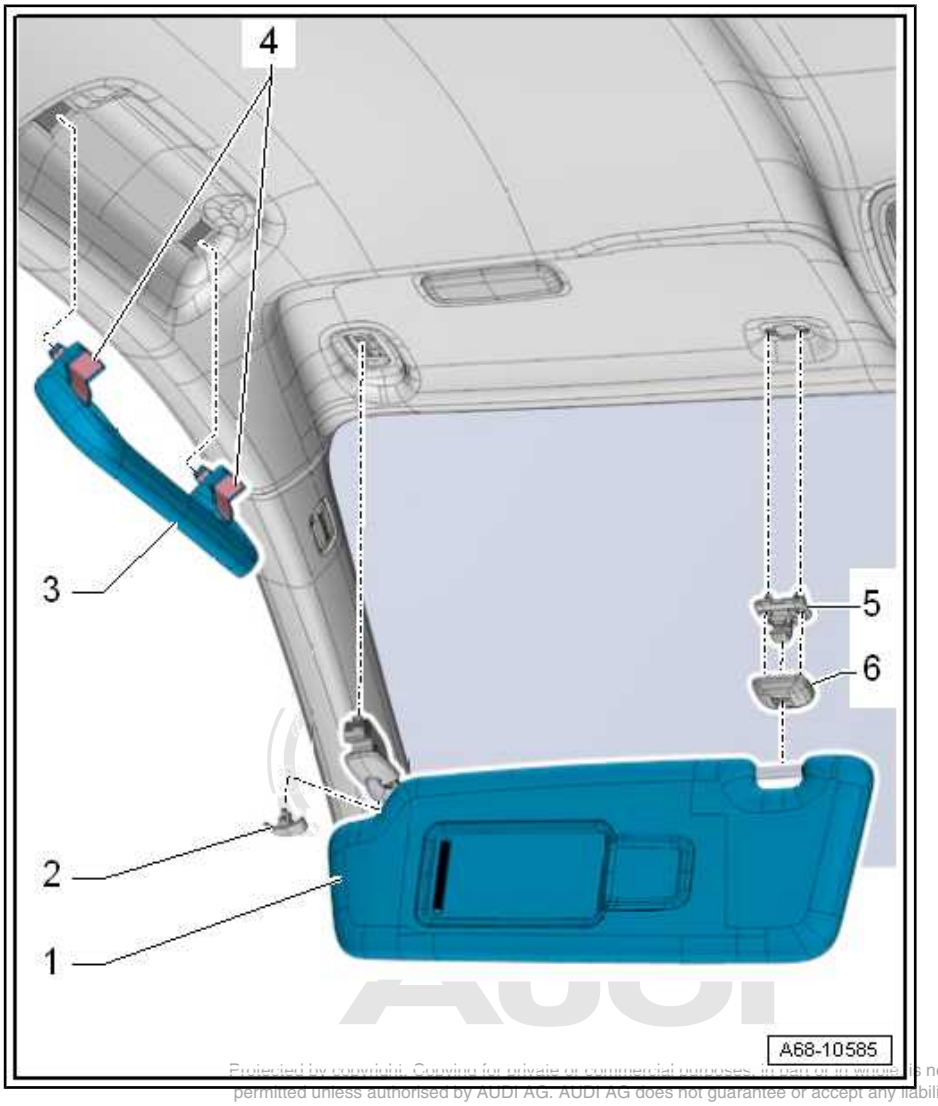
⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing sun visor”, page 31

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor”, page 31

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing grab handle”, page 32

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing handle for luggage compartment cover”, page 33

2.1 Exploded view - sun visors



1 - Sun visor

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 31
- ❑ Engage bracket for sun visor in body opening

2 - Expanding cap

- ❑ Clipped into sun visor
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

3 - Grab handle

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 32
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

4 - Expanding caps

Caution

Unclip only as far as detent (do not pull out completely as silicone cushioning element and spring could fall out and handle would then have to be renewed).

- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

5 - Centre bracket

- ❑ For sun visor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 31
- ❑ Take care not to damage fasteners when inserting them

6 - Expanding cap

- ❑ Clipped into centre bracket for sun visor

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover

1 - Rivet

- ❑ 1x on each side

2 - Retaining pin

- ❑ 1x on each side
- ❑ Not available separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Riveted to luggage compartment cover

3 - Luggage compartment cover

4 - Retaining frame

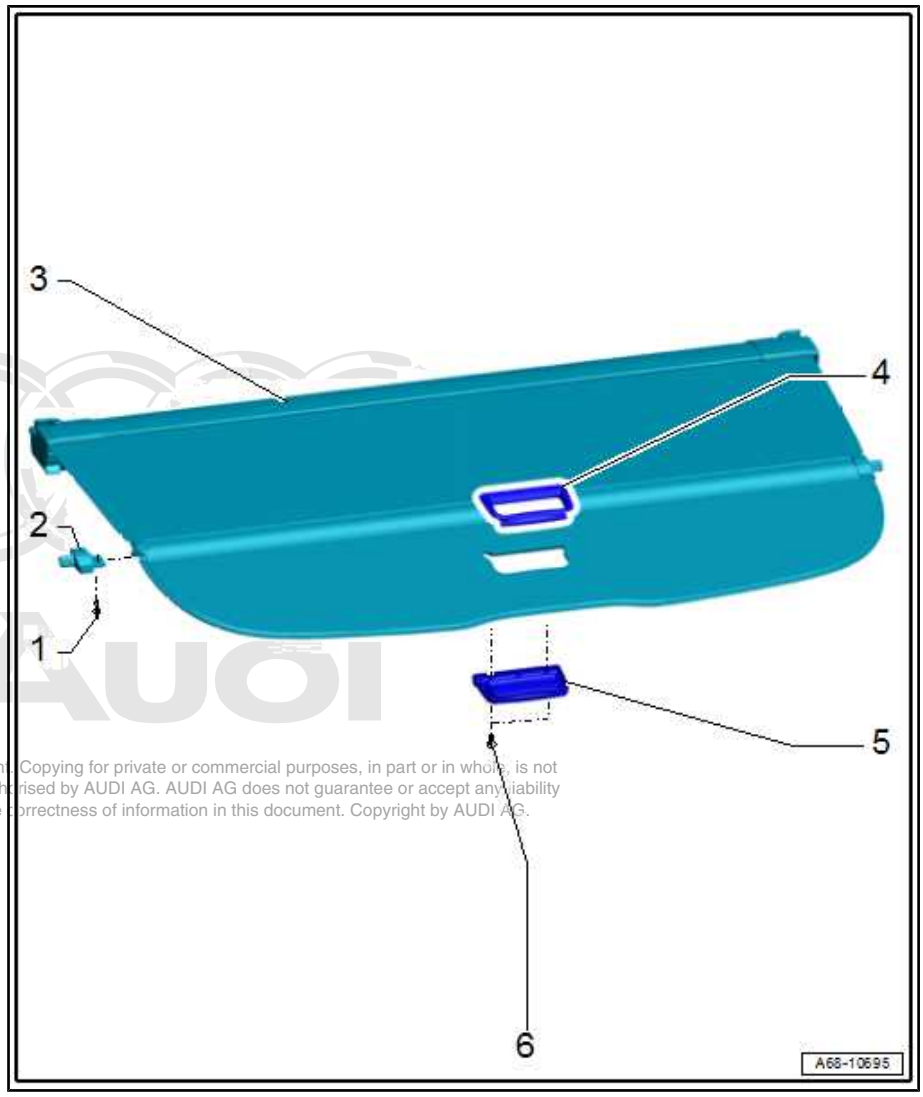
- ❑ For handle for luggage compartment cover
- ❑ Not available separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 33

5 - Handle

- ❑ For luggage compartment cover
- ❑ Not available separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 33

6 - Bolt

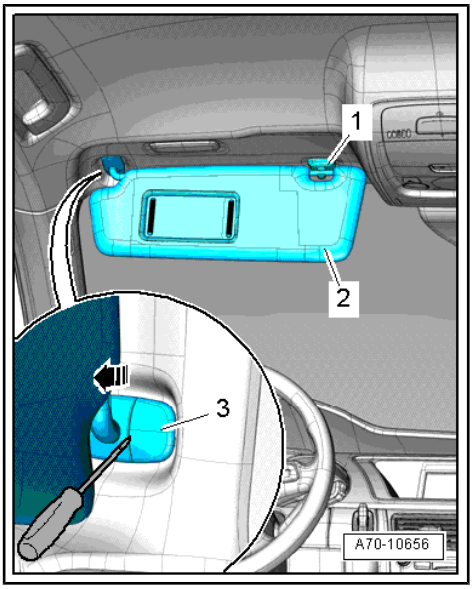
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread; then tighten bolt to specified torque
- ❑ 1.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Removing and installing sun visor

Removing



– Disengage sun visor -2- from centre bracket -1-.
– Use a screwdriver to unclip expanding cap -3-.
– Remove bracket for sun visor downwards -arrow- from body opening.
– Unplug electrical connector and detach sun visor.

Installing

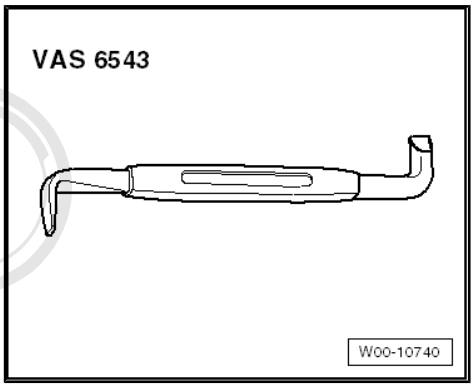
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - sun visors”, page 29

2.4 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

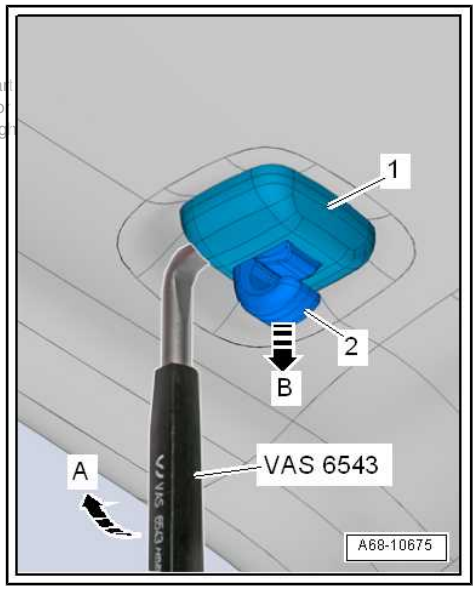
♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Disengage sun visor from centre bracket for sun visor and fold to the side.
– Unclip cover -1- for centre bracket for sun visor -arrow A-. To so so, slide angled screwdriver - VAS 6543- only approx. 1 mm under cap.



Note

Inserting angled screwdriver - VAS 6543- further would position it beneath centre bracket for sun visor. Cover can then not be prised off.

– Pull out centre bracket for sun visor -2- -arrow B-.

Installing

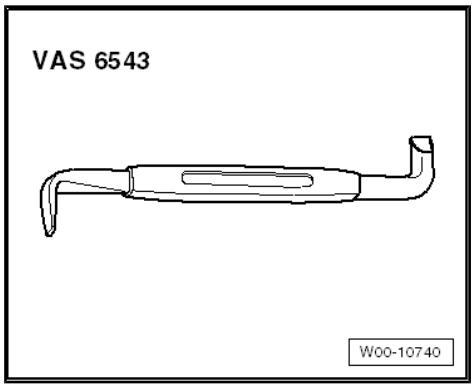
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - sun visors”, page 29

2.5 Removing and installing grab handle

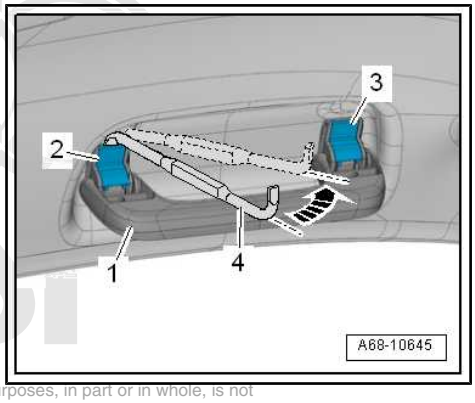
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



Removing

> **Caution**
>
> *Unclip expanding caps -2- and -3- only as far as detent (do not pull out completely as silicone cushioning element and spring could fall out and handle would then have to be renewed).*



– Insert angled screwdriver -4- in gap behind expanding cap -2-.
– Swivel angled screwdriver -arrow- until expanding cap engages audibly in detent.
– Repeat procedure on second expanding cap -3-.
– Pull grab handle -1- out of cut-out in body.
– Leave expanding caps in detent position in grab handle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

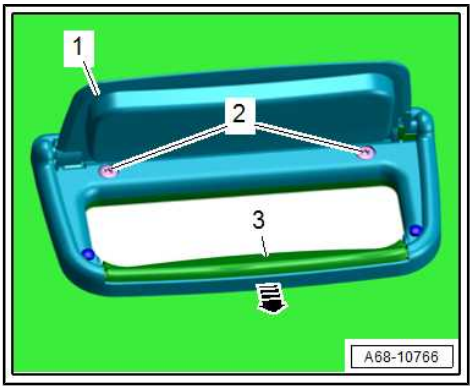
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert grab handle in cut-out in body.
• There must not be a gap between the handle and the roof trim.
– Press in expanding caps.

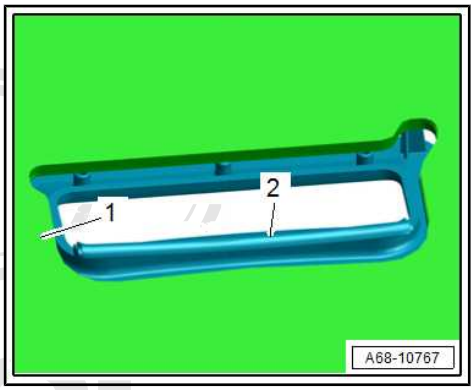
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - sun visors”, page 29

2.6 Removing and installing handle for luggage compartment cover

Removing



– Remove luggage compartment cover.
– Open flap -1- and remove bolts -2-.
– Release handle for luggage compartment cover, disengage from retaining frame -3- in direction of -arrow- and detach.



– Press retaining frame -2- out of opening in luggage compartment cover -1- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment cover”, page 30

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Centre console

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 34

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)”, page 39

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing ashtray (front)”, page 40

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing insert for centre console”, page 40

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing centre console storage box (front)”, page 42

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front)”, page 44

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing centre console”, page 45

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console”, page 49

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing cup holder”, page 50

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (rear)”, page 50

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing bracket for centre console”, page 51

Reproduction or use for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

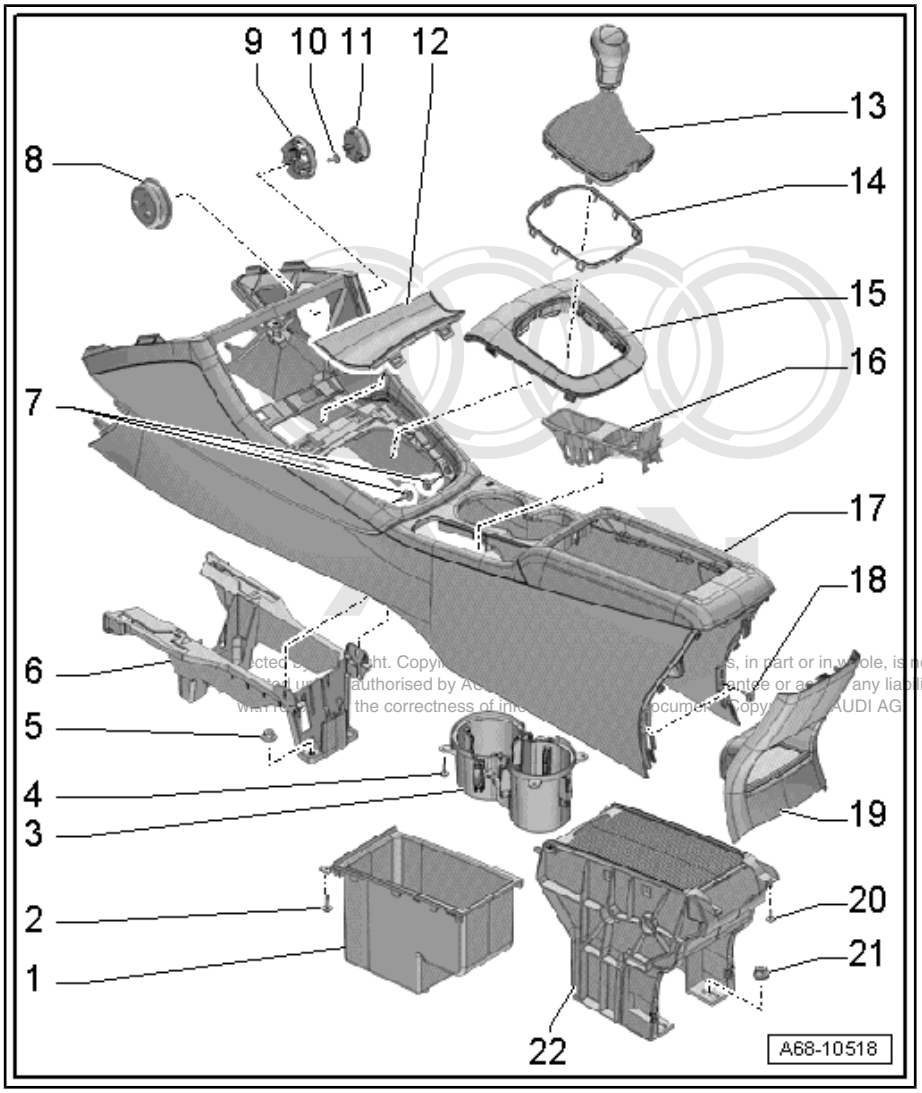
3.1 Exploded view - centre console

⇒ “3.1.1 Exploded view - centre console (basic equipment version)”, page 34

⇒ “3.1.2 Exploded view - centre console (equipment version with centre armrest)”, page 37

⇒ “3.1.3 Exploded view - centre console (footwell trim)”, page 39

3.1.1 Exploded view - centre console (basic equipment version)



1 - Storage box

Equipment version:
- ♦ With connection for external audio sources - R199-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42
  - ❑ Insert in compartment for sliding cover

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

3 - Cup holder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50

4 - Bolts
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

5 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Bracket
- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 51

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

8 - Bracket
- ❑ For bag hook
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 48

9 - Mounting
- ❑ For bag hook
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 48
- ❑ Making opening for mounting in new centre console ⇒ page 49

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

11 - Bag hook
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 48

12 - Storage tray (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42

13 - Gear lever or selector lever
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Exploded view - selector mechanism

14 - Trim frame
- ❑ For insert for centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 49

15 - Insert

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 40
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Press on insert for centre console until it engages audibly

16 - Mounting

- ❑ For buttons and socket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47
- ❑ Engage in front of centre console and press on until it engages audibly

17 - Centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 45
- ❑ Equipment version with bag hook: Making opening for bag hook mounting in new centre console ⇒ page 49

18 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

19 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 39

20 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

21 - Nut

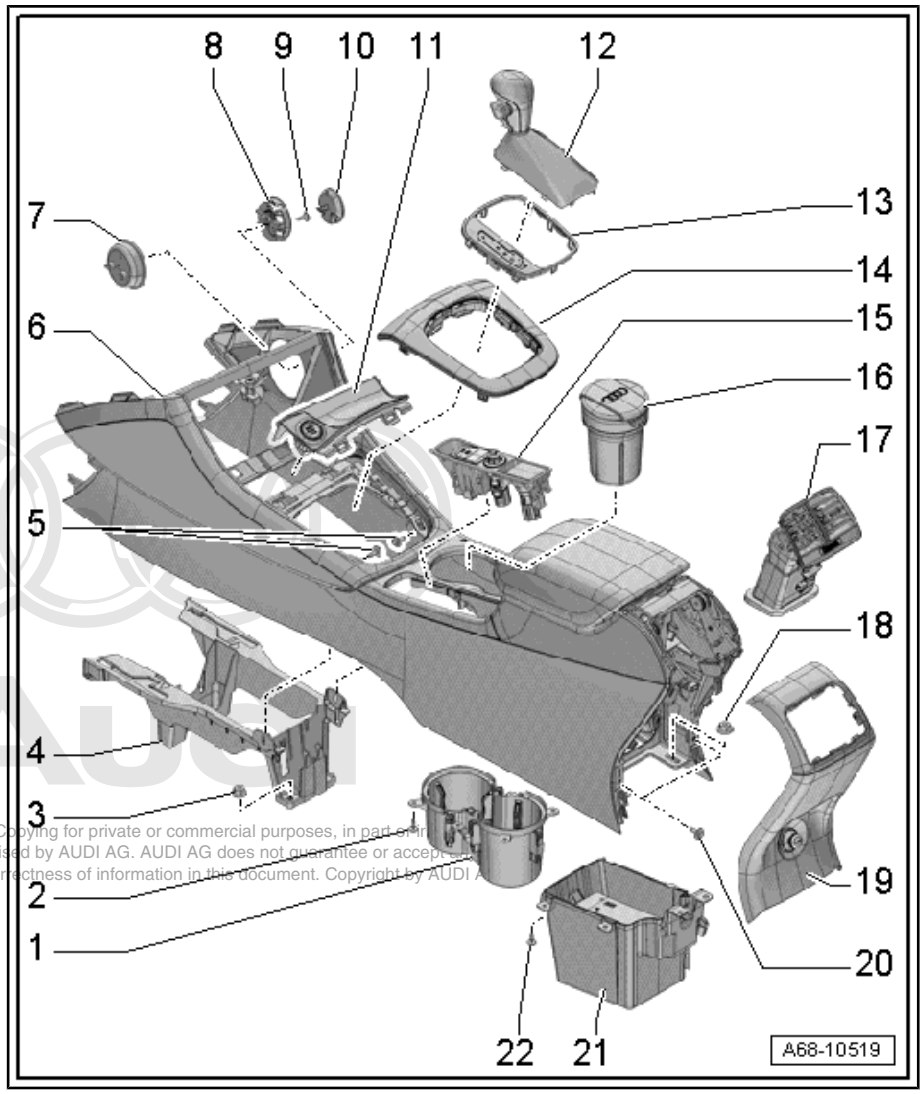
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

22 - Compartment for sliding cover

- ❑ For storage box
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 43

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1.2 Exploded view - centre console (equipment version with centre armrest)



1 - Cup holder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

3 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Bracket
- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 51

5 - Bolts
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

6 - Centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 45
- ❑ Equipment version with bag hook: Making opening for bag hook mounting in new centre console ⇒ page 49

7 - Bracket
- ❑ For bag hook
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 48

8 - Mounting
- ❑ For bag hook
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 48
- ❑ Making opening for mounting in new centre console ⇒ page 49

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

10 - Bag hook
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 48

11 - Storage tray (front)
- ❑ With entry and start authorisation button - E408-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42

12 - Gear lever or selector lever
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Exploded view - selector mechanism

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - Trim frame

- ❑ For insert for centre console
- ❑ With selector lever position display - Y26-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing selector lever position display - Y26-

14 - Insert

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 40
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

15 - Mounting

- ❑ For buttons, cigarette lighter and socket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47
- ❑ Engage in front of centre console and press on until it engages audibly

16 - Ashtray

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 40
- ❑ Audi logo on ashtray lid is perpendicular to direction of travel; ashtray can be used from driver's position

17 - Vent (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 46
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in installation position and press in as far as stop

18 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 10 Nm

19 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ With socket
- ❑ With central locking button - E600-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 39

20 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

21 - Storage box

Equipment versions:

- ♦ With connection for external audio sources - R199-
- ♦ With telephone bracket - R126-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42

22 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1.3 Exploded view - centre console (footwell trim)

1 - Cap
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Press into footwell trim

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

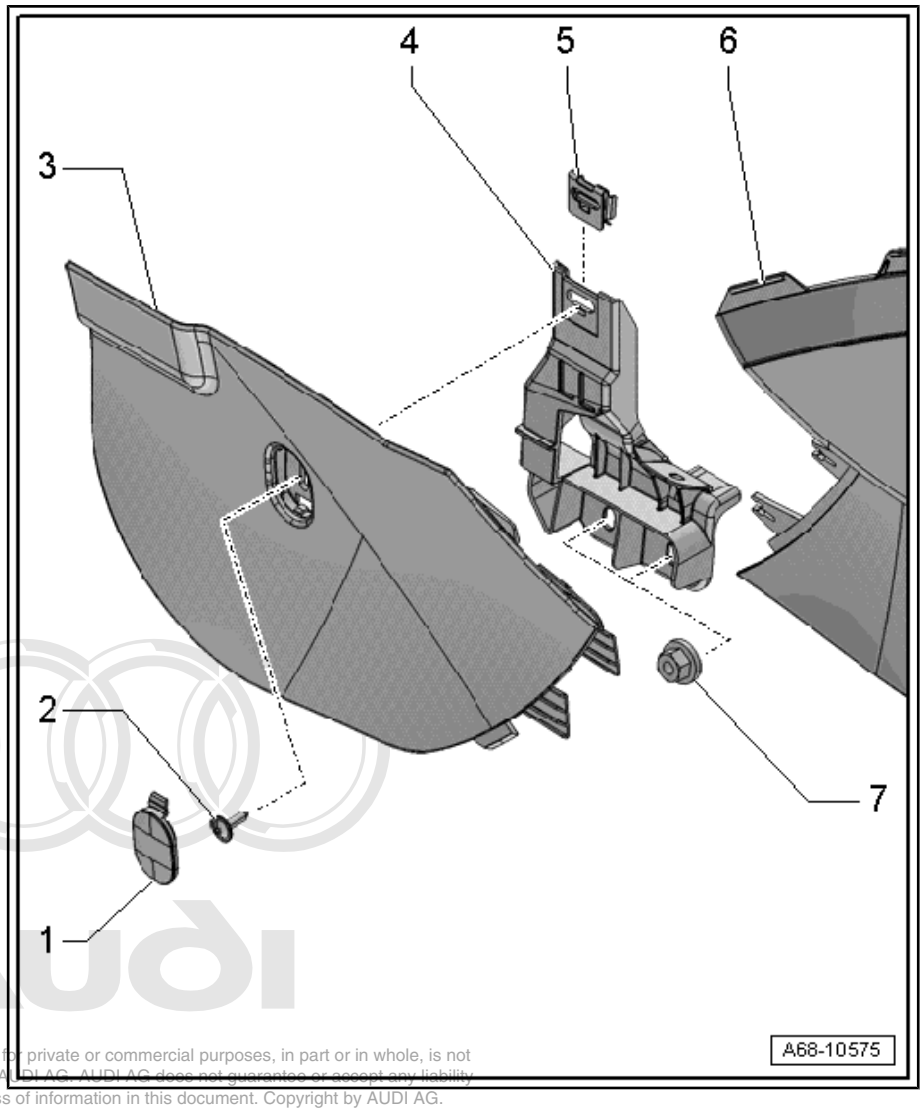
3 - Footwell trim
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 44
- ❑ Engage in centre console

4 - Bracket
- ❑ For footwell trim
- ❑ 2x

5 - Speed nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in bracket

6 - Centre console

7 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

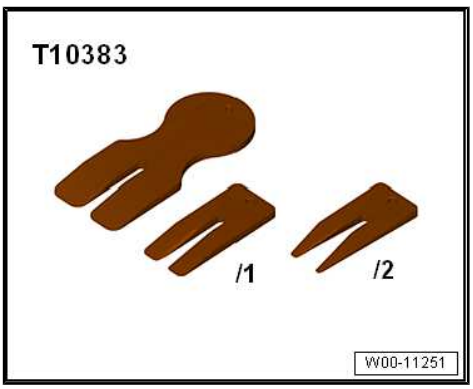


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-

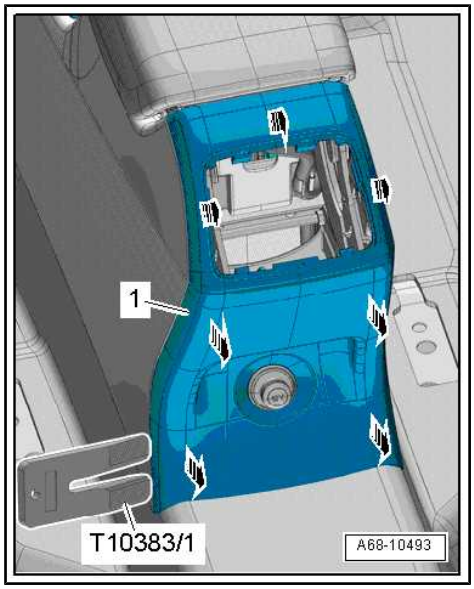


Removing

– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.

Equipment version with centre armrest:

– Equipment version with vent: Remove vent (rear) ⇒ page 46 .
– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage box (rear) ⇒ page 50 .
– Carefully unclip sides and top of cover -1- with wedge - T10383/1- -arrows-.
– Detach cover from centre console towards rear.
– Unplug electrical connectors.



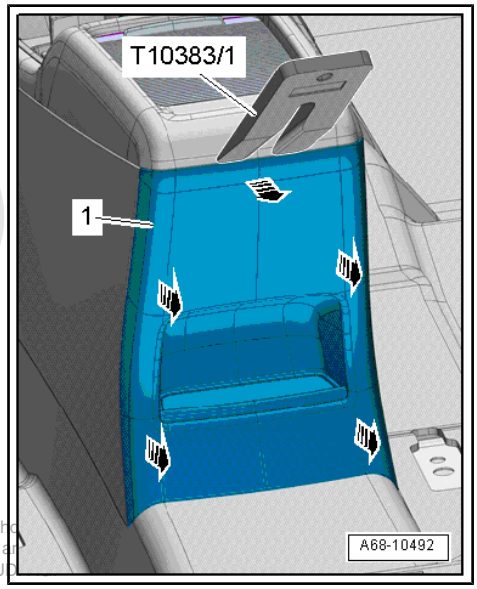
Equipment version without centre armrest:

– Carefully unclip top and sides of cover -1- with wedge - T10383/1- -arrows-.
– Detach cover from centre console towards rear.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 34



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

3.3 Removing and installing ashtray (front)

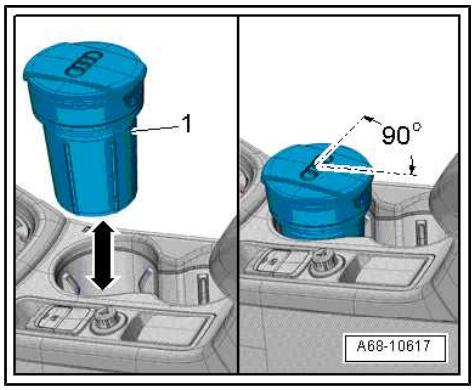
Removing

– Pull ashtray -1- upwards out of centre console -arrow-.

Installing

– Press ashtray into centre console as far as stop, making sure it is the right way round.

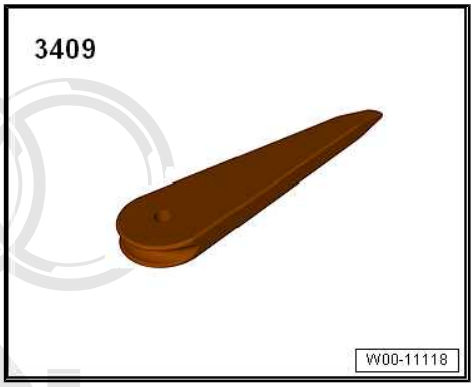
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 34



3.4 Removing and installing insert for centre console

Special tools and workshop equipment required

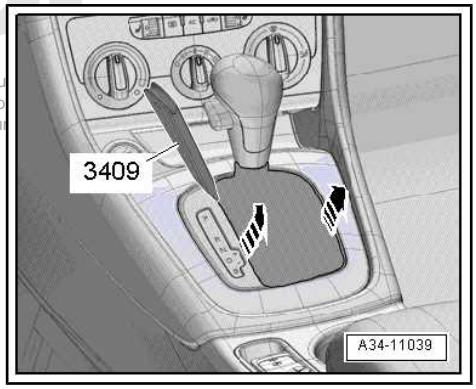
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



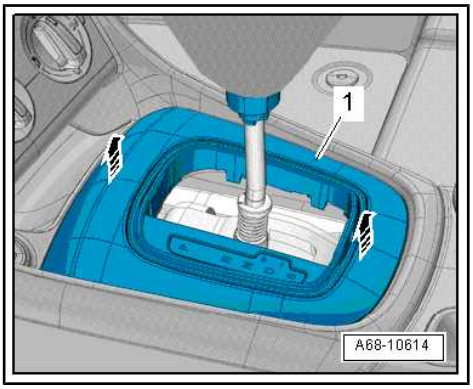
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

Removing

– Equipment version with selector lever: Move selector lever to “D/S”.
– Switch off ignition.
– Use removal wedge - 3409- or a small screwdriver to carefully prise out selector lever/gear lever boot at side -arrows- and fold upwards.



– Protect trim panel for centre console all around insert for centre console with adhesive tape to avoid damaging surfaces.
– Reach beneath insert -1- for centre console and carefully lift insert out of centre console -arrows-.
– Unplug electrical connectors and carefully take out insert for centre console by lifting over selector lever/gear lever.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 34

3.5 Removing and installing centre console storage box (front)

⇒ “3.5.1 Removing and installing storage tray (front)”, page 42

⇒ “3.5.2 Removing and installing centre console storage box (front)”, page 42

⇒ “3.5.3 Removing and installing compartment for sliding cover for storage box in centre console”, page 43

3.5.1 Removing and installing storage tray (front)

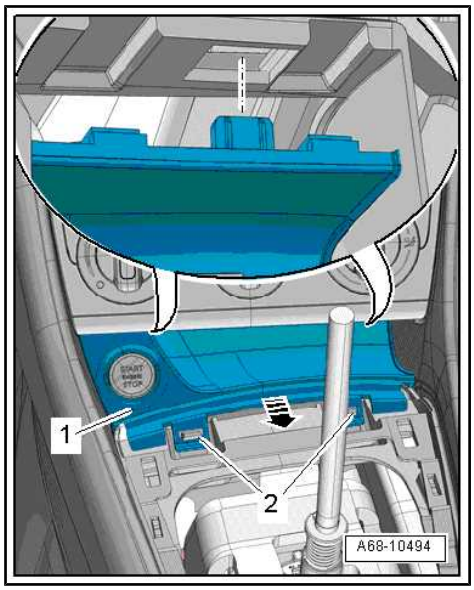
Removing

– Remove insert for centre console ⇒ page 40 .

– Release storage tray -1- at retaining catches -2- and take it out of mountings on centre console towards rear -arrow-.

– Equipment version with entry and start authorisation button - E408- : Remove air conditioning system control unit - J301- / Climatronic control unit - J255- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit .

– Equipment version with entry and start authorisation button - E408- : Unplug electrical connector.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 34

3.5.2 Removing and installing centre console storage box (front)

Removing

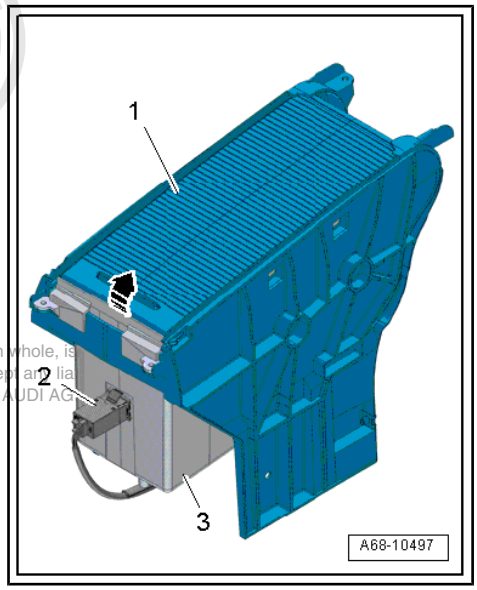
– Remove centre console ⇒ page 45 .

– Remove compartment for sliding cover for storage box in centre console ⇒ page 43 .

– Open sliding cover -1- and push it all the way to the rear.

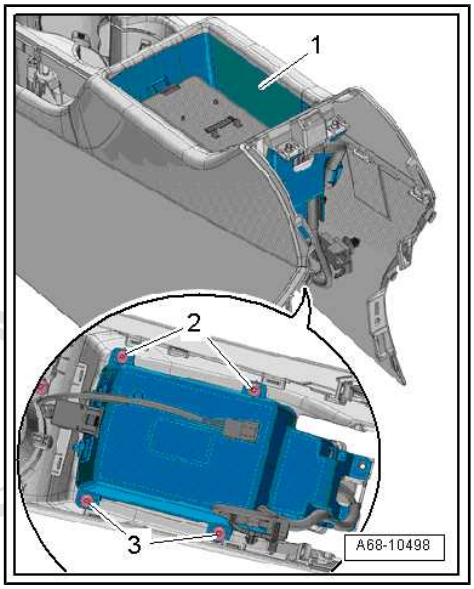
– Equipment version with connection for external audio sources - R199- : Remove connection for external audio sources - R199- -item 2- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Connection for external multimedia devices; Removing and installing connection for external audio sources - R199- .

– Press storage box -3- upwards out of compartment for sliding cover -arrow- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Equipment version with centre armrest (front): Remove centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 53 .
– Remove bolts -2- and -3- and detach storage box -1- downwards.
– Equipment version with connection for external audio sources - R199- : Remove connection for external audio sources - R199- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Connection for external multimedia devices; Removing and installing connection for external audio sources - R199- .
– Equipment version with telephone bracket - R126- : Remove telephone bracket - R126- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Telephone system; Removing and installing telephone bracket - R126- .



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

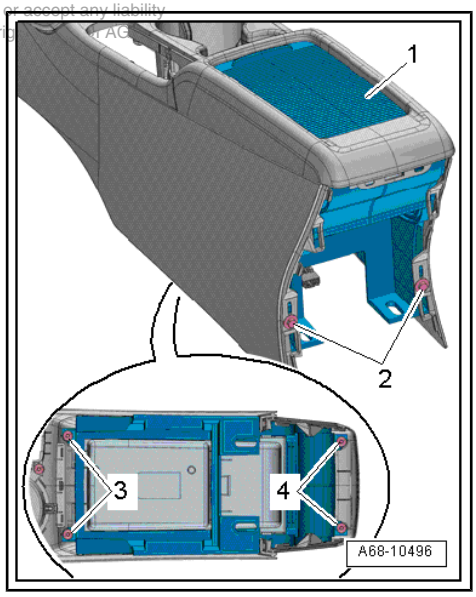
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 34

3.5.3 Removing and installing compartment for sliding cover for storage box in centre console

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 45 .
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Turn over centre console.
– Remove bolts -3- and -4-.
– Lift compartment for sliding holder -1- with storage box out of centre console.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 34

3.6 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front)

⇒ “3.6.1 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front)”, page 44

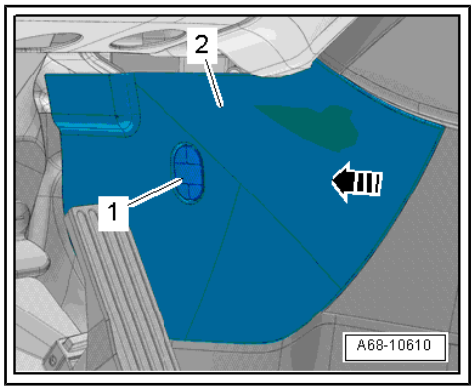
⇒ “3.6.2 Removing and installing bracket for centre console footwell trim (front)”, page 44

3.6.1 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front)

Removing

– Using screwdriver, prise off cap -1- and unscrew bolt for footwell trim underneath cap.

– Pull footwell trim -2- upwards out of centre console -arrow- and detach.

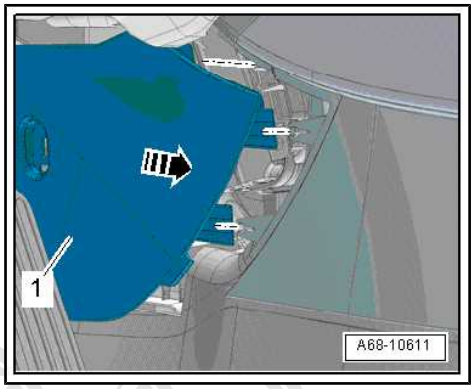


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Engage footwell trim -1- at rear of centre console -arrow-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.1.3 Exploded view - centre console (footwell trim)”, page 39



3.6.2 Removing and installing bracket for centre console footwell trim (front)

Removing

– Remove footwell trim ⇒ page 44 .

– Remove retaining clips -3- from bracket for footwell trim.

– Press floor wiring to side in vicinity of bolted connections and remove nuts -1-.

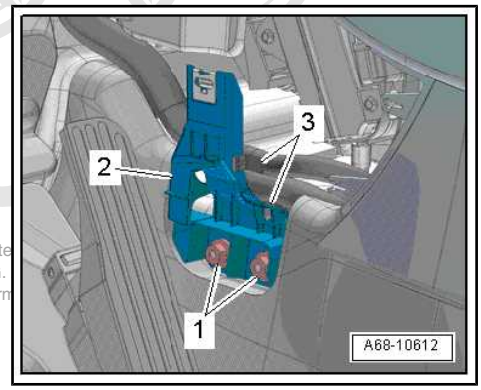
– Detach bracket -2- for footwell trim.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of inform

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.1.3 Exploded view - centre console (footwell trim)”, page 39



3.7 Removing and installing centre console

⇒ “3.7.1 Removing and installing centre console”, page 45

⇒ “3.7.2 Removing and installing vent (rear)”, page 46

⇒ “3.7.3 Removing and installing mounting for buttons and socket”, page 47

⇒ “3.7.4 Removing and installing bag hook”, page 48

⇒ “3.7.5 Removing and installing mounting for bag hook”, page 48

⇒ “3.7.6 Making opening for bag hook mounting in new centre console”, page 49

3.7.1 Removing and installing centre console

Removing

– Remove insert for centre console ⇒ page 40 .

– Equipment version with entry and start authorisation button - E408- : Remove storage tray (front) ⇒ page 42 .

– Remove mounting for buttons and socket ⇒ page 47 .

– Remove cover (rear) for centre console ⇒ page 39 .

– Equipment version with vent: Remove air duct for rear vent ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

– Equipment version with entry and start authorisation system: Remove interior aerial 1 for entry and start authorisation - R138- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Removing and installing interior aerial 1 for entry and start authorisation - R138- .

– Equipment version with telephone bracket - R126- : Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring clear.

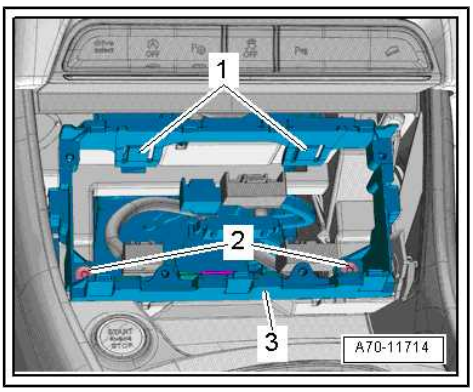
– Equipment version with connection for external audio sources - R199- : Remove connection for external audio sources - R199- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Connection for external multimedia devices; Removing and installing connection for external audio sources - R199- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

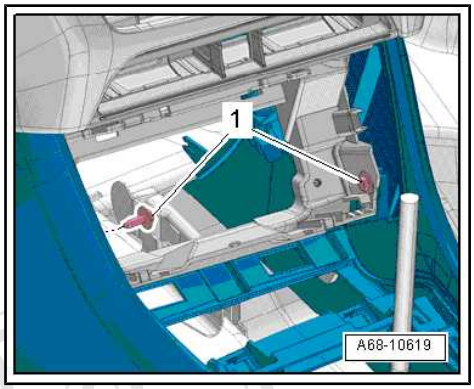
– Remove air conditioning system control unit - J301- / Climatronic control unit - J255- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit .

– Equipment version with air conditioner: Unscrew bolts -2-.

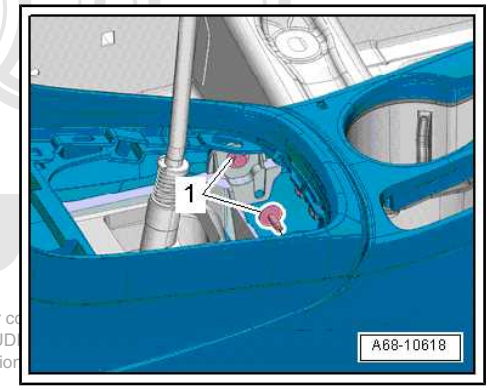
– Release catches -1- and detach retaining frame -3- for air conditioning system control unit.



– Remove bolts -1- (front) for centre console.

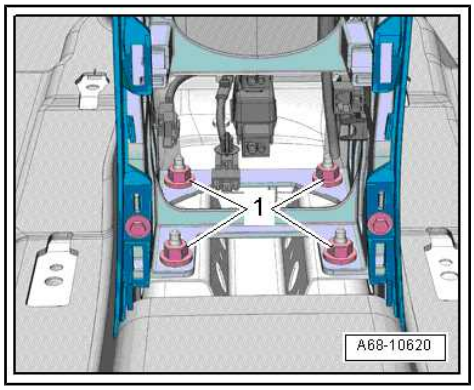


– Remove bolts -1- (centre) for centre console.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI
with respect to the correctness of information

– Remove nuts -1- for centre console/compartment for sliding cover.



Note

Equipment version with compartment for sliding cover: Remove two nuts.

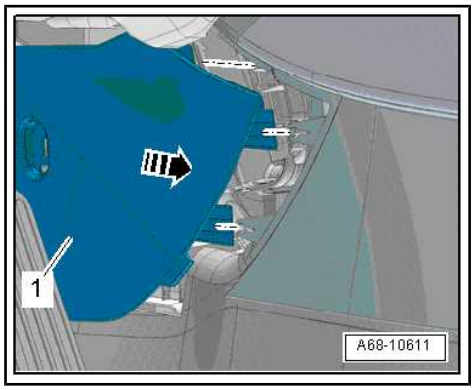
– Lift centre console, pull it out of dash panel towards rear and remove by lifting it over selector lever/gear lever.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fit centre console in position and guide electrical connectors through opening in centre console.

– Engage front of centre console in footwell trim -1- -arrow-.

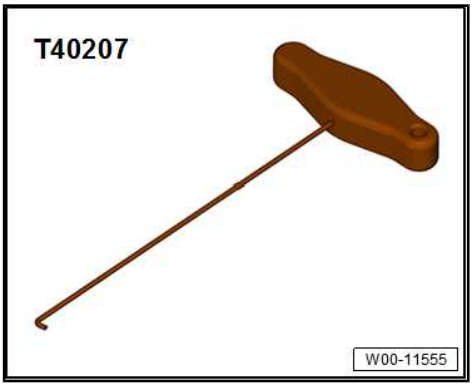


Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 34

3.7.2 Removing and installing vent (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hook - T40207-

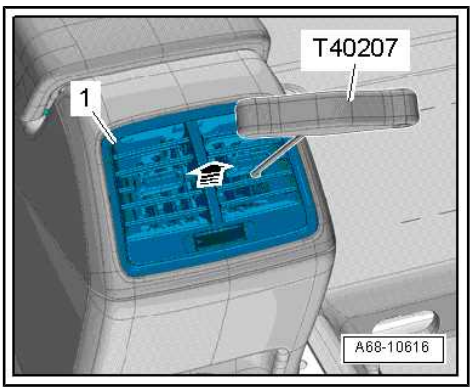


Removing

– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.

Note

A hole is provided on both sides of the vent for engaging the hook -T40207- .



– Carefully insert hook - T40207- between louvres and engage at side of vent.
– Working alternately on each side, carefully pull vent -1- out of opening -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector.

Installing

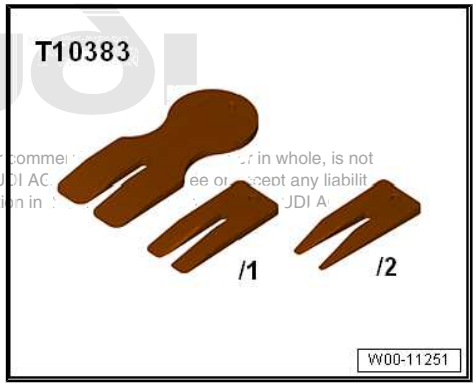
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 34

3.7.3 Removing and installing mounting for buttons and socket

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG ee or cept any liabilit with respect to the correctness of information in UDI A

Removing

– Unclip rear of mounting -1- from centre console using wedge -T10383/1- .

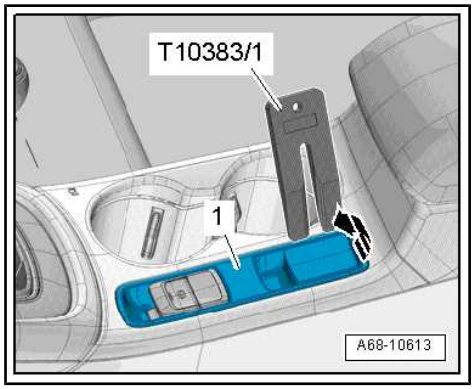
– Swivel mounting upwards -arrow- and disengage at front from centre console.

– Unplug electrical connector for buttons and socket.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 34



3.7.4 Removing and installing bag hook

Removing

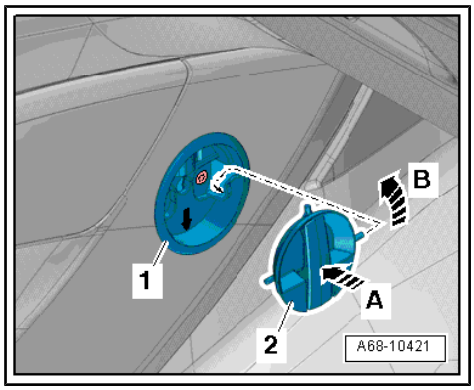
– Press bag hook -2- into mounting -1- for bag hook -arrow A-.

– Turn bag hook anti-clockwise as far as it will go -arrow B- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 34



3.7.5 Removing and installing mounting for bag hook

Removing

– Remove bag hook ⇒ page 48 .

– Remove air conditioning system control unit - J301- / Climatronic control unit - J255- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit .

– Unscrew bolts -4- and detach mounting -1- for bag hook.

– Detach bracket -2- on back of centre console -3-.

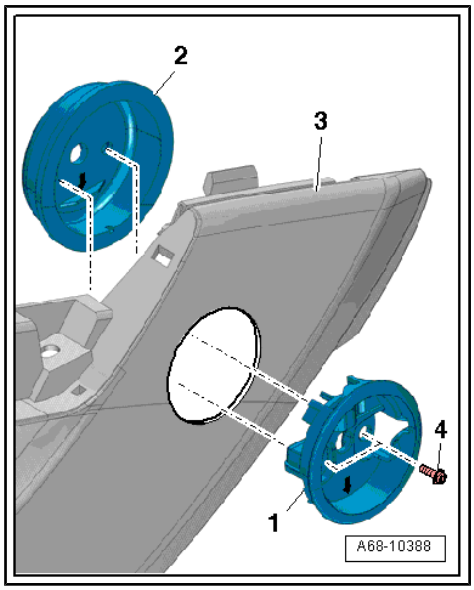
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Align mounting and bracket for bag hook in centre console.

• Arrow mark must face downwards.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 34



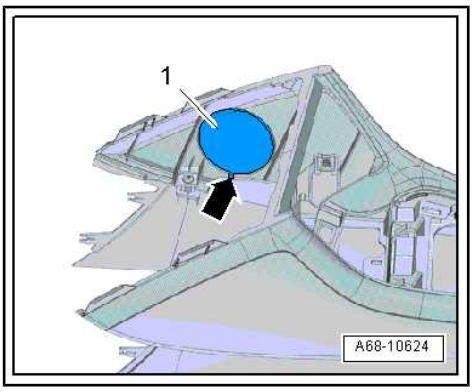
Copyright by AUDI AG. Distribution of this document is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.7.6 Making opening for bag hook mounting in new centre console

Note

- *When it is supplied as a replacement part, the centre console does not have an opening for the bag hook mounting.*
- *For the equipment version with a bag hook, the opening must be made in the new centre console as described below.*

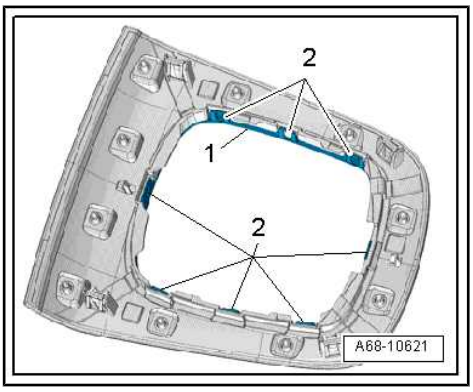
Procedure



– Punch hole (∅ approx. 54 mm) in embossed area on inside of centre console (highlighted section -1-) for mounting for bag hook, as shown in illustration.
– Make indentation -arrow- in centre console as locating element for mounting for bag hook, as shown in illustration.
– Install mounting for bag hook ⇒ page 48 .
– Install bag hook ⇒ page 48 .
– Install centre console ⇒ page 45 .

3.8 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console

Removing



– Remove insert for centre console ⇒ page 40 .
– Carefully release trim frame -1- from fasteners -2- and lift off.

Note

Proceed very carefully when removing and installing as the fasteners can be damaged quite easily.

Installing

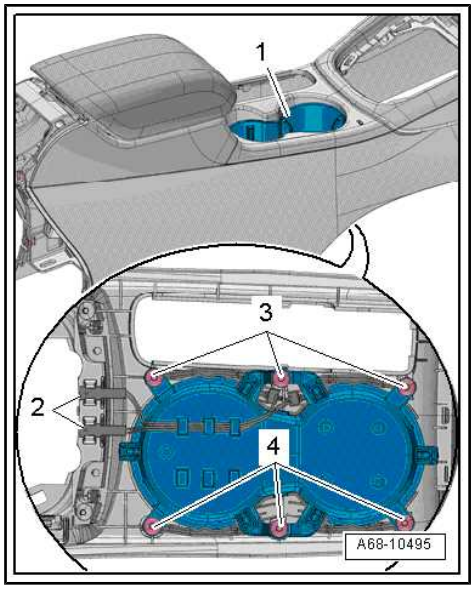
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 34

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.9 Removing and installing cup holder

Removing



– Remove centre console ⇒ page 45 .
– Equipment version with cup holder illumination bulb - L121- : Move clear electrical connectors -2-.
– Remove bolts -3- and -4- and detach cup holder -1- downwards.

Installing

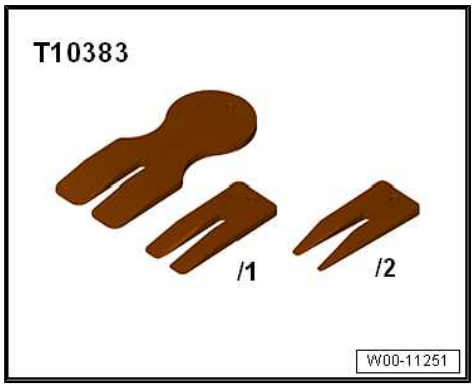
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 34

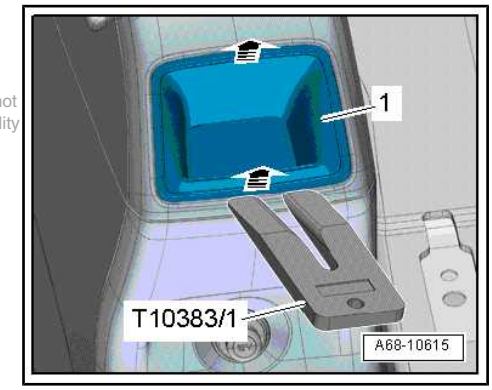
3.10 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing



– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.
– Insert wedge -T10383/1- in gap between storage box and centre console.
– Disengage storage box -1- at top and bottom -arrows- and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 34

3.11 Removing and installing bracket for centre console

Removing

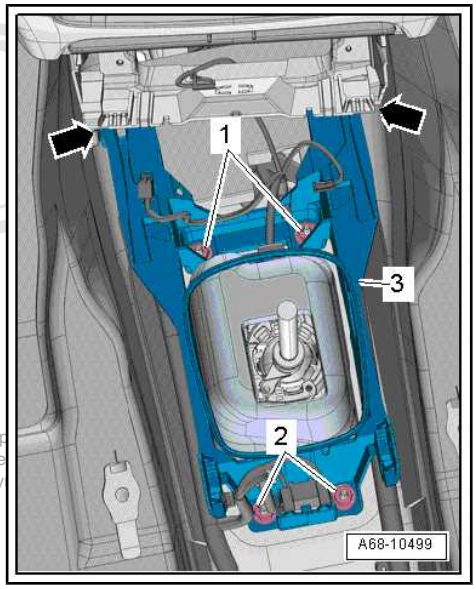
– Remove centre console ⇒ page 45 .

– Unplug electrical connectors and move clear.

– Equipment version with front seat heating and manual air conditioner: Remove heated front seats control unit - J774- ⇒ page 332 .

– Remove nuts -1- and -2-.

– Disengage lugs -arrows- from guides on dash panel and remove bracket -3-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 34

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

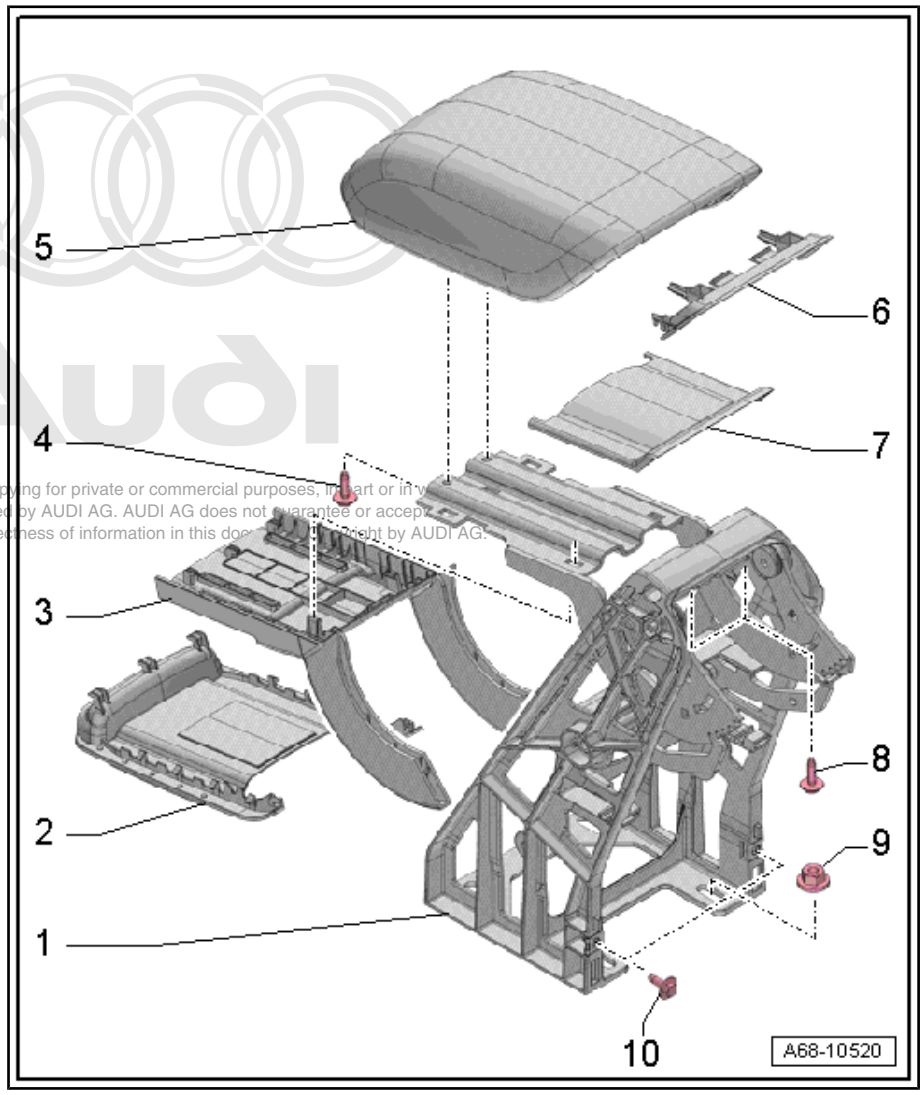
4 Centre armrest (front)

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 52

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)”, page 53

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)”, page 53

4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)



1 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 53

2 - Cover (bottom)

- ❑ For centre armrest padding
- ❑ Engage at front of centre armrest padding and press on until it engages audibly

3 - Trim (bottom)

- ❑ For centre armrest
- ❑ Only available as replacement part together with -item 1-
- ❑ Clip into centre armrest

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.2 Nm

5 - Centre armrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 53

6 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For centre armrest padding
- ❑ Only available as replacement part together with -item 5-
- ❑ Clip into centre armrest padding

7 - Trim (top)

- ❑ For centre armrest
- ❑ Only available as replacement part together with -item 1-
- ❑ Clip into centre armrest

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

9 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 10 Nm

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

❑ 3 Nm

4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)

Removing

– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.

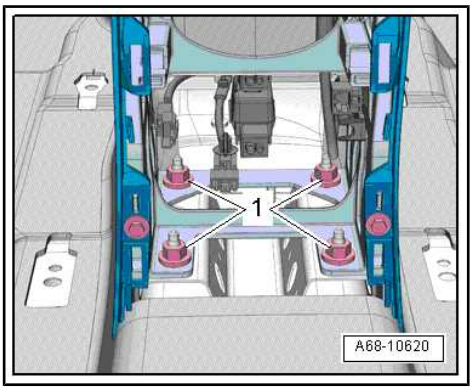
– Remove cover (rear) for centre console ⇒ page 39 .

– Equipment version with vent: Remove air duct for rear vent ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

– Equipment version with telephone bracket - R126- : Disengage electrical connectors from centre armrest and move wiring clear.

– Equipment version with connection for external audio sources - R199- : Disengage electrical connector from centre armrest and move wiring clear.

– Unscrew nuts -1- for centre armrest.

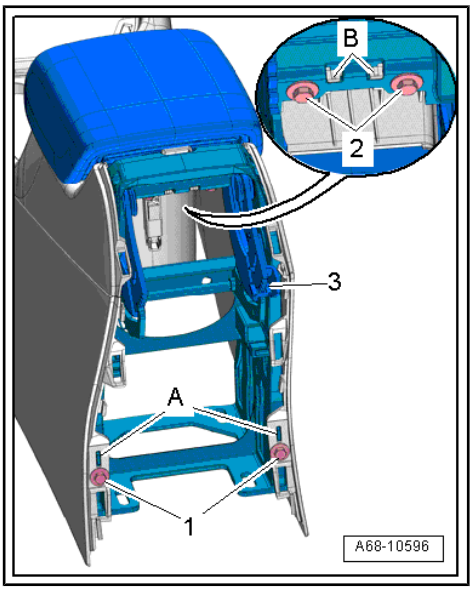


– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.

– Open centre armrest slightly and disengage retaining tabs -B- of centre console from centre armrest.

– Press centre console (rear) outwards at sides and off centre armrest; to do so, disengage centre console at retaining tabs -A-.

– At the same time lift centre armrest -3- off studs by swivelling top of centre console to rear and take it out towards rear.



Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Working from rear, insert centre armrest into centre console and at studs.

– Make sure centre armrest and centre console engage properly in retaining tabs -A- and -B-.

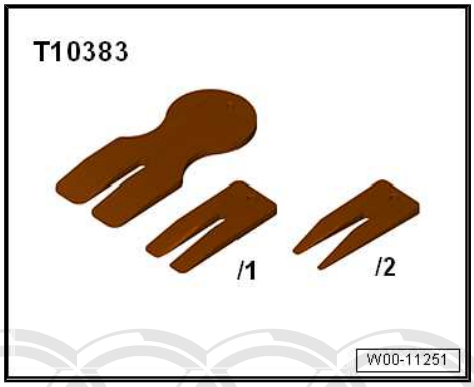
Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 52

4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)

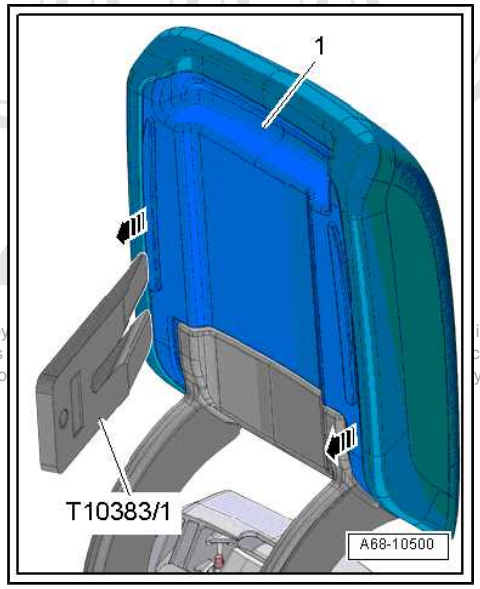
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Starting at side, unclip cover -1- from centre armrest padding -arrows- using wedge -T10383/1- .



Protected by copy
permitted unless
with respect to
in whole, is not
cept any liability
y AUDI AG.

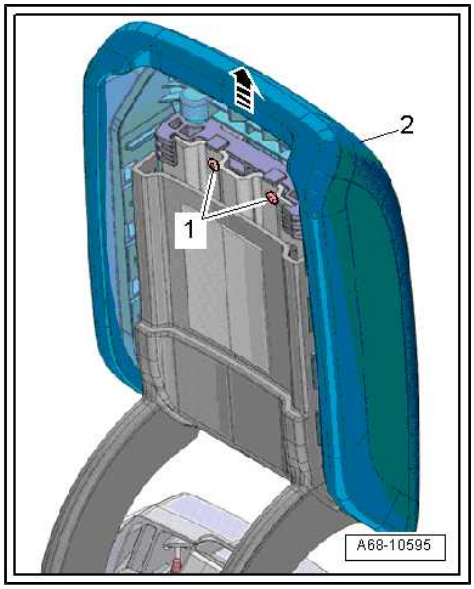
– Remove bolts -1- and detach padding -2- upwards from centre armrest -arrow-.

Installing

– Fit padding -2- on centre armrest and tighten bolts -1-.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 52



5 Interior mirror

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror”, page 55

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror”, page 58

⇒ “5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off”, page 61

⇒ “5.4 Switching compass display on and off”, page 61

⇒ “5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone”, page 61

⇒ “5.6 Calibrating digital compass”, page 62

⇒ “5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles”, page 62

⇒ “5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map”, page 63

⇒ “5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror”, page 68

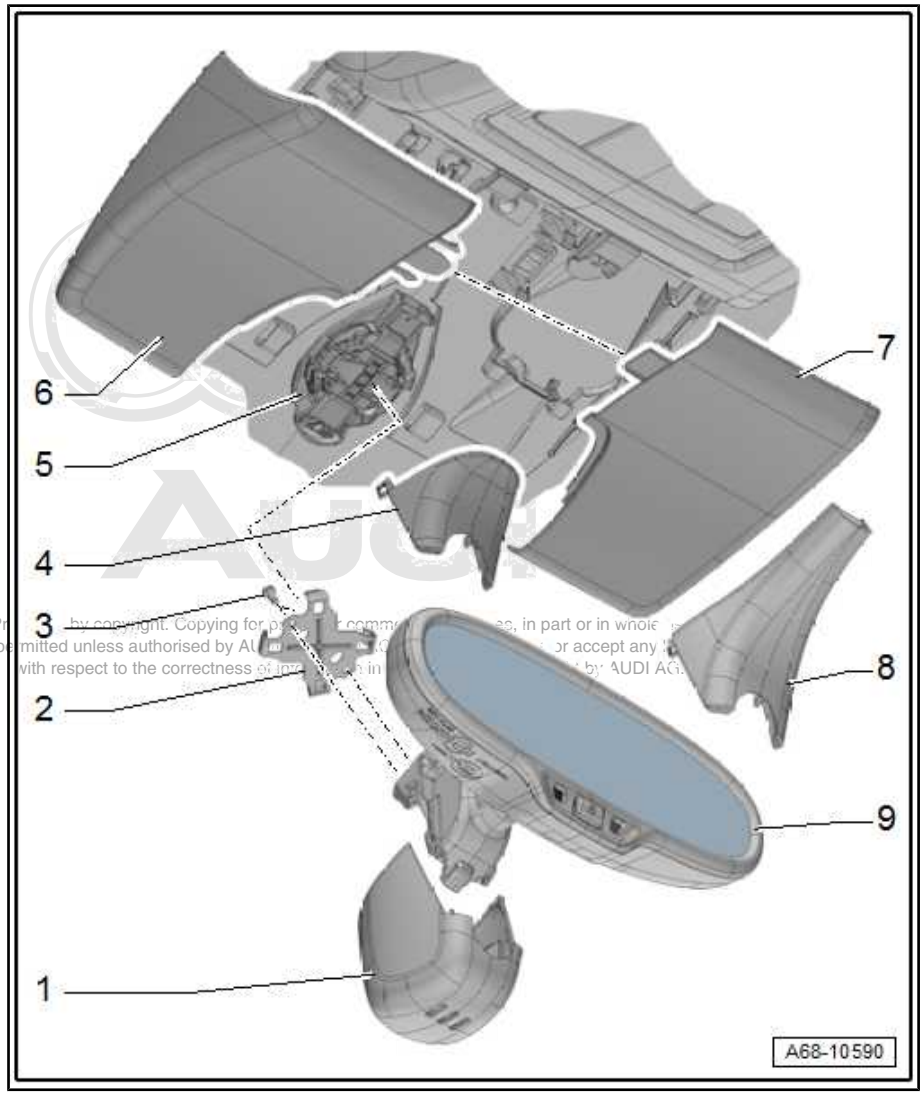
5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror

⇒ “5.1.1 Exploded view - interior mirror, version 1”, page 55

⇒ “5.1.2 Exploded view - interior mirror, version 2”, page 57

5.1.1 Exploded view - interior mirror, version 1

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Cover (front)

- ❑ For mirror base
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror”, page 58

2 - Retaining clip

- ❑ For interior mirror
- ❑ Different versions; for correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renew after removing interior mirror

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

4 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For mirror base
- ❑ For interior mirror with optional equipment

5 - Retainer

- ❑ For interior mirror
- ❑ Bonded to windscreen

6 - Trim cover (left-side)

- ❑ For interior mirror with optional equipment
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

7 - Trim cover (right-side)

- ❑ For interior mirror with optional equipment
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

8 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For mirror base
- ❑ For interior mirror without optional equipment
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

9 - Interior mirror

- ❑ Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror or automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7-
- ❑ Different versions; for correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 58
- ❑ Position at 30° angle to installation position and turn clockwise as far as stop
- ❑ Renew retaining clip after removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1.2 Exploded view - interior mirror, version 2

1 - Cover (front)
- ❑ For mirror base

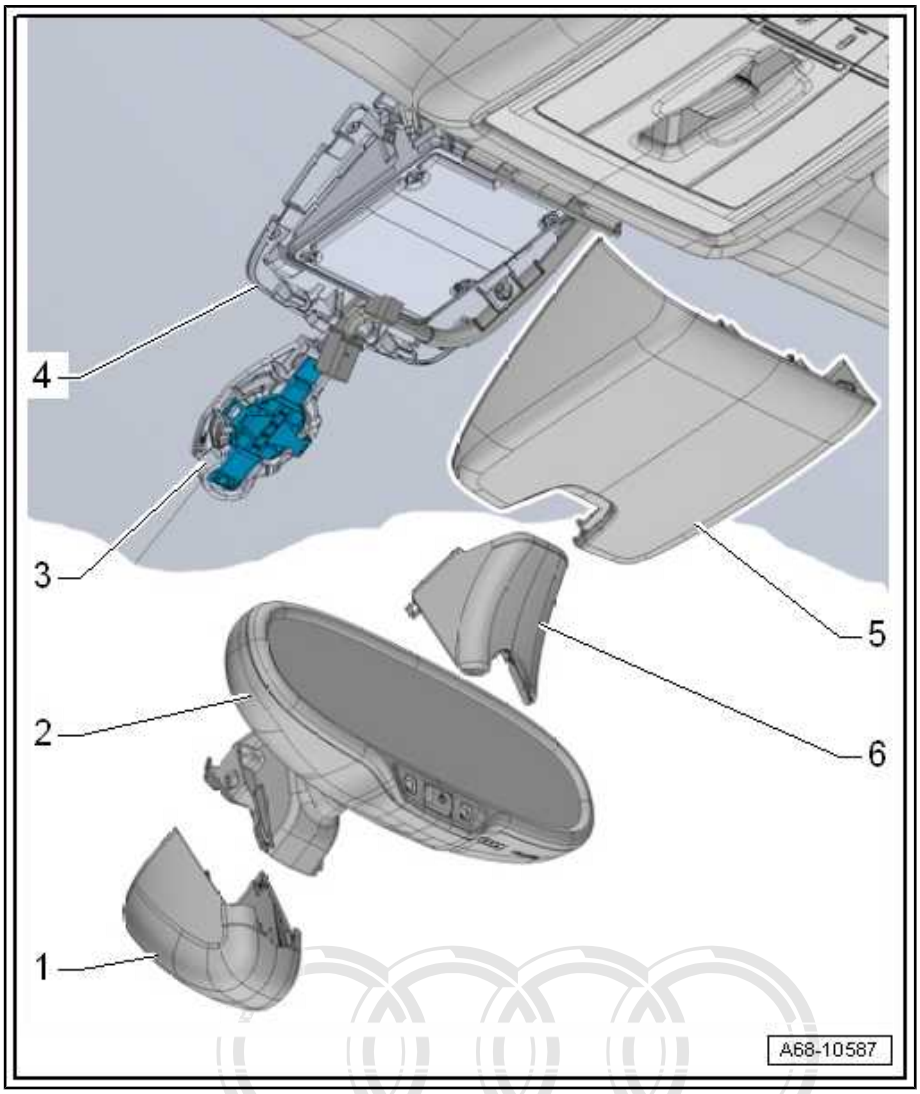
2 - Interior mirror
- ❑ Different versions; for correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 58
- ❑ Position at 20° angle to installation position and turn clockwise as far as stop
- ❑ Renew retaining clip after removing ⇒ page 57

3 - Retainer
- ❑ For interior mirror
- ❑ Bonded to windscreen

4 - Retainer
- ❑ Bonded to windscreen

5 - Cover
- ❑ For interior mirror with optional equipment

6 - Cover (rear)
- ❑ For mirror base



Retaining clip at mirror base

1 - Bolt, 1.5 Nm

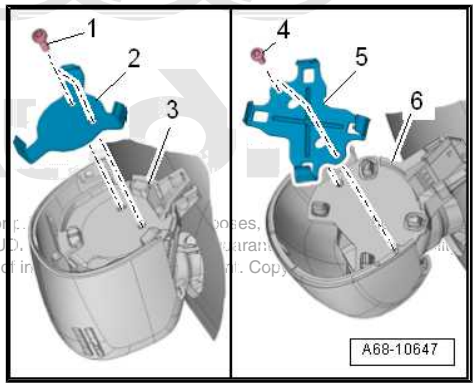
2 - Retaining clip for interior mirror. Renew after removing interior mirror; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Interior mirror

4 - Bolt, 1.5 Nm

5 - Retaining clip for interior mirror. Renew after removing interior mirror; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

6 - Interior mirror

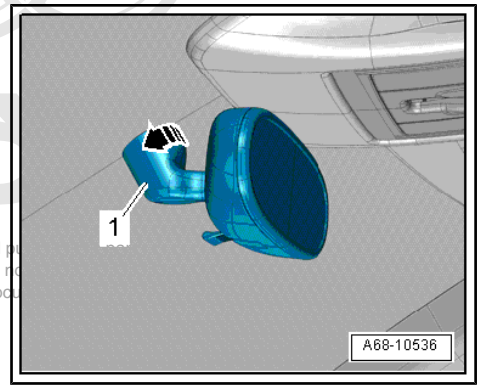


Protected by copyright. Copying for ... permitted unless authorised by AUDI ... with respect to the correctness of ...

5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror

Removing

– Turn interior mirror at mirror base -1- as far as it will go anti-clockwise -arrow- and detach from retainer.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n
with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

Interior mirror without optional equipment:

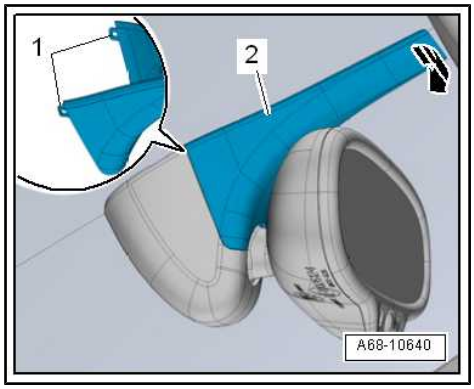
WARNING

- *Note safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror ⇒ page 13*

– Swivel interior mirror down as far as possible (approx. 25°).

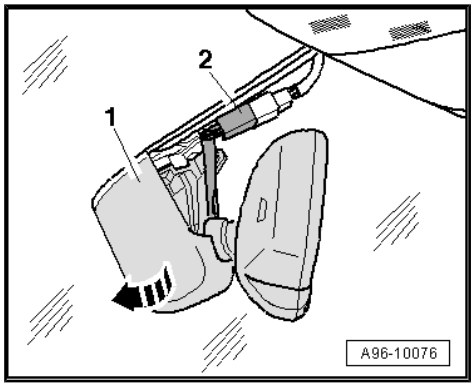
– Pull cover -2- at rear downwards -arrow-, and at the same time release fasteners -1- with a screwdriver.

– Disengage cover at mirror base and detach.



– Take electrical connector -2- out of bracket and unplug.

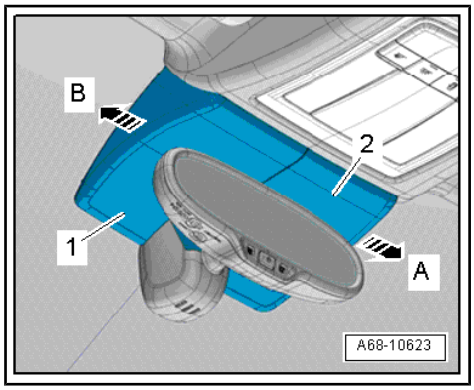
– Turn interior mirror at mirror base -1- as far as it will go anti-clockwise -arrow- and detach from retainer.



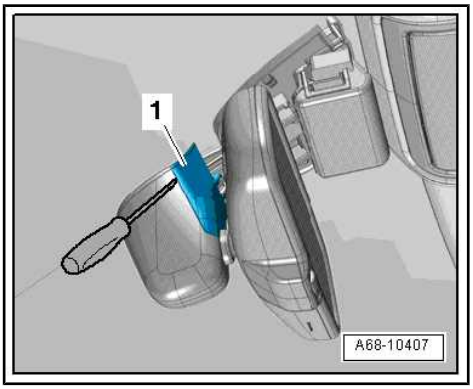
Interior mirror with optional equipment, version 1:

– Unclip trim cover (right-side) -2- from trim cover (left-side) and bracket -arrow A-.

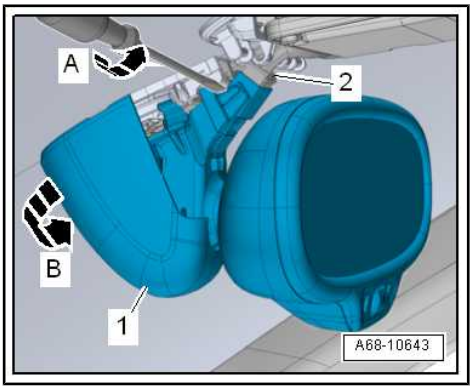
– Unclip trim cover (left-side) -1- from bracket -arrow B- and detach.



– Unclip cover -1- at mirror base with a screwdriver and detach.

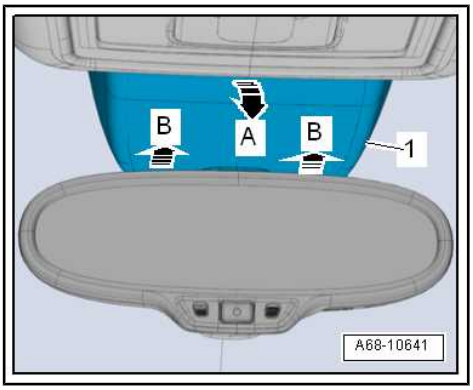


– Insert screwdriver between retainer and mirror base.
– Carefully rotate screwdriver about its own axis -arrow A- until retaining tab is disengaged from retainer.
– At the same time turn mirror base -1- as far as it will go in anti-clockwise direction -arrow B-.
– Detach interior mirror from retainer and unplug electrical connector -2-.

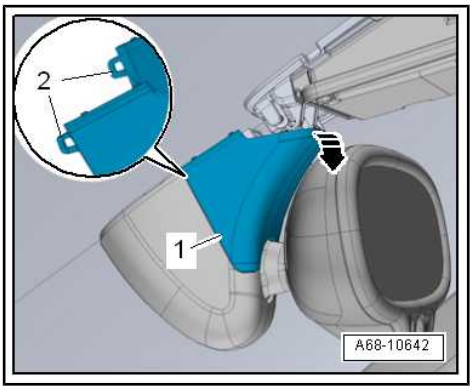


Interior mirror with optional equipment, version 2:

– Unclip cover -1- at rear from moulded headliner and pull it downwards -arrow A-.
– Disengage cover at front from retaining plate for front camera -arrows B- and pull cover out towards rear.

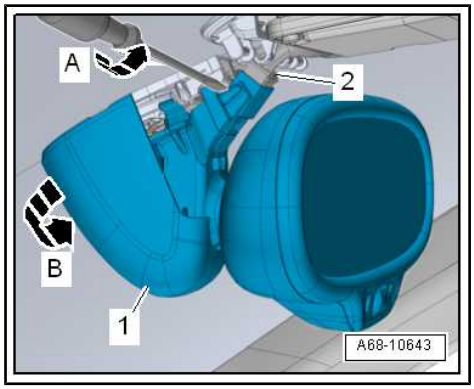


– Pull cover -1- for mirror base downwards -arrow-, and at the same time release fasteners -2- with a screwdriver.
– Disengage cover at mirror base and detach.



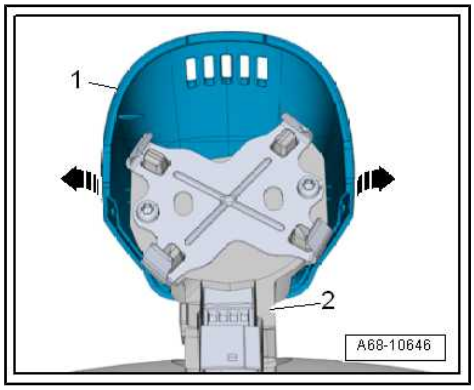
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Insert screwdriver between retainer and mirror base.
– Carefully rotate screwdriver about its own axis -arrow A- until retaining tab is disengaged from retainer.
– At the same time turn mirror base -1- as far as it will go in anti-clockwise direction -arrow B-.
– Detach interior mirror from retainer and unplug electrical connector -2-.



All mirror versions (continued):

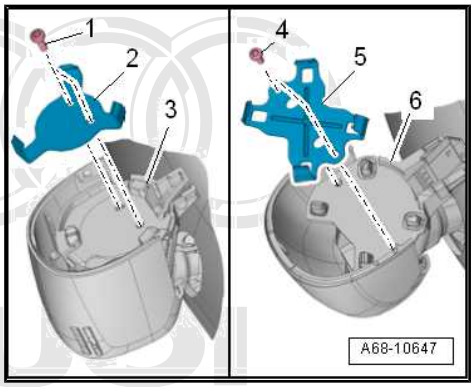
– Carefully disengage retaining tabs -arrows- and pull cover -1- at front downwards out of guide elements on interior mirror base -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

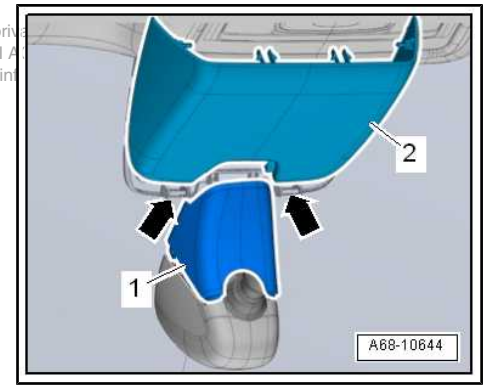
– Renew retaining clip -2- or -5- for interior mirror after removing; for allocation see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
– Fit interior mirror at 30° angle to installation position.
– Turn interior mirror clockwise as far as it will go.



Interior mirror with optional equipment, version 2:

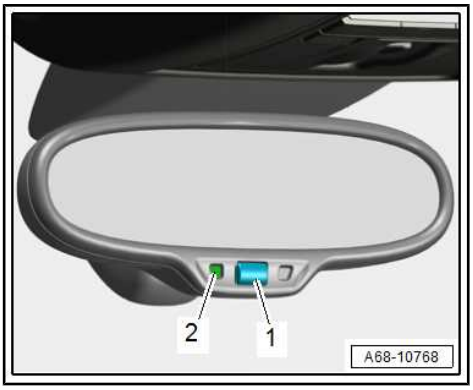
– Position both covers simultaneously and clip them in.
– To do so, engage cover -1- for mirror base loosely at mirror base.
– Guide cover -2- for front camera over cover for mirror base and engage hooks in retaining plate -arrows-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror”, page 55



Protected by copyright. Copying for priv
permitted unless authorised by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of int

5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off



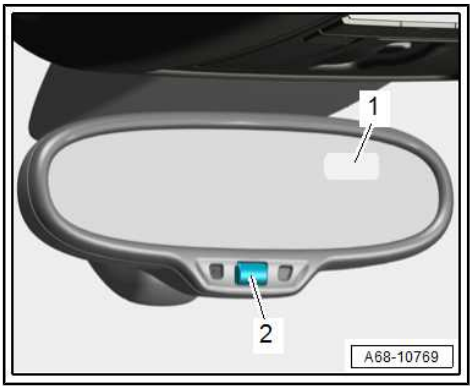
– Press button -1- briefly (up to 3 seconds) to switch automatic anti-dazzle function on or off.

  Automatic anti-dazzle function “On”: Indicator lamp -2- lights up.

  Automatic anti-dazzle function “Off”: Indicator lamp -2- goes out.

- The automatic anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on.
- If you deactivate the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror this will also deactivate the anti-dazzle function for the exterior mirrors.
- When in anti-dazzle mode, the mirror will become lighter as soon as the interior light is switched on or reverse gear is engaged.
- The automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror can only function correctly if the rear sun blind is retracted.

5.4 Switching compass display on and off



– Press button -2- for 3 to 6 seconds. The compass display -1- will be switched “on” or “off”.

  Compass display “on” - direction is indicated.

  Compass display “off” - direction is not indicated.

5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone

It is necessary to set the magnetic deflection zone if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.
- You have reached a distance more than two zones away from the pre-set reference zone after travelling long distances; you should then set a different magnetic deflection zone.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Setting magnetic deflection zone:

– Press and hold button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until compass display shows “Z” and a number for the magnetic deflection zone.

– Press the button repeatedly until the number of the desired magnetic deflection zone appears.

– Select applicable deflection zone from the world map:

♦ Europe ⇒ page 63

♦ North America ⇒ page 63

♦ South America ⇒ page 64

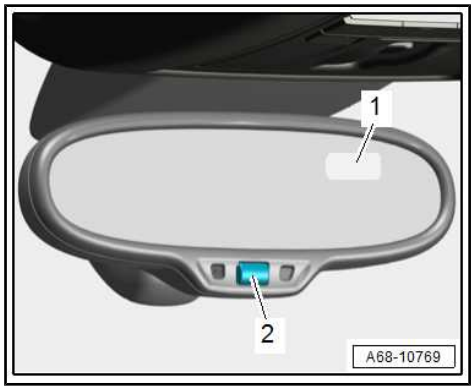
♦ Asia ⇒ page 65

♦ Africa ⇒ page 66

♦ Australia ⇒ page 67

After a few seconds the compass display will switch from the magnetic deflection zone to the current direction/point of the compass.

– Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 61 after setting the magnetic deflection zone.



5.6 Calibrating digital compass

It is necessary to calibrate the digital compass if:

- The directions the digital compass shows are inaccurate.
- The compass display shows a “C” instead of a point of the compass, or if the display remains blank.
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.

In exceptional circumstances, the digital compass may also have to be calibrated, for example if:

- The vehicle battery is reconnected after it has been disconnected for a long period.
- A new audio system or audio system components has/have been fitted.

Calibrating digital compass:

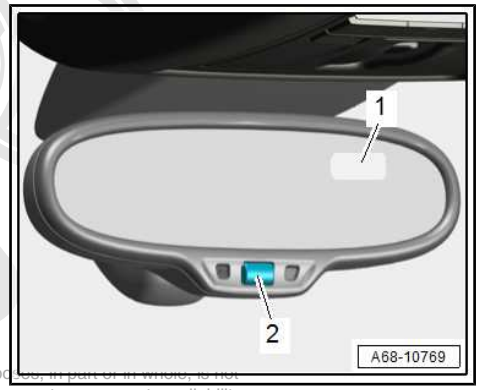
– Switch on ignition.

- Compass display -1- should show “C”.

– If display does not show “C”, press and hold button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until letter “C” appears in compass display.

– Drive the vehicle in a circle two or three times at a speed of approx. 10 km/h (5 mph) until a direction is indicated on the compass display.

– After completing the calibration, re-activate the automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror ⇒ page 61 .



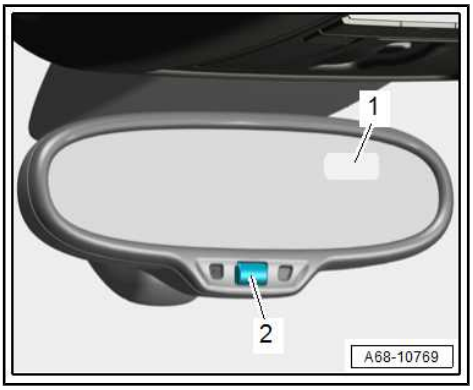
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles

It is necessary to adjust the mirror to right-hand or left-hand drive if:

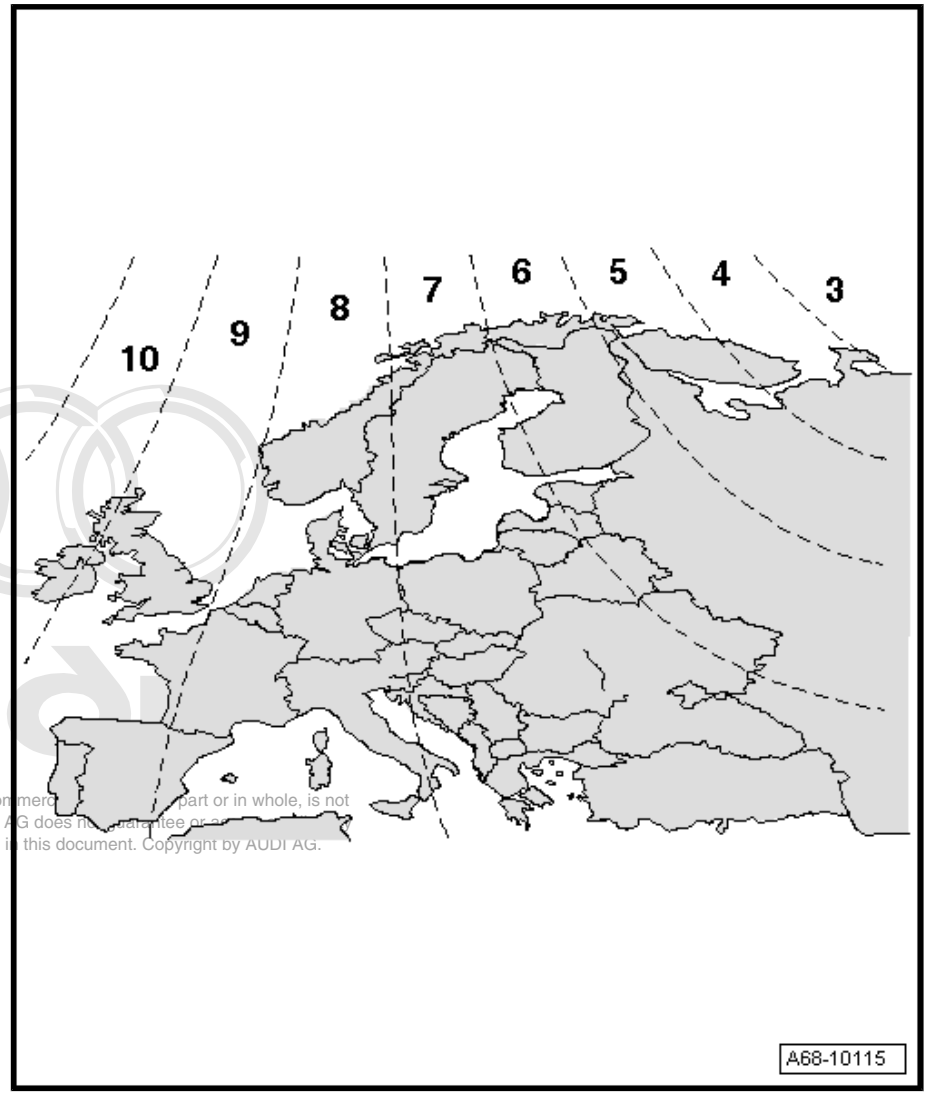
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.

– Press and hold button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until display shows “L” (for left-hand drive vehicles) or “A” (for right-hand drive vehicles).
– Press the button again briefly to change the setting for right-hand or left-hand drive.
– After a short while, the display will automatically show “C” (for calibration). The digital compass must now be calibrated ⇒ page 62 .
– Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 61 after adjusting the mirror for right-hand or left-hand drive.



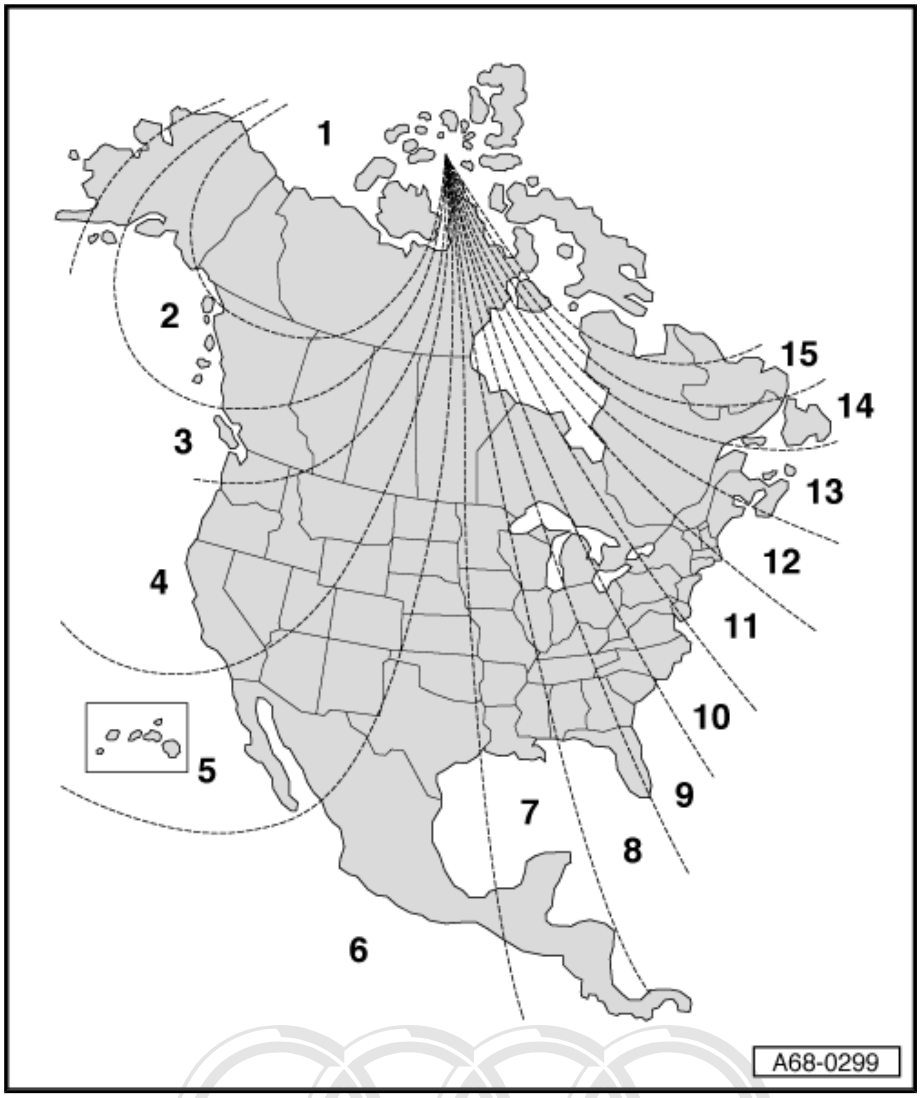
5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map

Europe



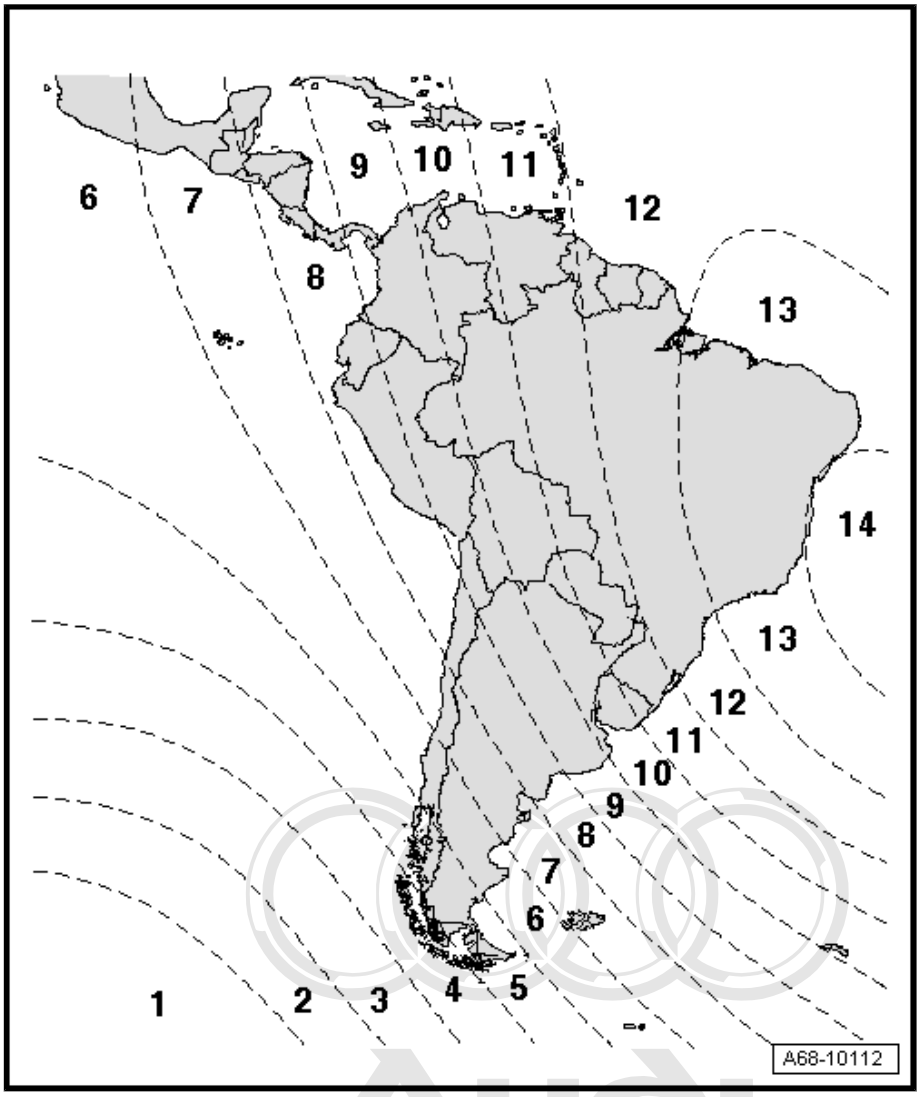
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

North America



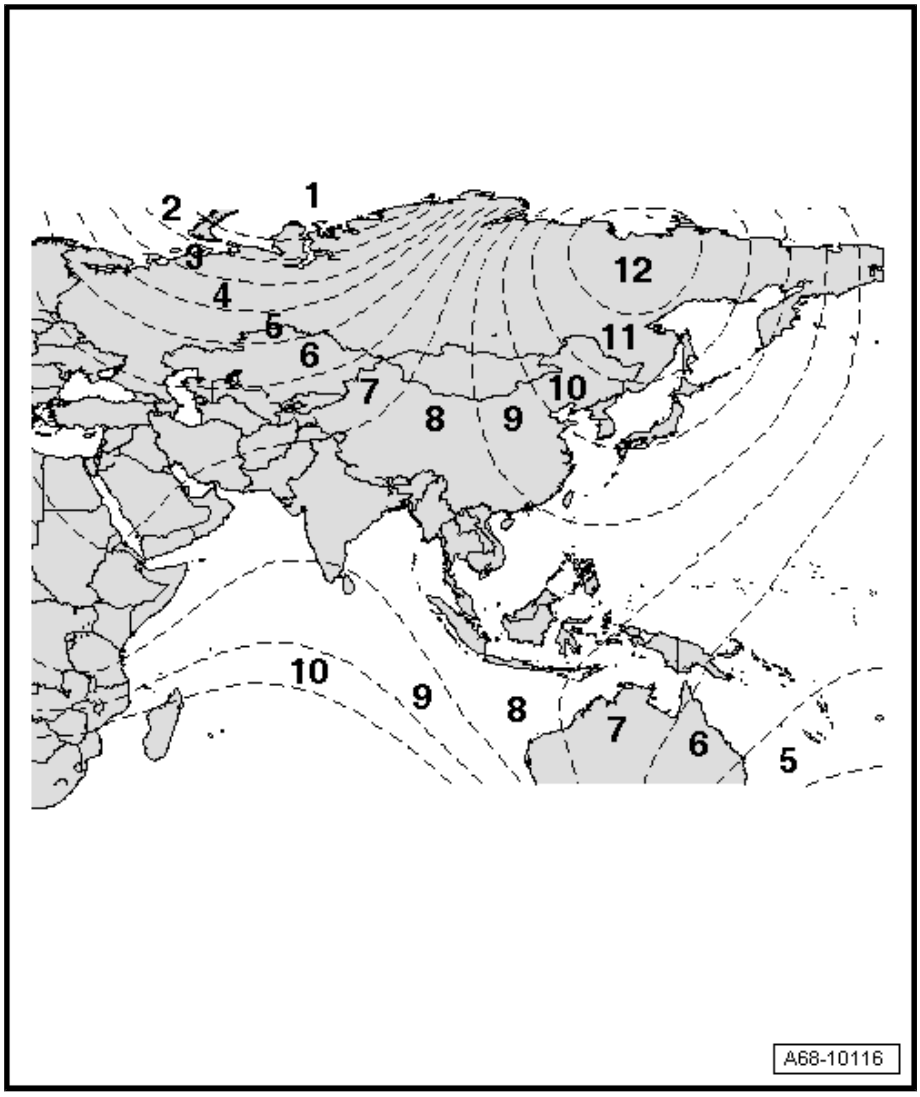
South America

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



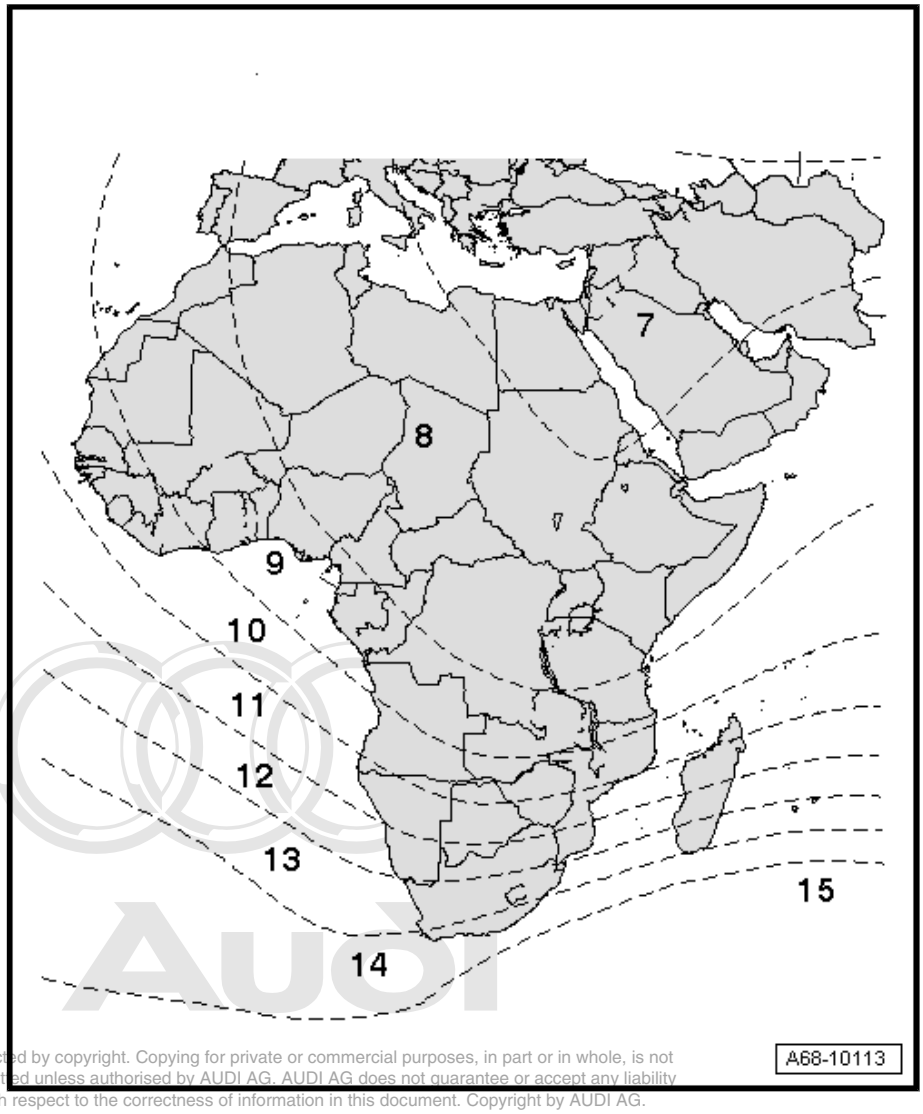
Asia

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



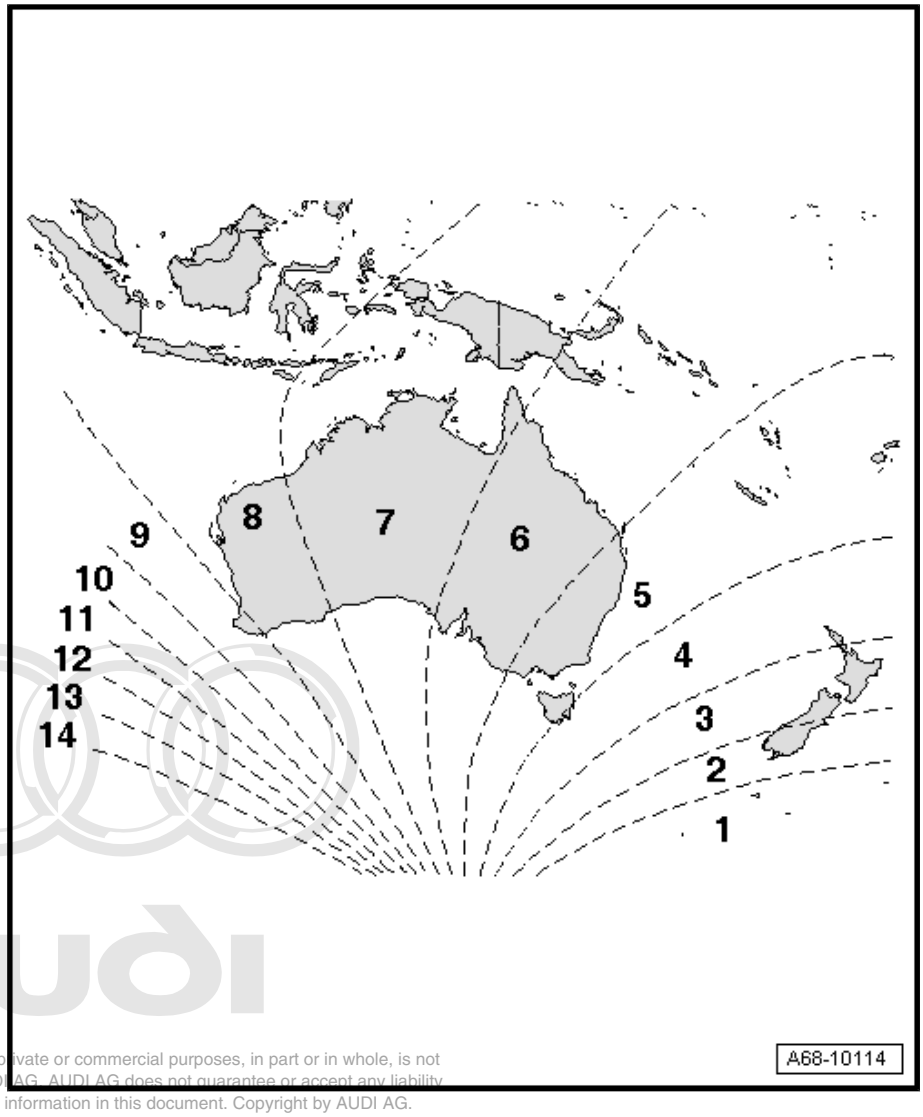
Africa

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Australia



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

The test can only be carried out if the following conditions are met:

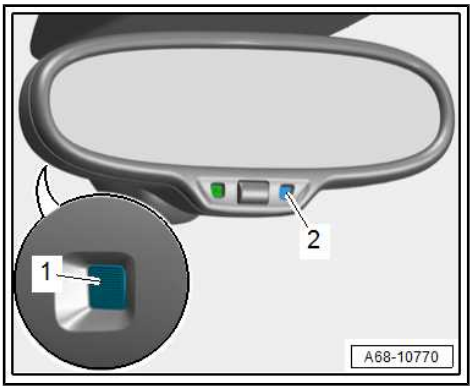
- Interior mirror is fitted.
- Ignition is switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on, indicator lamp must be lit.

Test sequence

– Cover photosensor -1- on housing side.

– Aim a light source, e.g. a torch, at photosensor -2- on mirror side.

• Interior mirror should darken quickly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

69 – Passenger protection

1 Seat belts

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points”, page 70

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 72

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 75

⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 76

⇒ “1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)”, page 77

⇒ “1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)”, page 78

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)”, page 79

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 82

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (front)”, page 85

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)”, page 86

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)”, page 87

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)”, page 89

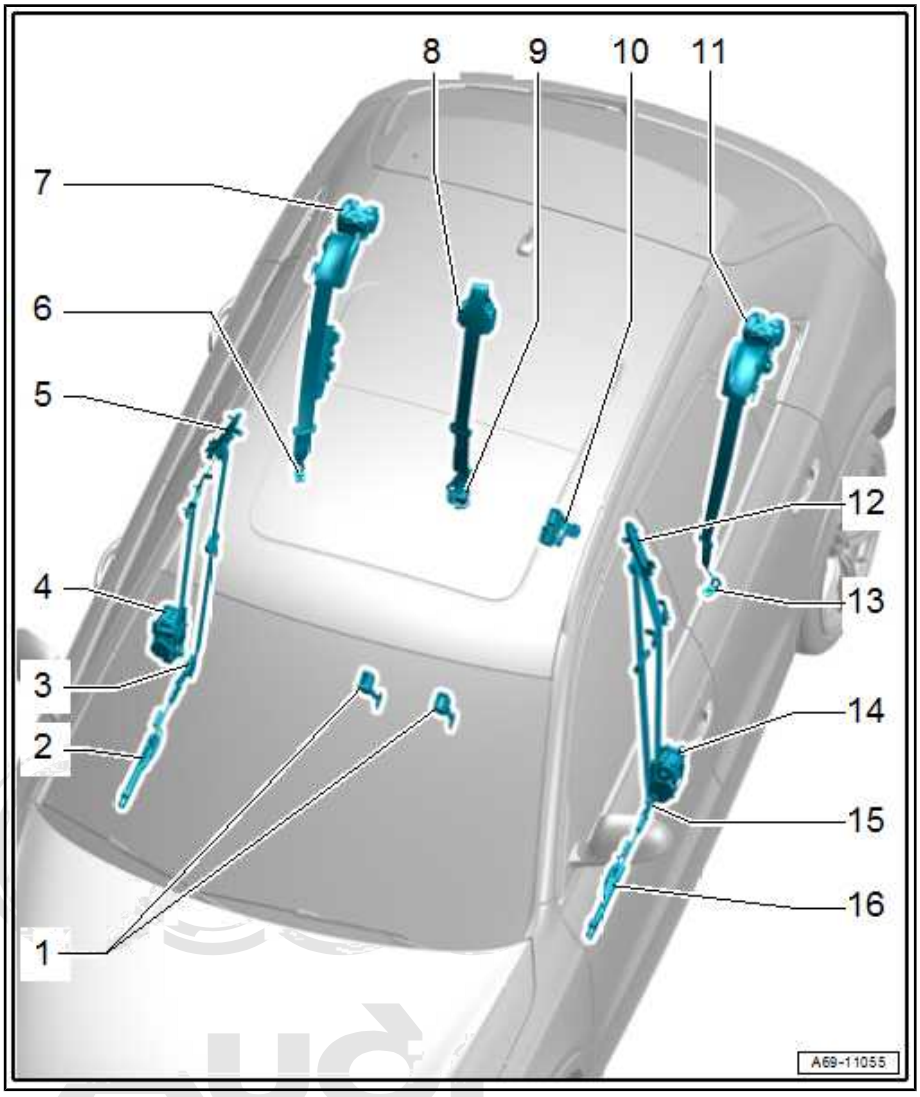
⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing belt height adjuster”, page 90

⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)”, page 91

⇒ “1.15 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)”, page 92

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 77

2 - Front passenger side seat belt tensioner igniter 2 - N298-

- ❑ Only for NAR version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 74

3 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 72

4 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (front)
- ❑ With front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ❑ NAR version: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 72

5 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 72

6 - Outer belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 75

7 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For outer three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ NAR version: with rear belt tensioner igniter on front passenger side - N197-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 75

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For centre three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 76

9 - Belt buckle (rear)/centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 78

10 - Belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 78

11 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For outer three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ NAR version: with rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 75

12 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 72

13 - Outer belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 75

14 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (front)
- ❑ With driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ❑ NAR version: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 72

15 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 72

16 - Driver seat belt tensioner igniter 2 - N297-

- ❑ Only for NAR version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 74

1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)

⇒ "1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), all vehicles except NAR version", page 72

⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), NAR version", page 74

1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), all vehicles except NAR version

1 - Cap

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

3 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 87

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 5 Nm

5 - Belt guide (front)

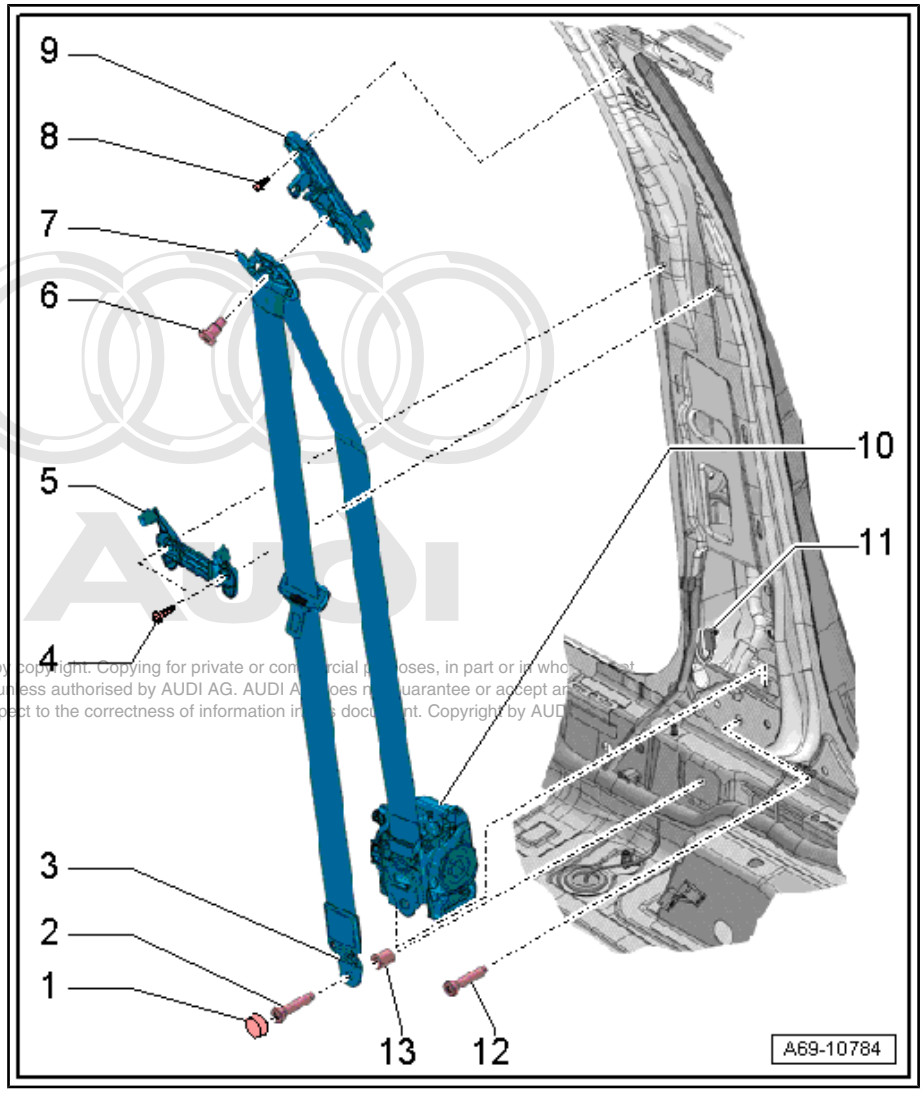
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 85
- ❑ Lay belt in recess in belt guide (front)
- ❑ Do not trap or damage belt
- ❑ Insert centring pin of belt guide (front) in holes on B-pillar

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

7 - Belt guide fitting

- ❑ After tightening bolt, guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

position or in fastening direction

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 27 Nm

9 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 90
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

10 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 79

11 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 79

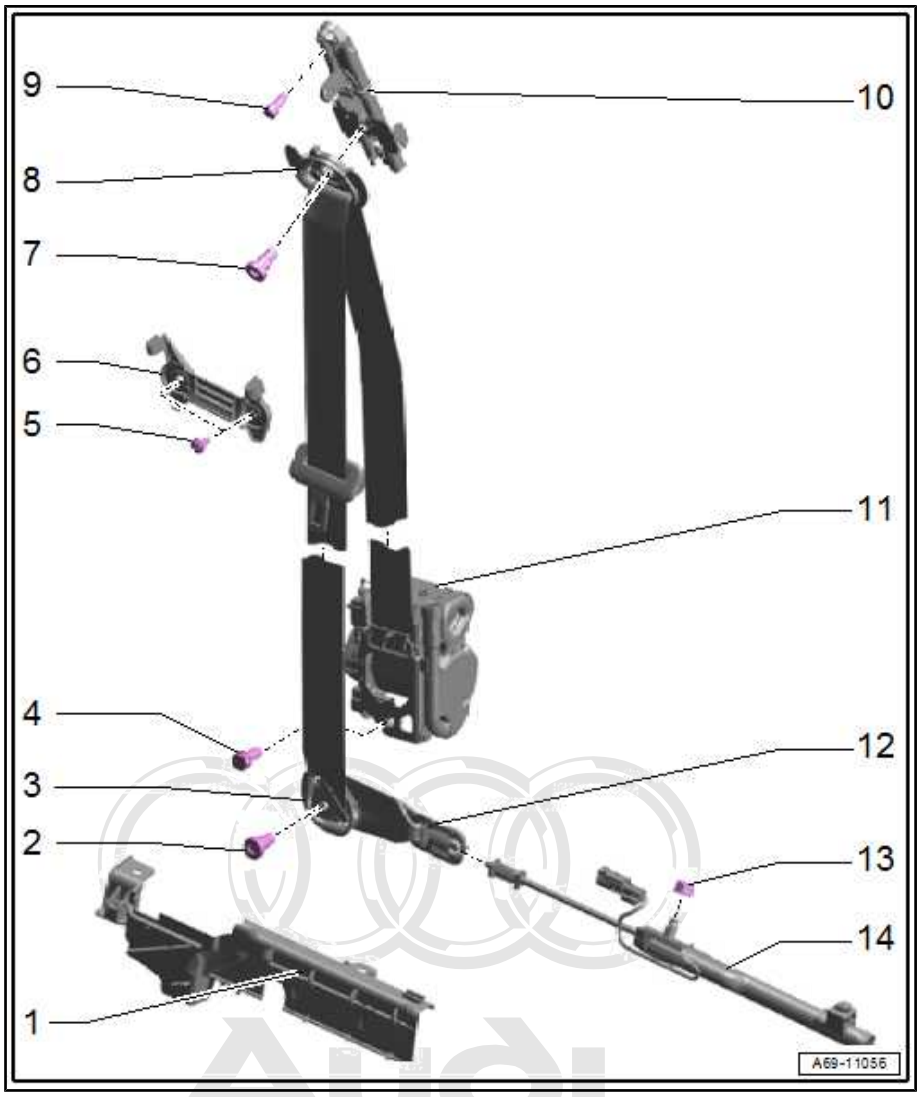
12 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

13 - Stop sleeve

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), NAR version



1 - Cover for belt end fitting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.11.2 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - NAR version”, page 87

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

3 - Belt guide fitting

- ❑ After tightening bolt, guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 5 Nm

6 - Belt guide (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 85
- ❑ Lay belt in recess in belt guide (front)
- ❑ Do not trap or damage belt
- ❑ Insert centring pin of belt guide (front) in holes on B-pillar

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

8 - Belt guide fitting

- ❑ After tightening bolt, guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction

9 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 27 Nm

10 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 90
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

11 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153- and driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154- and front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 79

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Belt end fitting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 87

13 - Nut

- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

14 - Driver seat belt tensioner igniter 2 - N297-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger side seat belt tensioner igniter 2 - N298-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 81

1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)

1 - Belt guide

> **Caution**
>
> *When removing and installing the belt guide, never turn the bolts. They have been set by the manufacturer.*
>
> *Renew entire belt guide if damaged.*

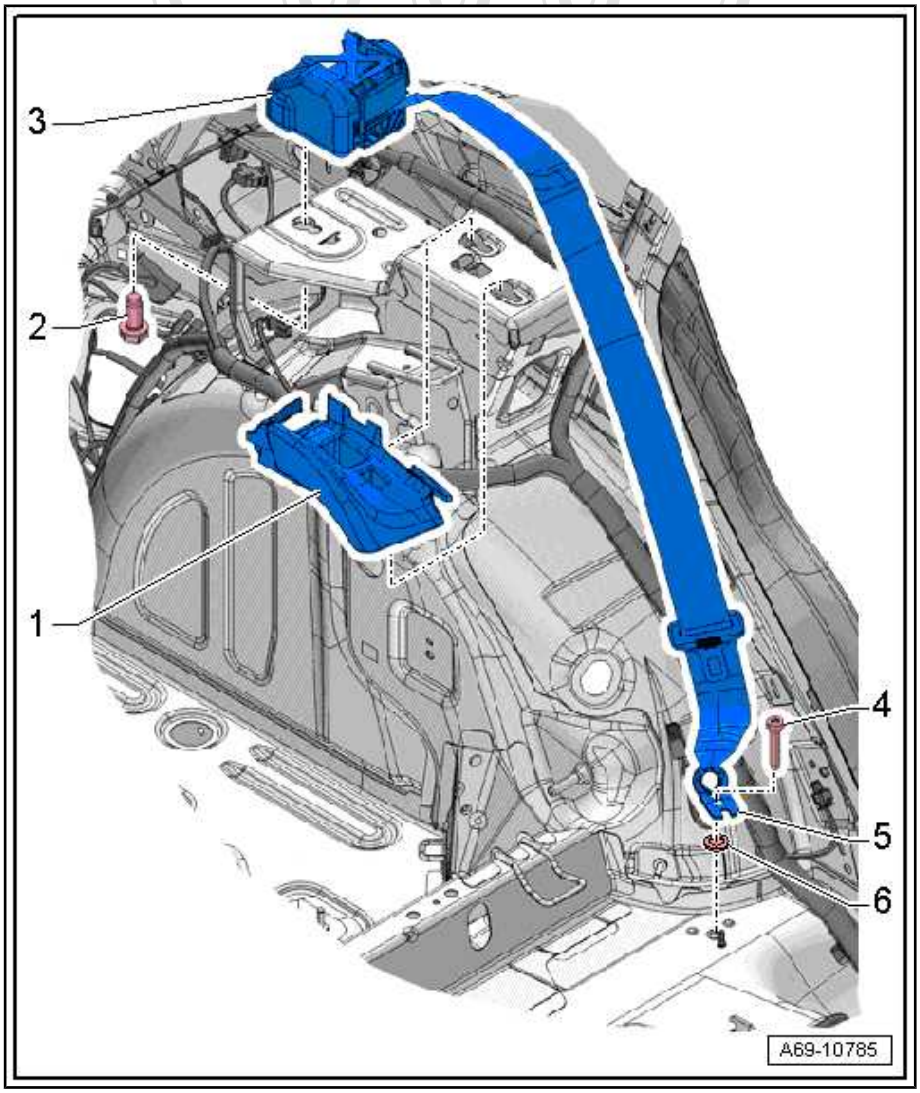
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 86
- ❑ Insert with bolt heads in guide elements at bracket and pull forwards until retaining hook engages

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

3 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Driver side: NAR version with rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ❑ Passenger side: NAR version with rear belt tensioner igniter on front passenger side - N197-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 82



4 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

5 - Outer belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 89

6 - Seal

- ❑ Slide over bolt thread and screw in as far as stop

1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)

1 - Seal

- ❑ Slide over bolt thread and screw in as far as stop

2 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 92

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 78

4 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)

5 - Centre belt guide (rear)

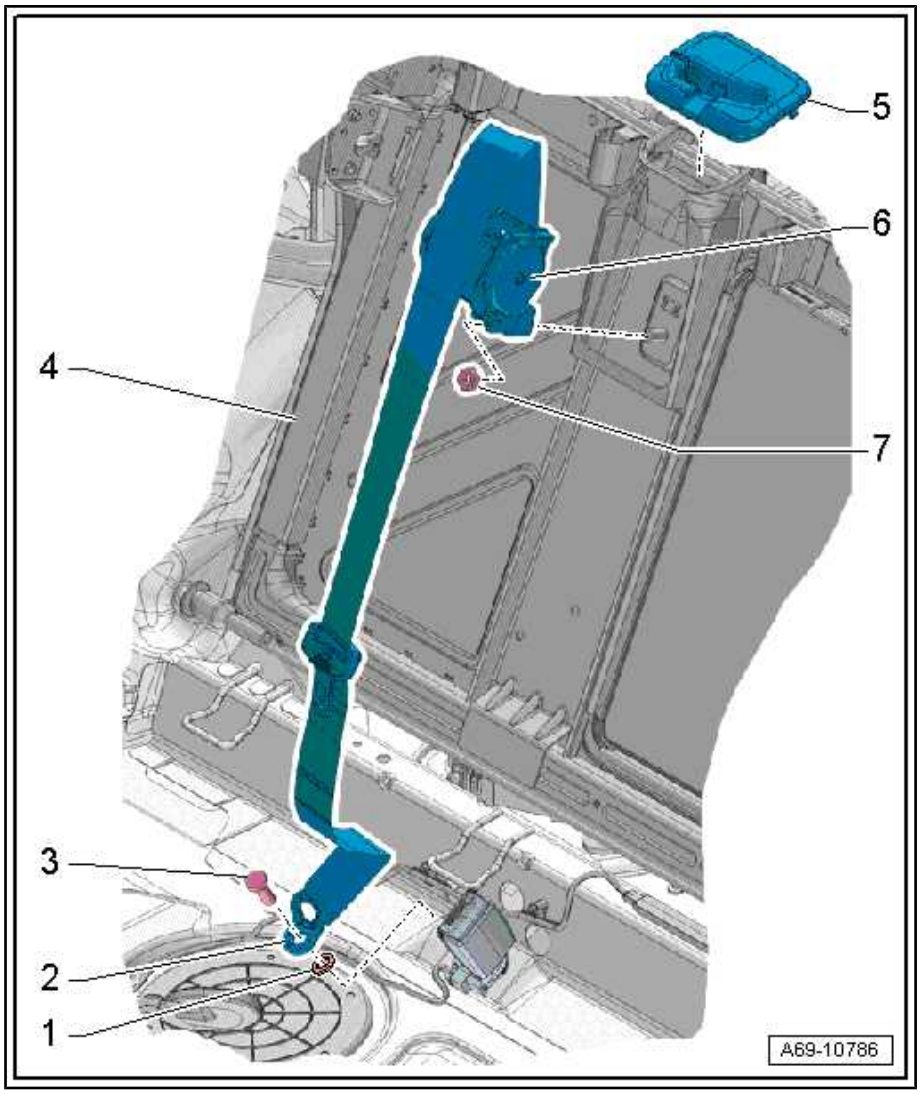
- ❑ Renew entire belt guide if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 86
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

6 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 84

7 - Nut

- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)

1 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ Driver side: with driver side belt switch - E24-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

2 - Electrical connector

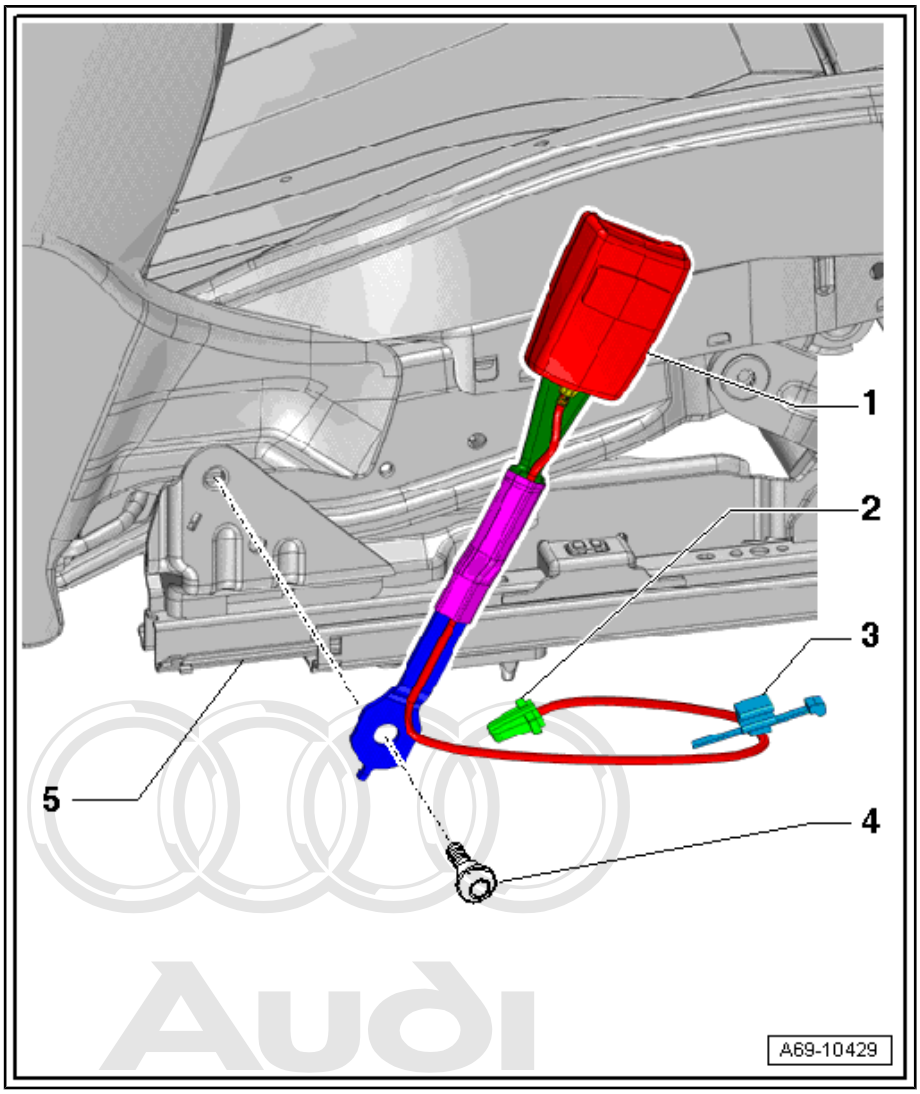
- ❑ For belt switch

3 - Cable retainer

4 - Bolt

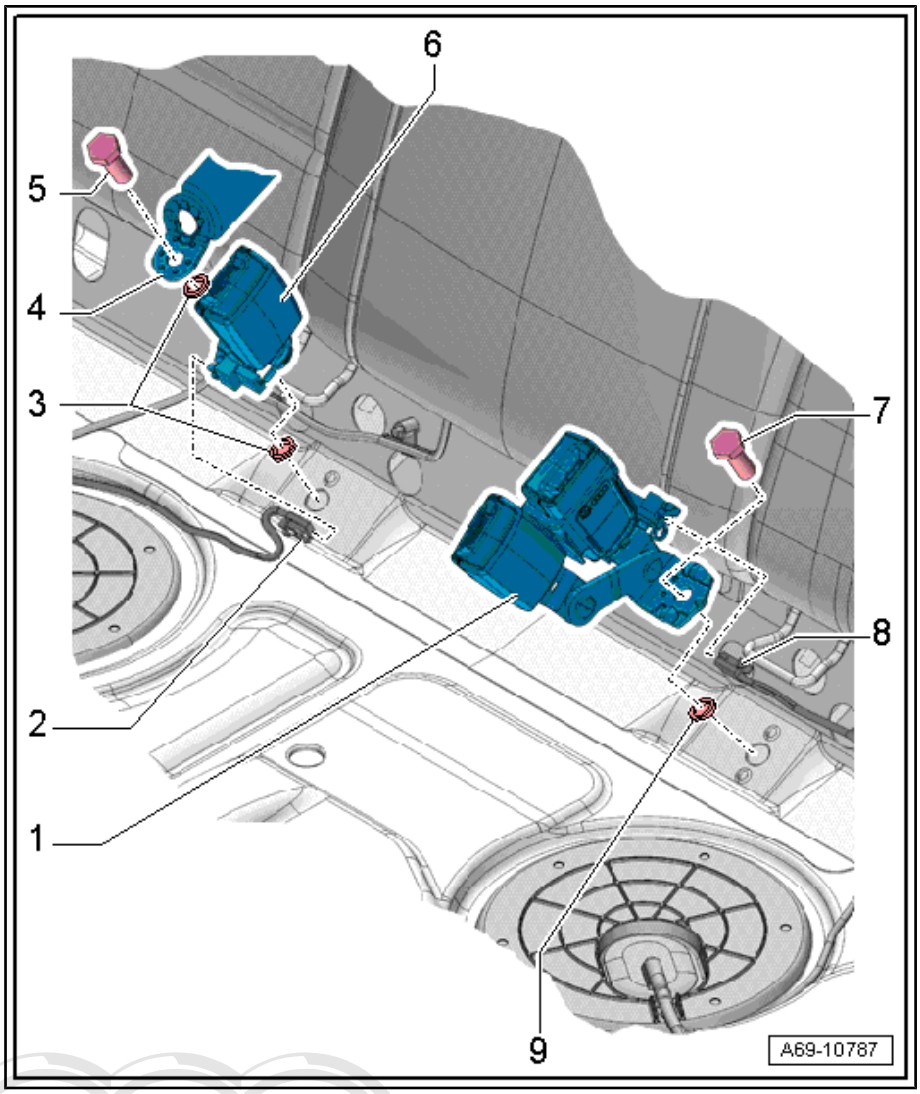
- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 34 Nm

5 - Front seat



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)



1 - Belt buckle

- With rear belt switch, driver side - E258-
- NAR version: without belt switch
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 92
- Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface.

2 - Electrical connector

- For rear belt switch, front passenger side - E259-
- Depending on equipment version

3 - Seals

- Slide over bolt thread and screw in as far as stop

4 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 92

5 - Bolt

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- 45 Nm

6 - Belt buckle

- With rear belt switch, front passenger side - E259-
- NAR version: without belt switch
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 92
- Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface.

7 - Bolt

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- 45 Nm

8 - Electrical connector

- For rear belt switch, driver side - E258-
- Depending on equipment version

9 - Seal

- Slide over bolt thread and screw in as far as stop

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)

⇒ "1.7.1 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)", page 79

⇒ "1.7.2 Removing and installing belt tensioner (front) - NAR version", page 81

1.7.1 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 87 .

– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 215 and guide out belt.

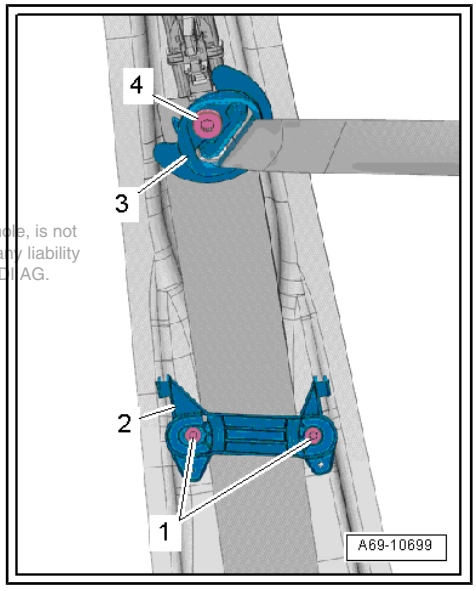
– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 217 .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

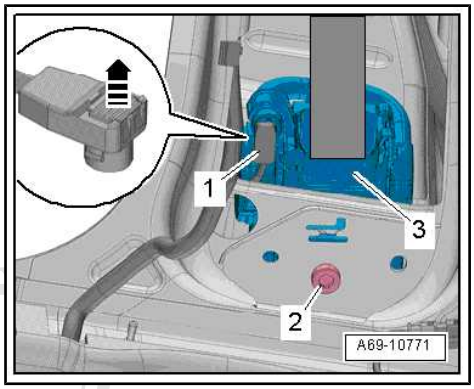
– Remove bolts -1- and detach belt guide (front) -2-.

– Remove bolt -4- for belt guide fitting -3-.



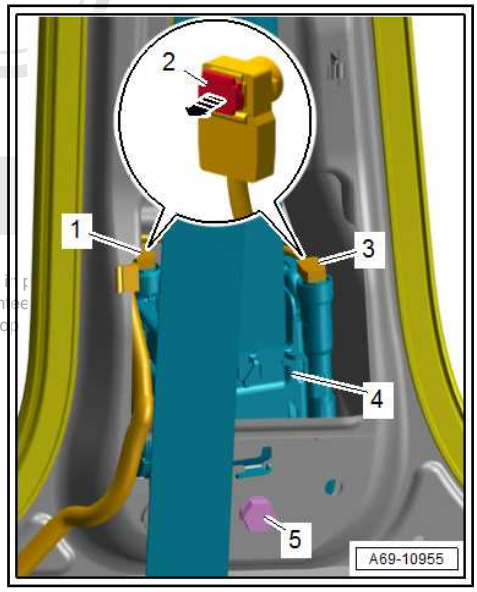
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release connector locking element with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector for belt tensioner igniter 1 -item 1-.
– Disengage electrical wiring at belt tensioner and move clear.
– Remove bolt -2- and take automatic belt retractor -3- out of mounting.



NAR version:

– Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connectors -1, 3- for belt tensioner igniter and belt force limiter.
– Disengage electrical wiring at belt tensioner and move clear.
– Remove bolt -5- and take automatic belt retractor -4- out of mounting.



Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

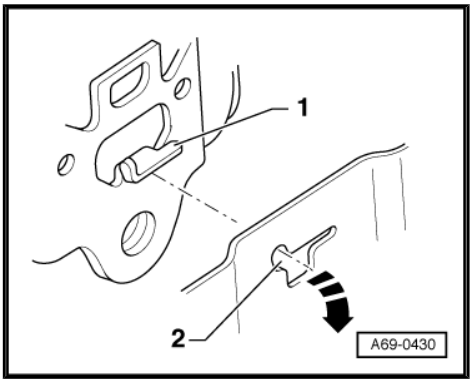
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten bolt.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)", page 72

1.7.2 Removing and installing belt tensioner (front) - NAR version

Removing

WARNING

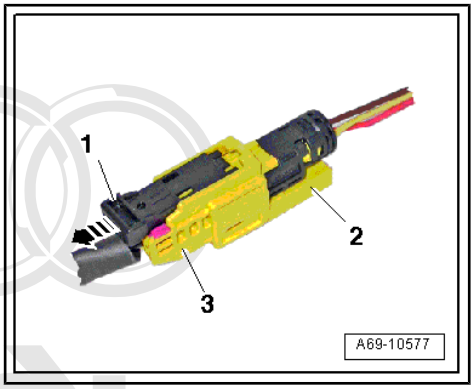
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 87 .

– Unplug electrical connector for belt tensioner (front).



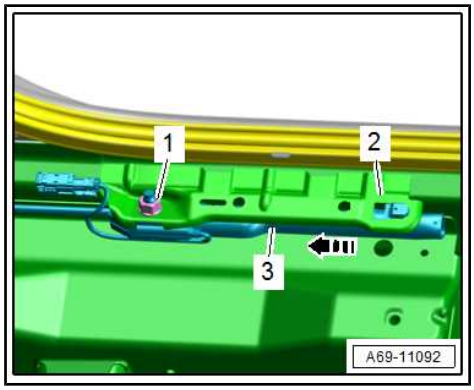
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– To do so, pull catch -1- in direction of -arrow- and unplug electrical connectors -2- and -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unclip wiring harness from side member and pull to the side slightly.
– Unscrew nut -1- and disengage belt tensioner at bolted connection.
– Pull belt tensioner -3- out of retainers -2- towards rear -arrow-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), NAR version”, page 74

1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)

⇒ “1.8.1 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 82

⇒ “1.8.2 Removing and installing centre three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 84

1.8.1 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear)

Removing

– Remove outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 89 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 232 .

– Remove belt guide cover ⇒ page 219 .

NAR version:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

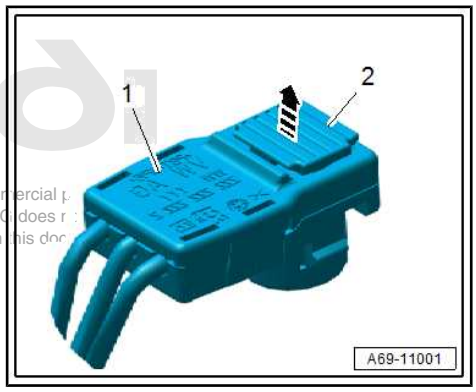
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does r
with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

– Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.



All vehicles (continued):

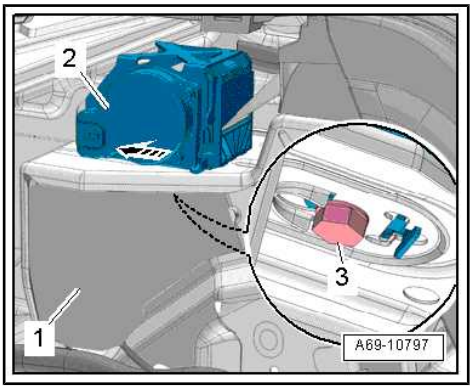
– Remove noise insulation -1- for suspension strut (rear).

– Remove bolt -3-.

– Slide three-point seat belt -2- to rear -arrow- and take out of mounting.

Installing

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.



NAR version:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

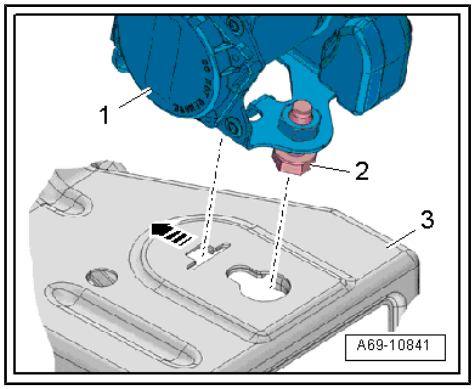
Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

All vehicles (continued):

– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.

– Press three-point seat belt -1- forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.



NAR version:

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ page 75

1.8.2 Removing and installing centre three-point seat belt (rear)

Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 340 .

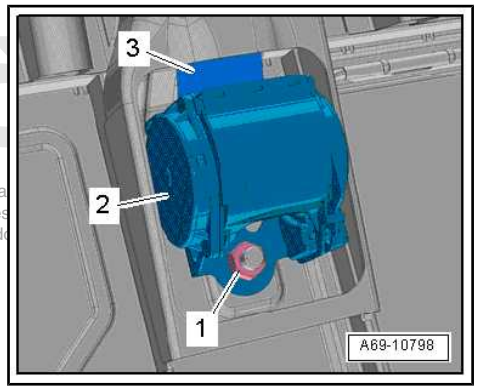
– Remove 2/3 section (right-side) of rear seat backrest ⇒ page 342 .

– Remove backrest cover with padding for rear seat backrest ⇒ page 375 .

– Unscrew nut -1-.

– Disengage three-point seat belt -2- and detach.

– Thread out belt -3-.



Installing

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.

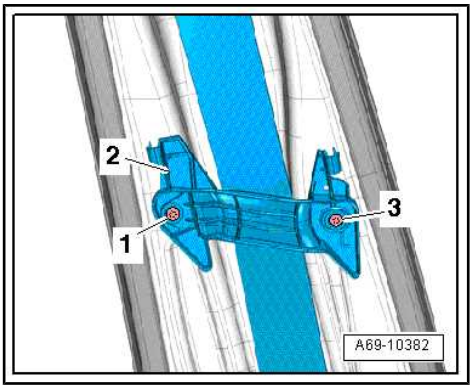
– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element in mounting and tighten nut.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 76

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (front)



Removing

– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 215 .
– Move B-pillar trim (top) to side with belt inserted.
– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 217 .
– Unscrew bolts -1- and -3- and detach belt guide (front) -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)", page 72

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.10 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)

⇒ “1.10.1 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)”, page 86

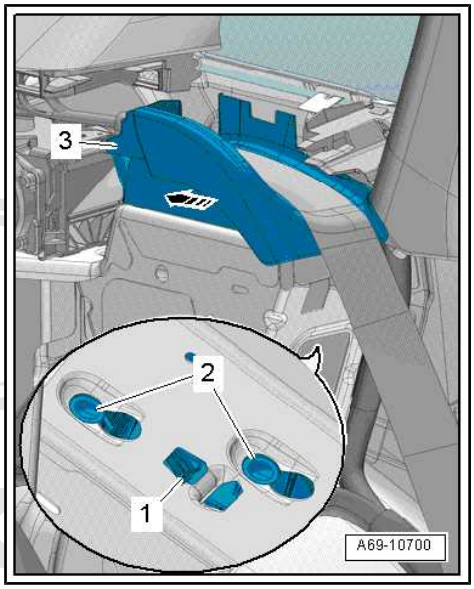
⇒ “1.10.2 Removing and installing centre belt guide (rear)”, page 86

1.10.1 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)

Removing

Caution

- *When removing and installing belt guide -3-, never turn bolts -2-. They have been set by the manufacturer.*
- *Renew entire belt guide if damaged.*



- Equipment version with side padding: Remove side padding ⇒ page 344 .
- Remove sill panel trim (rear) ⇒ page 213 .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 232 .
- Remove belt guide cover ⇒ page 219 .
- Press retaining hooks -1- on belt guide upwards and hold.
- Slide belt guide to rear -arrow- until bolt heads -2- can be disengaged from bracket on body.
- Take out belt guide -3- sideways towards vehicle interior.
- Outer belt guide (rear): Unplug electrical connector for rear parking aid warning buzzer - H15- .
- Thread out belt and detach belt guide.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

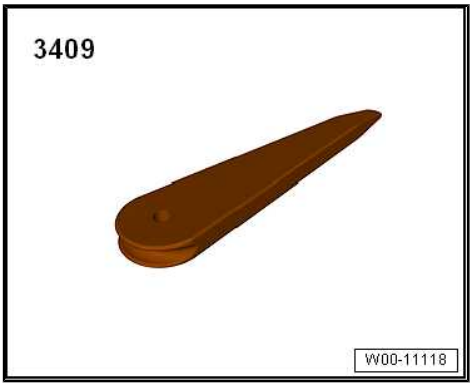
- Place belt in recess in belt guide -3- and position belt guide on bracket.
- Press belt guide downwards and at the same time pull it forwards, making bolt heads engage in guide elements.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 75

1.10.2 Removing and installing centre belt guide (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

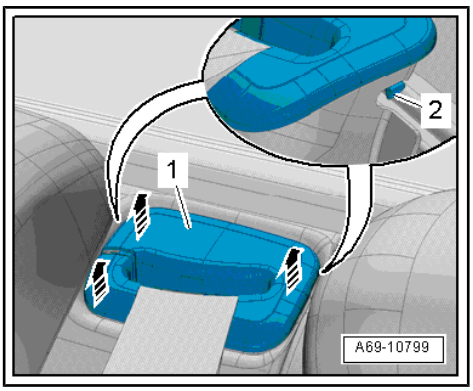


Removing

– Release retaining tabs -2- using a screwdriver or removal wedge - 3409- .

– At the same time unclip belt guide -1- upwards -arrows-.

– Open up gap at belt guide and guide out belt.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 76

1.11 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)

⇒ “1.11.1 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - all vehicles except NAR version”, page 87

⇒ “1.11.2 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - NAR version”, page 87

1.11.1 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - all vehicles except NAR version

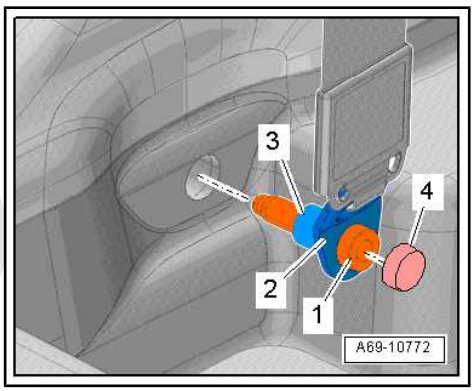
Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Use a screwdriver to prise off cap -4-.

– Remove bolt -1-.

– Remove bolt with belt end fitting -2- and stop sleeve -3-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 72

1.11.2 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - NAR version

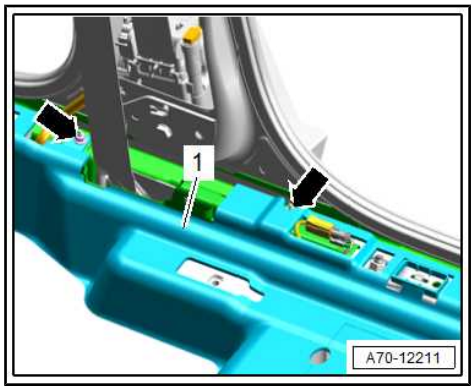
Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

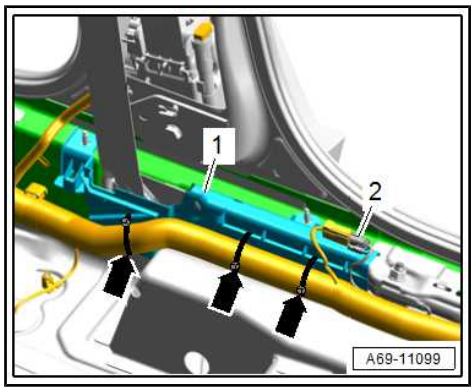
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Remove sill panel trim (front) ⇒ page 211 .

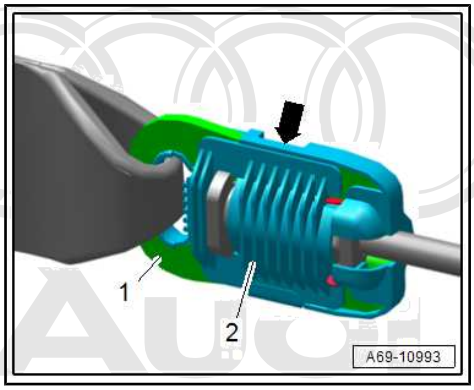
– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 217 .
– Unscrew nuts -arrows- for reinforcement for floor covering.
– Disengage floor covering -1- (along with reinforcement) from side member and pull to one side.



– Disengage electrical connector -2- for belt tensioner (front) from cover and move clear.
– Pull floor covering to one side in vicinity of belt end fitting and cut through cable ties -arrows-.
– Unclip cover -1- for belt end fitting from side member and detach.

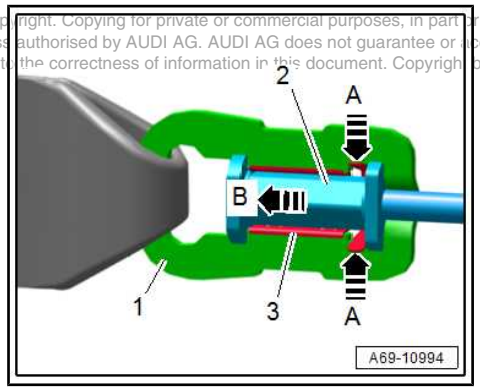


– Using a screwdriver, open cover -2- for belt end fitting -1- at catch -arrow- and slide to the side.

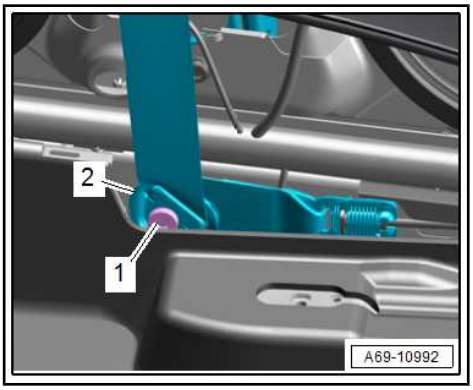


– Press retaining tabs of securing clip towards each other -arrows A- with pliers.
– At the same time slide anchoring pin -2- and securing clip -3- in direction of -arrow B- to release them.
– Disengage anchoring pin from securing clip in belt end fitting -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Unscrew bolt -1- and detach belt guide fitting -2-.

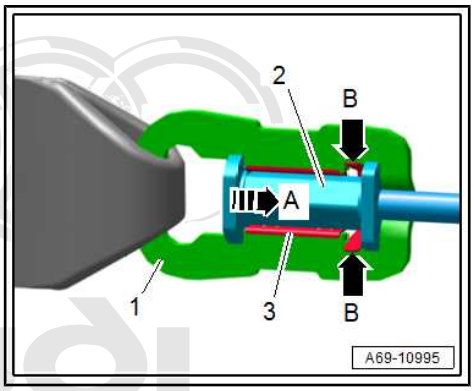


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Engage anchoring pin -2- in securing clip -3- and slide both in direction of -arrow A- until retaining tabs engage -arrows B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), NAR version”, page 74 ,
⇒ “5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 210



1.12 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 340 .

– Remove sill panel trim (rear) ⇒ page 213 .

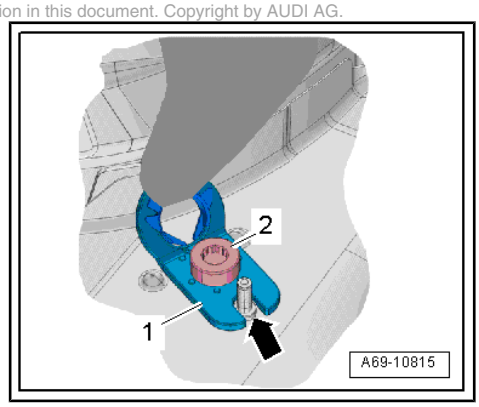
– Remove bolt -2- at belt end fitting -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

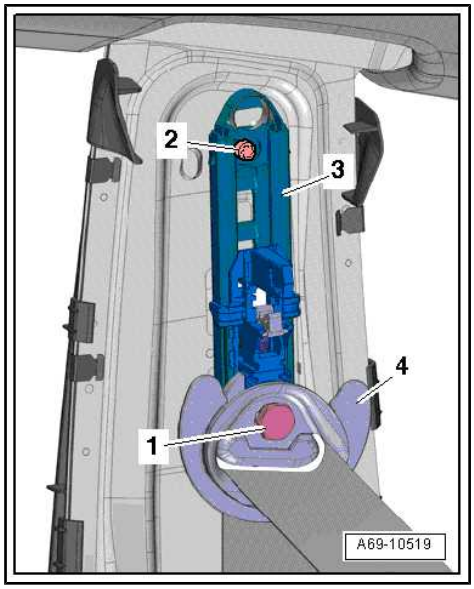
• Threaded pin -arrow- on floor panel must be located in recess of belt end fitting.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 75



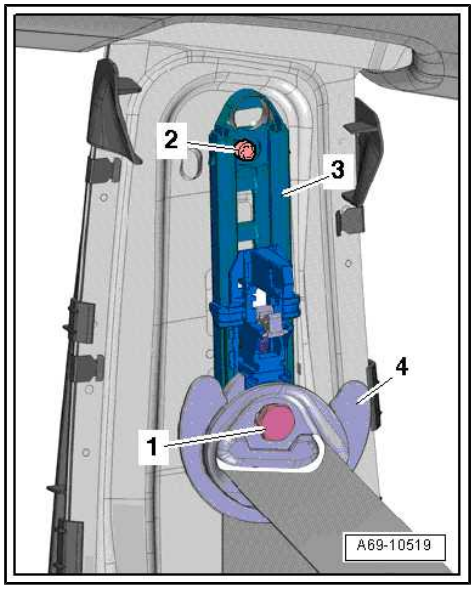
1.13 Removing and installing belt height adjuster

Removing



- Press belt height adjustment button and move slide for belt height adjuster to bottom detent position.
- Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 215 .
- Move B-pillar trim (top) to side with belt inserted.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Detach belt guide fitting -4- with belt.
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Lift belt height adjuster -3- off B-pillar.

Installing



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- *When supplied as replacement parts, belt height adjusters are always supplied with belt height adjustment slide and set to bottom detent position (assembly position).*
- *If belt height adjusters are removed and re-fitted, they must be set to bottom detent position (assembly position).*

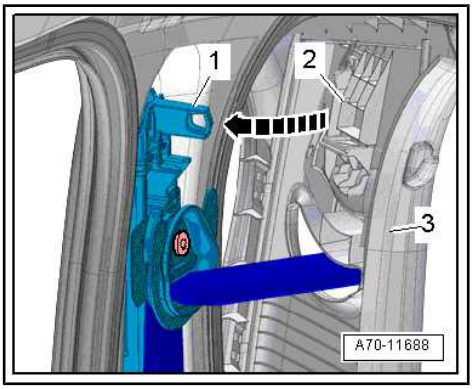
- Engage belt height adjuster -3- in B-pillar.
- Tighten bolt -2-.
- Install belt guide fitting -4- and tighten bolt -1-.

Note

Do not operate belt height adjustment button when fitting B-pillar trim (top).

– First insert B-pillar trim -3- upwards into mounting at roof.

• Mounting -2- of sliding element of B-pillar trim (top) must engage in retainer -1- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.



Belt height adjuster as replacement part:

– After fitting B-pillar trim (top), press slide firmly upwards.

• This will release belt height adjuster from assembly position.

All belt height adjusters (continued):

– The following functions must be tested successfully:

• Belt height adjuster must engage audibly in each of the four possible positions (including top position).

• Belt height adjustment button must always automatically return to top position whenever it has been operated.

• After tightening bolt, belt guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction.

If any of the listed functions is not OK, check installation of belt height adjuster and renew adjuster if necessary.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)", page 72

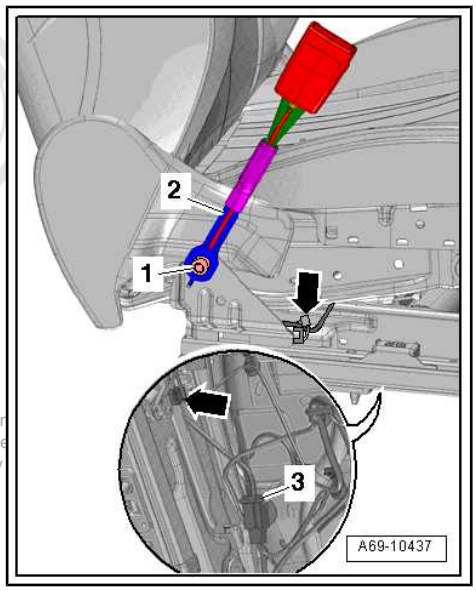
1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)

Removing

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Unplug electrical connector -3- and move wiring clear -arrows-.

– Unscrew bolt -1- and detach belt buckle -2-.

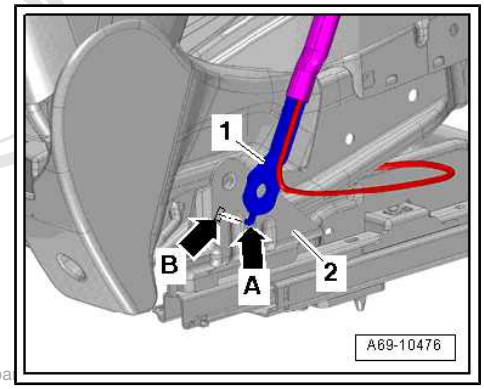


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acce
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Position belt buckle -1- so that recess -arrow B- coincides with lug -arrow A- at seat frame -2-.



WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

...ecting, storing, changing, copying, transmitting to third parties and using for other purposes, in pa... ...ppliers. We do not guarantee or accept any liability ... the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

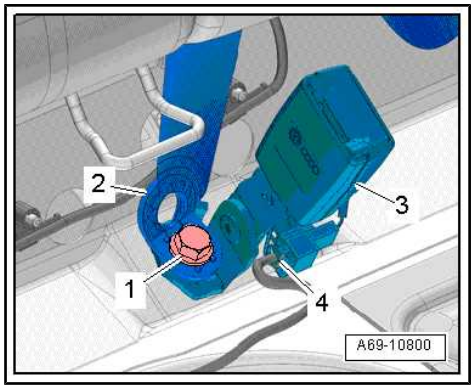
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)”, page 77

1.15 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)

Removing

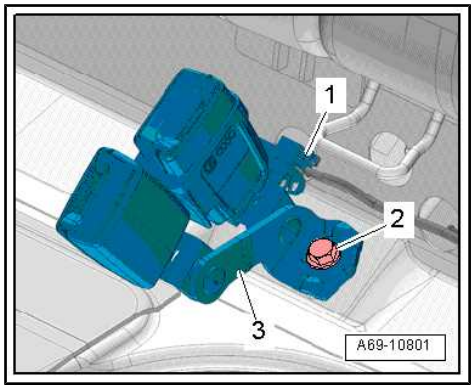
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 340 .

Belt buckle (rear right) with centre belt end fitting (rear):



– Equipment version with belt switch: Unplug electrical connector -4- for belt switch.
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Detach centre belt end fitting (rear) -2-.
– Remove belt buckle -3-.

Belt buckle (rear left):



– Equipment version with belt switch: Unplug electrical connector -1- for belt switch.
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Remove belt buckle -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)”, page 78

2 Child seat anchors

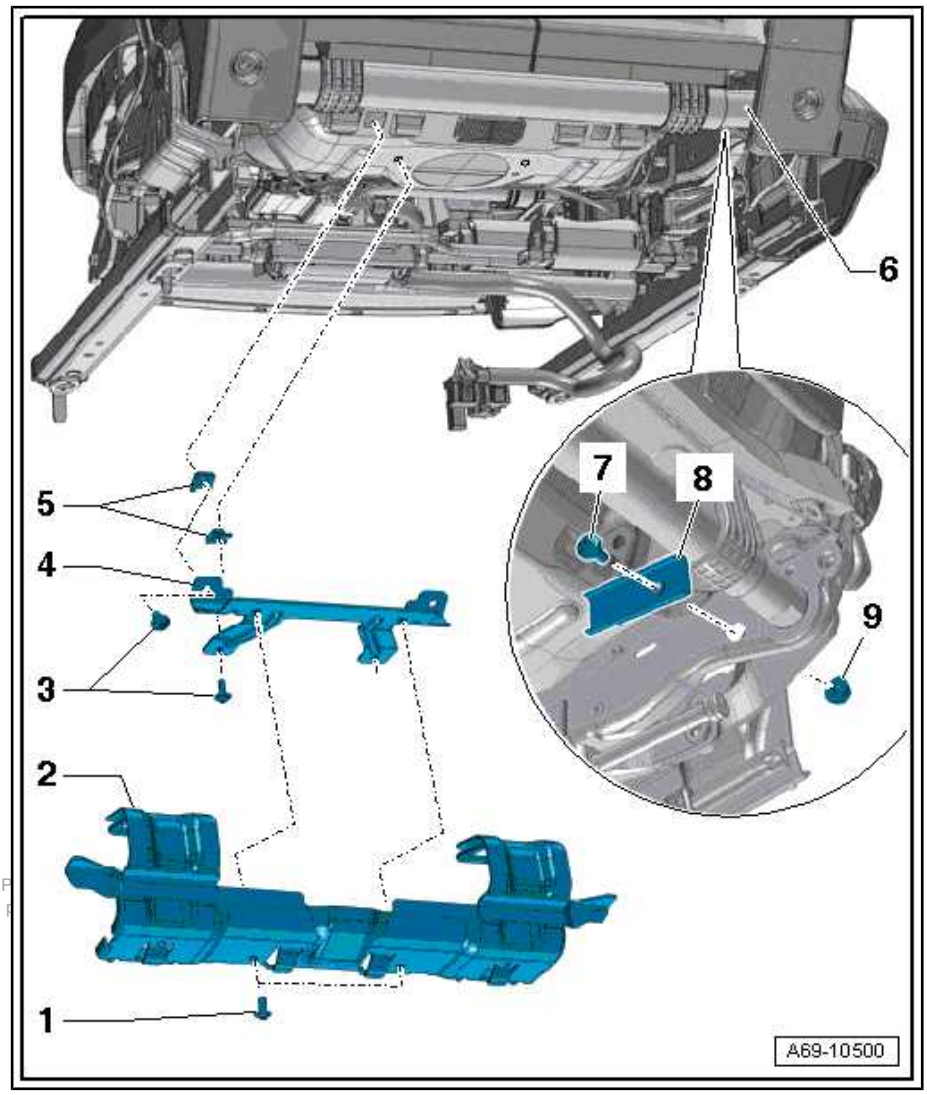
⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)”, page 93

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)”, page 94

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)”, page 96

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear)”, page 97

2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 8 Nm

2 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Front passenger seat only
- ❑ Bolted to seat pan
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 13
- ❑ Renew child seat anchor if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Retaining plate

- ❑ Front passenger seat only
- ❑ Bolted to seat pan
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 13
- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

5 - Speed nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Inserted in seat pan
- ❑ Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

6 - Seat pan

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 18 Nm

8 - Reinforcement

- ❑ Only on seat with electric adjustment
- ❑ Only fitted on sill side of seat
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 13
- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 97

9 - Nut

- ❑ 18 Nm

2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)

⇒ "2.2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear), rear seat", page 94

⇒ "2.2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear), rear seat backrest", page 95

2.2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear), rear seat

1 - Guide

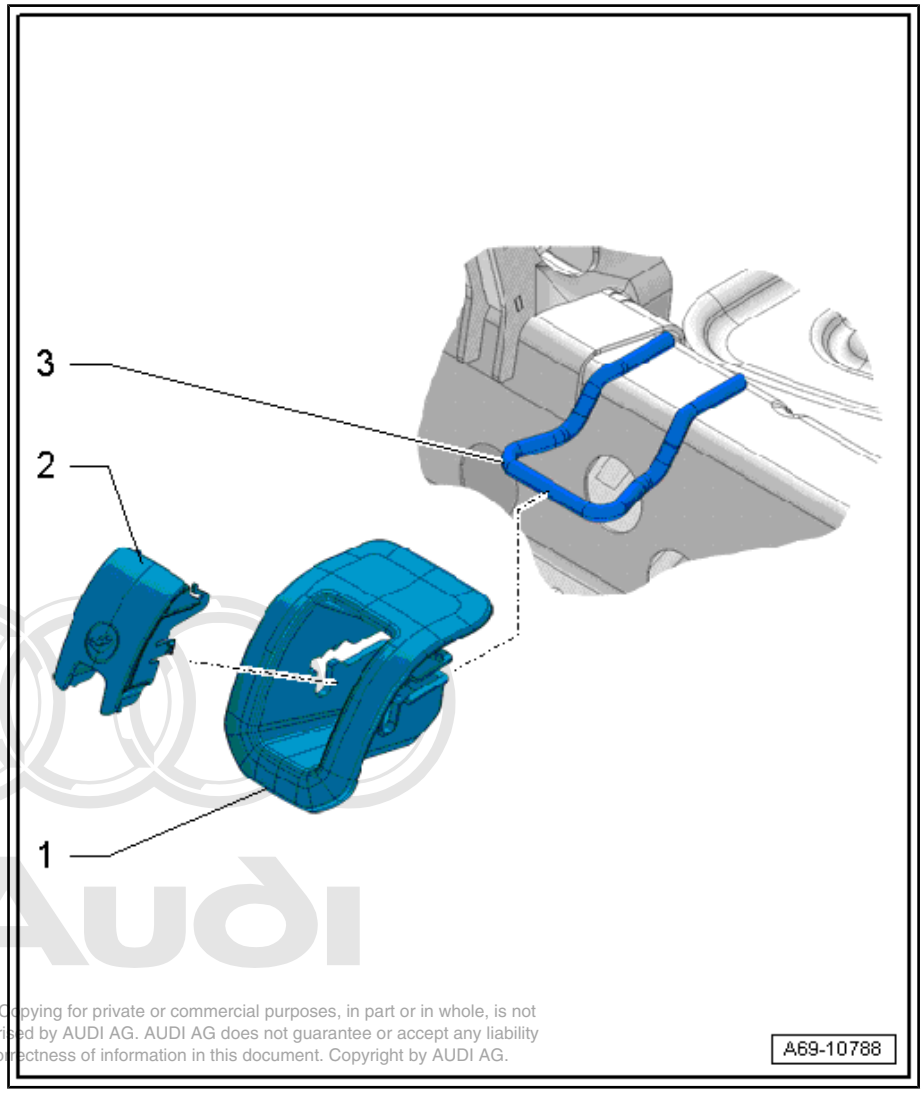
- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 97
- ❑ Must be seated firmly on anchor

2 - Cover

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 97
- ❑ Must be seated firmly on anchor

3 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Welded to vehicle floor



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear), rear seat backrest

1 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

2 - Child seat anchor (centre)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 97

3 - Washer

4 - Rear seat backrest

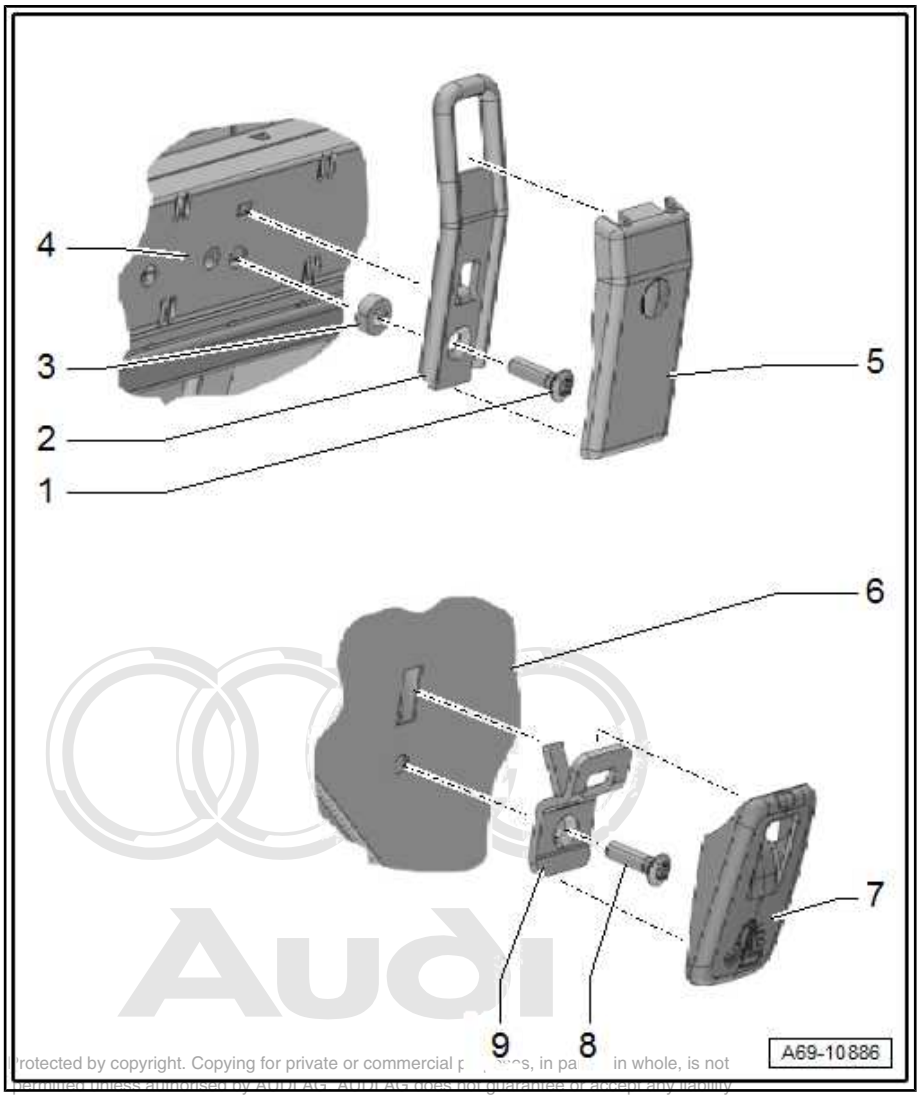
5 - Cover
- ❑ Engage in top of child seat anchor and press on until it engages audibly

6 - Rear seat backrest

7 - Cover
- ❑ Engage in top of child seat anchor and press on until it engages audibly

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

9 - Child seat anchor (outer)
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 97



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p... s, in pa... in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)

⇒ “2.3.1 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)”, page 96

⇒ “2.3.2 Removing and installing retaining plate for child seat anchor (front)”, page 96

⇒ “2.3.3 Removing and installing reinforcement for child seat anchor (front)”, page 97

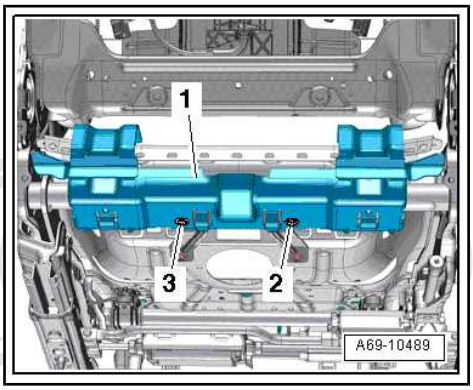
2.3.1 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)

Removing

– Move front passenger's seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Remove bolts -2- and -3-.

– Detach child seat anchor -1- from seat pan towards rear.



Note

For greater clarity, the front seat is shown without its cover.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)”, page 93

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

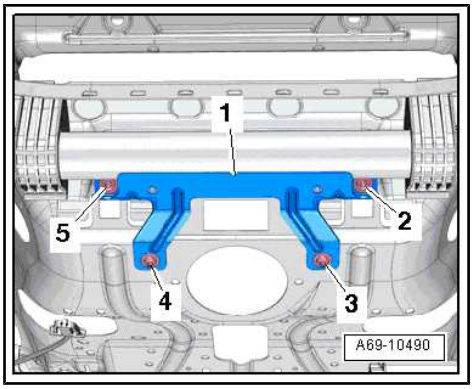
2.3.2 Removing and installing retaining plate for child seat anchor (front)

Removing

– Remove child seat anchor for front seat ⇒ page 96 .

– Remove bolts -2, 3, 4 and 5-.

– Detach retaining plate -1- for child seat anchor from seat pan.



Note

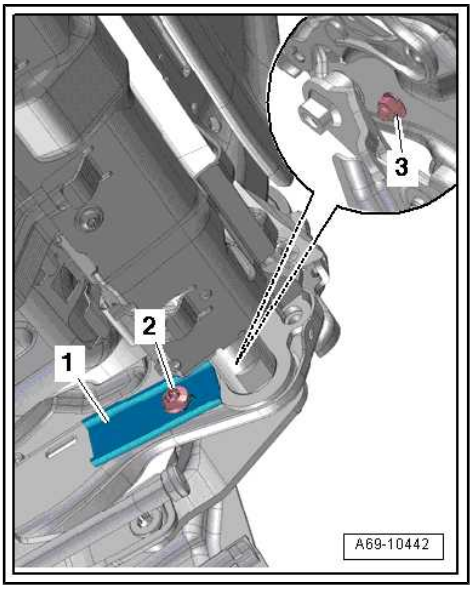
For greater clarity, the front seat is shown without its cover.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)”, page 93

2.3.3 Removing and installing reinforcement for child seat anchor (front)



Removing

- Move front passenger's seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 316 .
- Counterhold nut -3- and unscrew bolt -2-.
- Detach reinforcement -1- for child seat anchor towards vehicle interior.

Note

For greater clarity, the front seat is shown without its cover.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)", page 93

2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear)

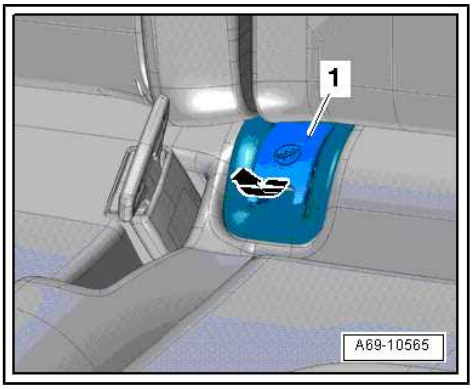
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ "2.4.1 Removing and installing guide for child seat anchor (rear)", page 97

⇒ "2.4.2 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear outer)", page 98

⇒ "2.4.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear centre)", page 98

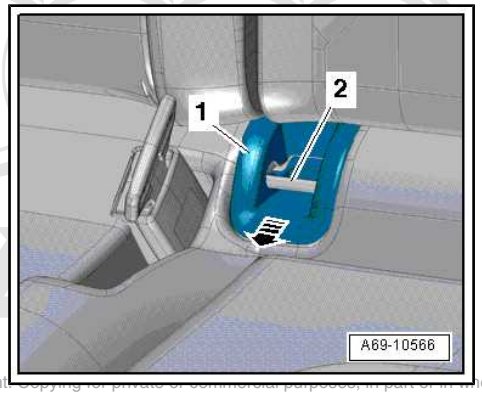
2.4.1 Removing and installing guide for child seat anchor (rear)



Removing

- Unclip cover -1- for child seat anchor from anchor -arrow- and detach.

– Press guide -1- for child seat anchor downwards into recess and disengage from anchor -2-.
– Take guide for child seat anchor out towards front -arrow-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

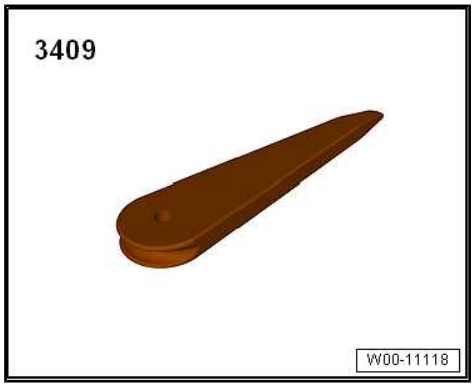
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)", page 94

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.2 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear outer)

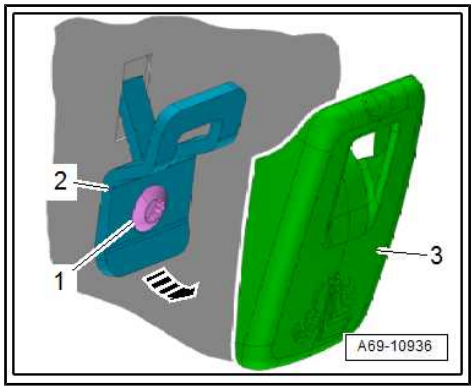
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.
– Unclip cover -3- from child seat anchor -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Remove bolt -1- and detach child seat anchor -2- from rear seat backrest.



Installing

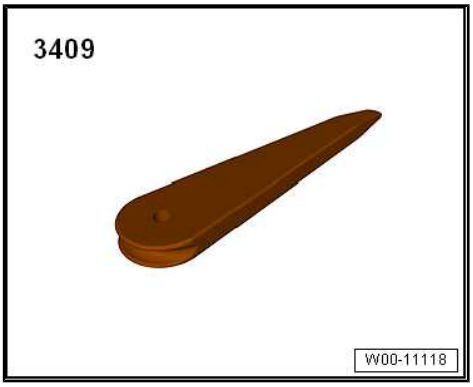
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)", page 94

2.4.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear centre)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Unclip cover -3- from child seat anchor -arrow A- using removal wedge - 3409- .

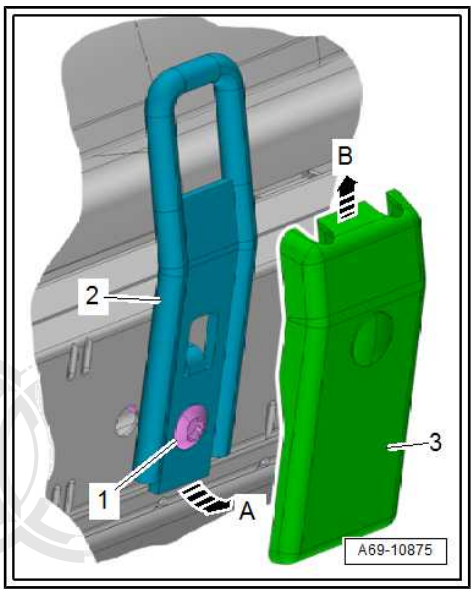
– Disengage cover from child seat anchor -arrow B- and detach.

– Remove bolt -1- and detach child seat anchor -2- from rear seat backrest.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)”, page 94

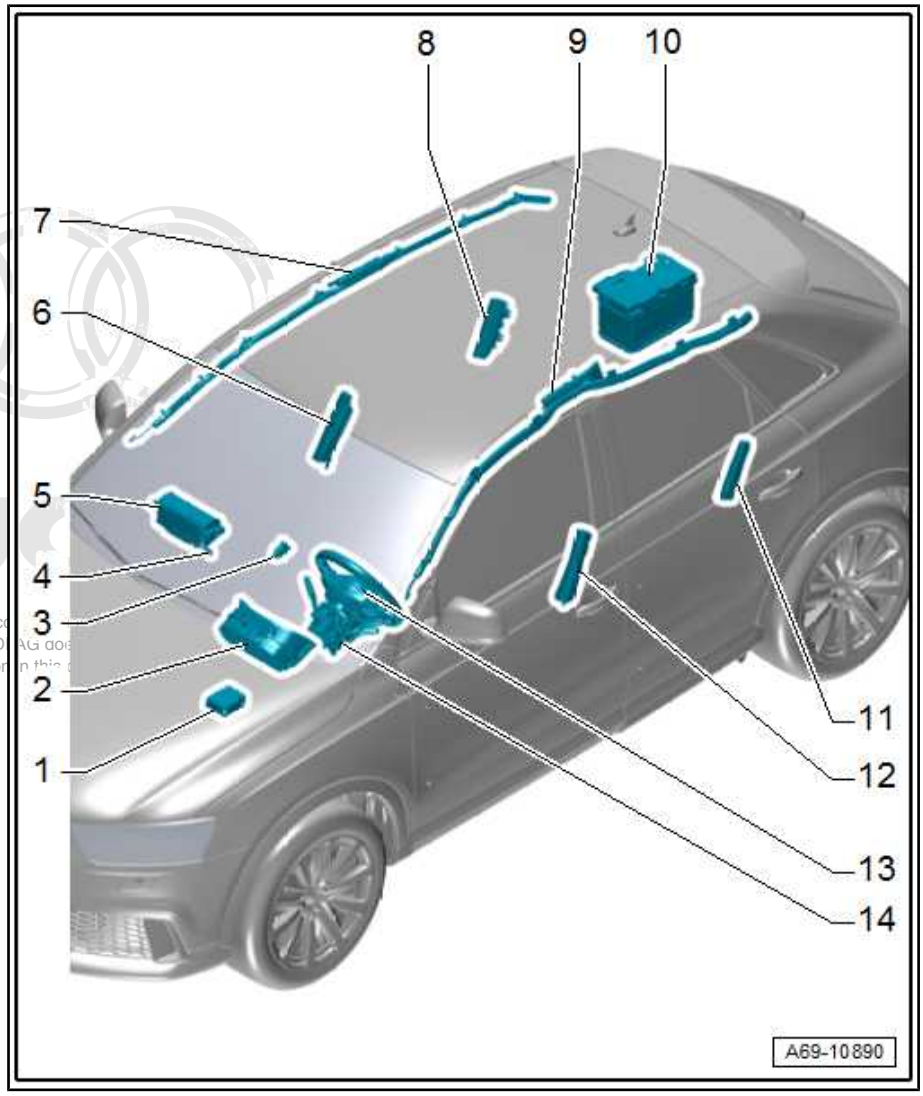


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Airbag system

⇒ “3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system”, page 100

3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system



1 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- Exploded view ⇒ page 102

2 - Airbag warning lamp - K75-

- Fitting location: in dash panel insert
- Cannot be renewed separately

3 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-

- In joint housing together with hazard warning lights button - E229- ; if defective renew hazard warning lights button - E229- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing hazard warning lights button - E229-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe
with respect to the correctness of information in this

4 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 120

5 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-
- NAR version with airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 116
- Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

6 - Side airbag (front passenger side)

- With side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 123

7 - Curtain airbag (front passenger side)

- With front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 128

8 - Side airbag, rear (passenger side)

- With rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202-
- Depending on equipment version
- Exploded view ⇒ page 124

9 - Curtain airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 128

10 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- ❑ RS Q3 only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 106

11 - Side airbag, rear (driver side)

- ❑ With rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 124

12 - Side airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 123

13 - Airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter on driver side - N95-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 110

14 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- ❑ With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138- and steering angle sender - G85-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column electronics control unit - J527-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Airbag control unit

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit”, page 102

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 ”, page 102

4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit

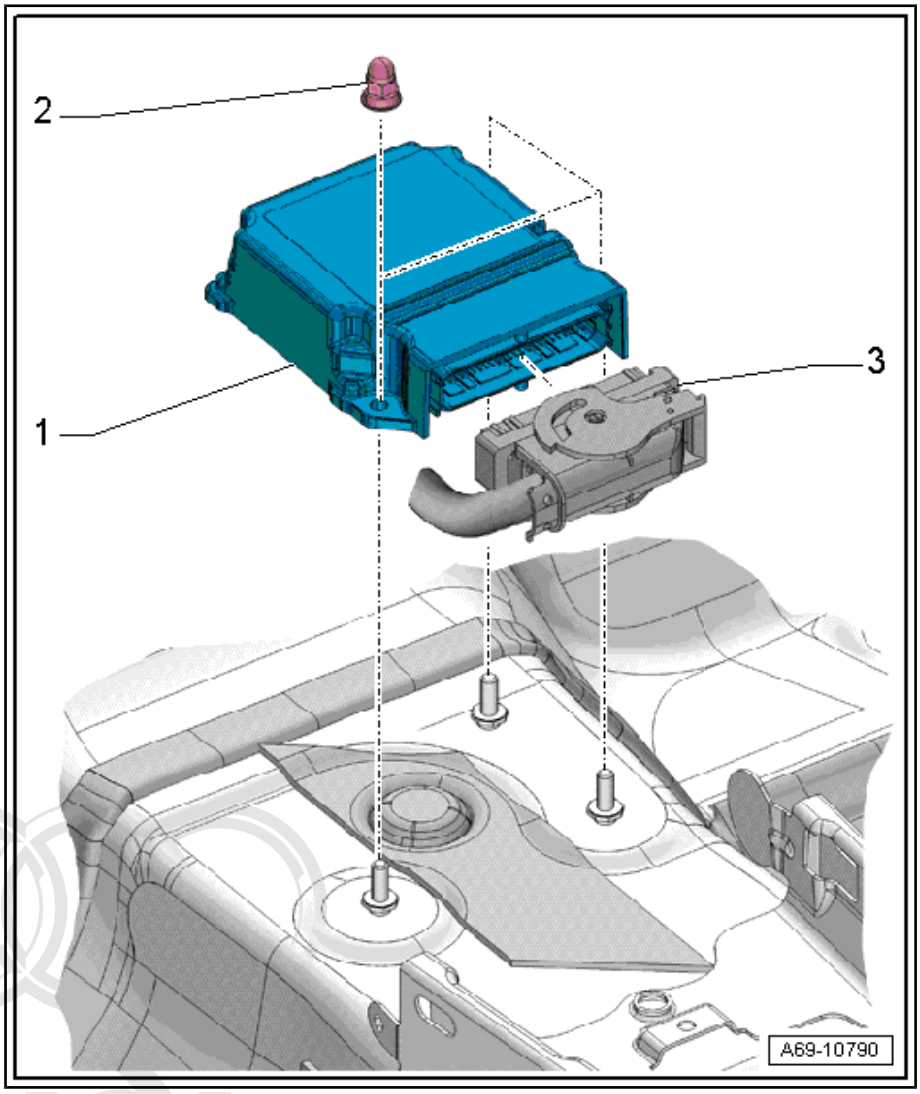
1 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 102
- ❑ Earth connection for airbag control unit is provided by securing housing to body

2 - Nut

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 9 Nm
- ❑ Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit

3 - Electrical connector



4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit - J234-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

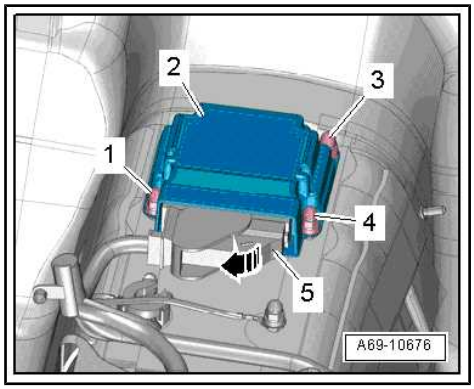
Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove footwell trim (driver and passenger side)
⇒ page 44 .
– Remove bracket for footwell trim (driver and passenger side)
⇒ page 44 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew nut -1- in front footwell (driver side).



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Release catch at connector -arrow- and unplug connector -5- in front footwell (passenger side).
– Remove nuts -3 and 4-.
– Lift airbag control unit -2- off studs and take out towards passenger side.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 3*** ***.***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

- *If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The airbag control unit -J234- must be encoded after it has been renewed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *An earth connection for the airbag control unit -J234- is provided by securing the housing to the body.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit”, page 102

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Battery isolation igniter

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter”, page 106

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter”, page 106

5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter

1 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For battery isolation igniter - N253-
- ❑ Releasing and unplugging ⇒ page 109

2 - Nuts

- ❑ 15 Nm

3 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- ❑ Only available together with -item 4-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 106

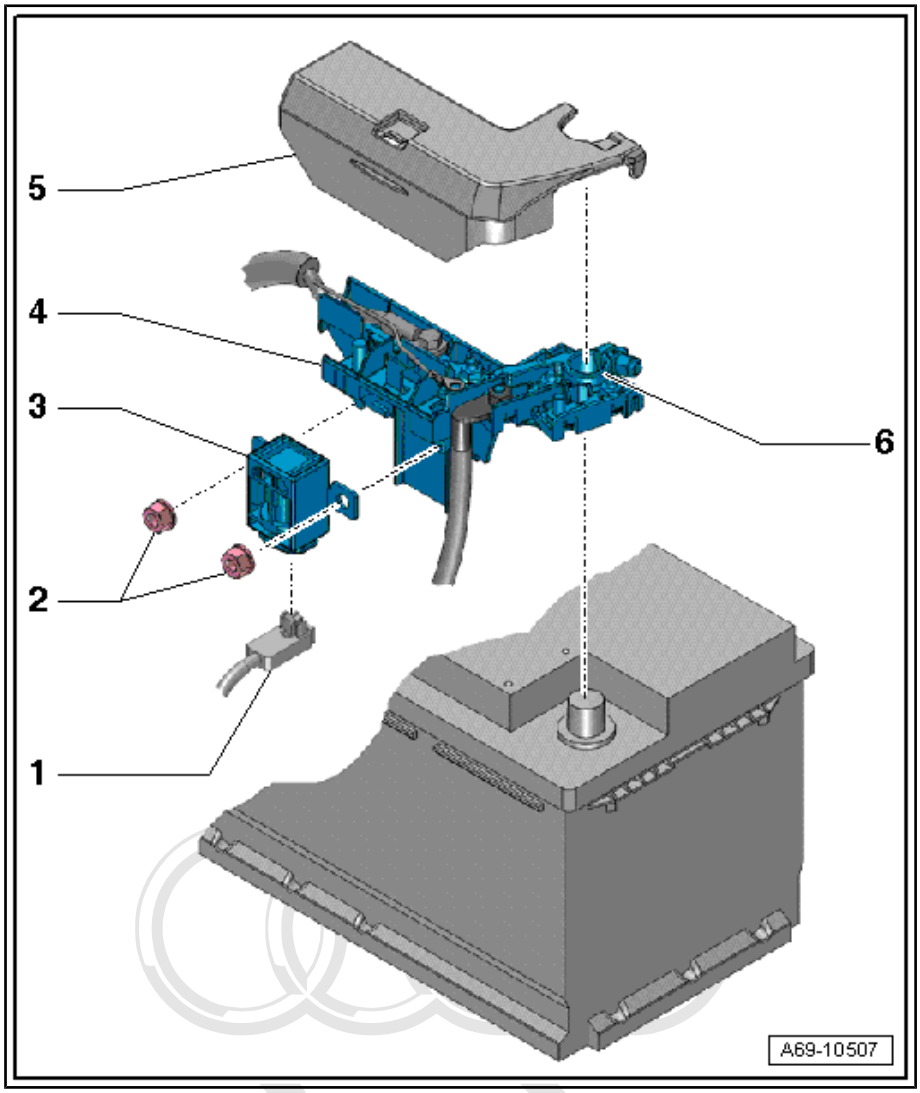
4 - Fuse holder A - SA-

5 - Cover

- ❑ For fuse holder A - SA-

6 - Positive terminal

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Exploded view - battery



5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components* *⇒ page 3* *.*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components* *⇒ page 4* *.*

Note

- *If airbag warning lamp - K75- is illuminated after an accident, use ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester to check whether crash data have been stored. If this is the case, check whether the fault »Resistance too high« is stored in the event memory for the battery isolation igniter - N253- . If this fault is stored in the memory, the battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed.*
- *Each time the airbag is triggered, the battery isolation igniter - N253- electrically isolates the circuit. Battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed after triggering.*
- *The battery isolation igniter - N253- is only available as a replacement part together with the fuse holder A - SA- .*
- *If you want to renew the battery isolation igniter -N253- separately, it can be detached from the replacement part and installed on the fitted fuse holder A - SA- , as described in the following.*

– Switch on ignition.

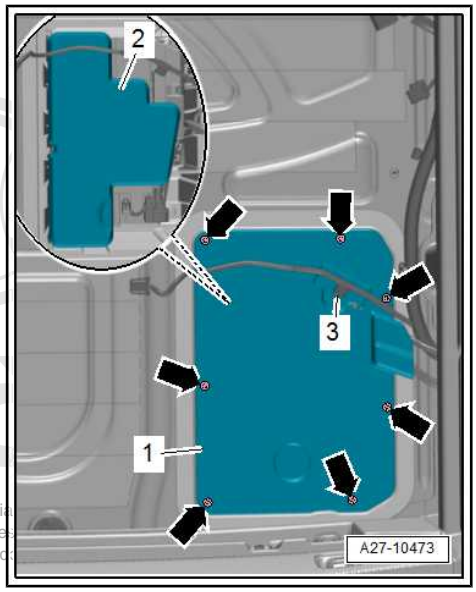
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– If fitted, move electrical wiring harness -3- clear.

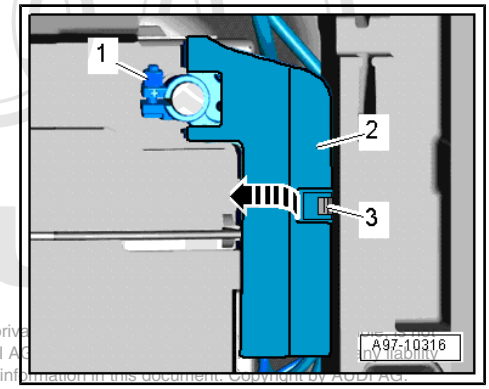
– Detach cover -1- for battery.

– Detach heat shield -2- from battery.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

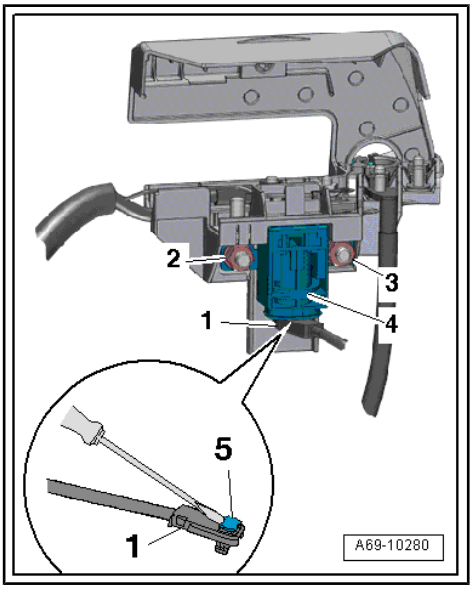
– Loosen nut -1- several turns and detach battery clamp of positive cable with fuse holder A - SA- from battery terminal.
– Lift out fuse holder A - SA- .
– Release retaining spring -3- and open up flap -2- over fuse holder A - SA- -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for priva
permitted unless authorised by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of inf
any liability

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Remove nuts -2 and 3-.
– Detach battery isolation igniter -4-.
– To do so, release connector locking element -5- with a small screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -1-.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– As a final step, interrogate event memory of airbag control unit -J234- and deal with any entries ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter", page 106

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

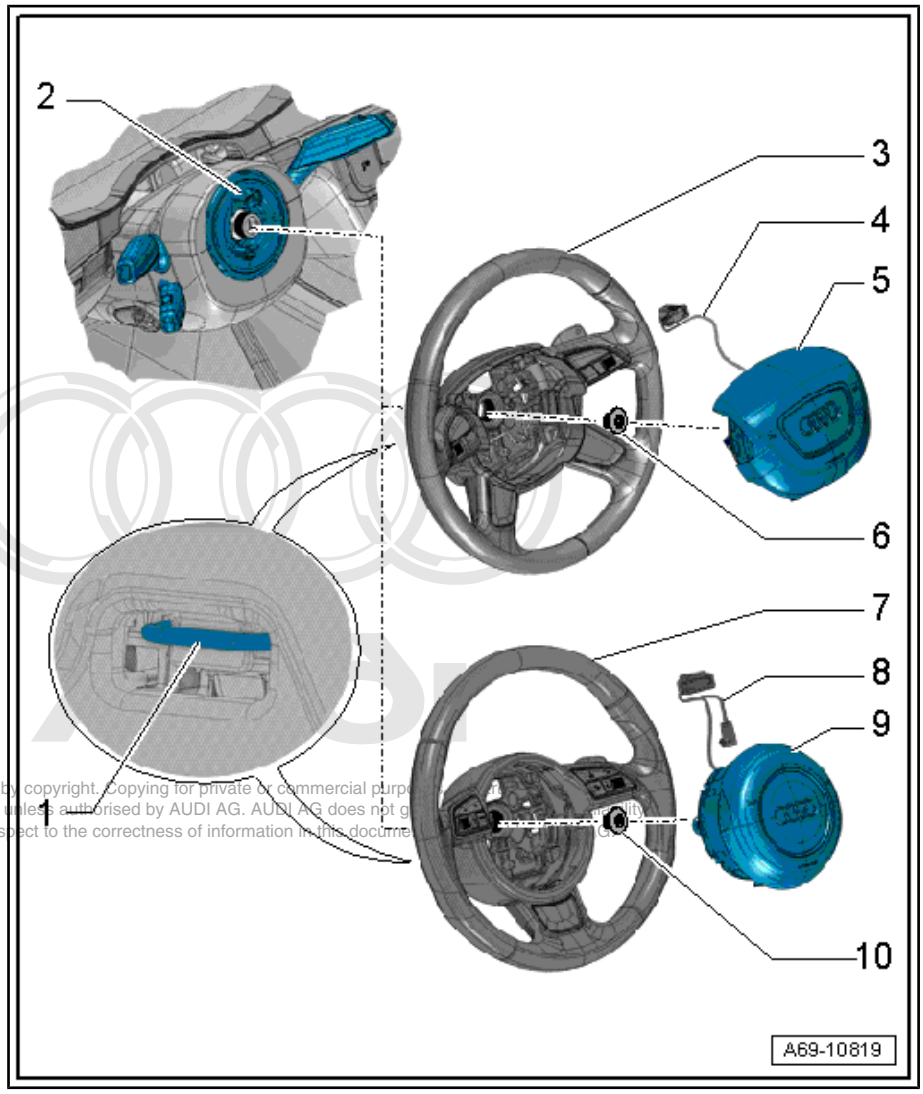
6 Airbag (driver side)

⇒ “6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)”, page 110

⇒ “6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters”, page 111

⇒ “6.3 Renewing connector at airbag”, page 114

6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)



1 - Retaining clip

- To release, use Torx screwdriver T25 (length approx. 100 mm)

2 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138- and steering angle sender - G85-
- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column electronics control unit - J527-

3 - 4-spoke steering wheel

- Depending on equipment version
- Removing and installing ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel

4 - Wiring harness

- For airbag igniter on driver side - N95-
- Renewing ⇒ page 114
- To secure in position, press into recesses in steering wheel

5 - Airbag (driver side)

- With airbag igniter on driver side - N95-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 111

6 - Bolt

- Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

7 - 3-spoke steering wheel

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel

8 - Wiring harness

- ❑ For airbag igniter on driver side - N95-
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 114
- ❑ To secure in position, press into recesses in steering wheel

9 - Airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter on driver side - N95-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 111

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

10 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torx screwdriver T25, approx. 100 mm (commercially available)

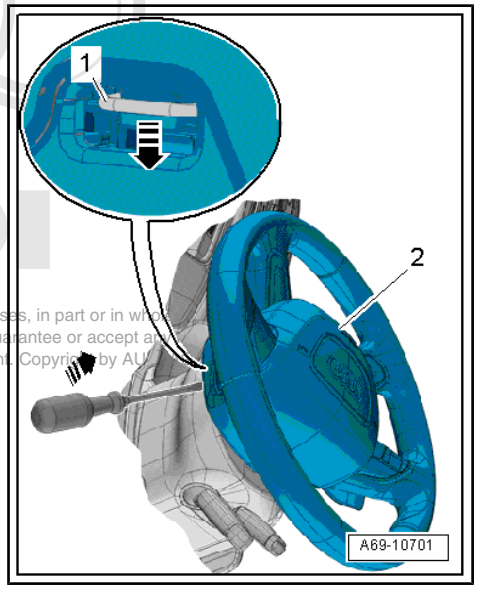
Removing

> **WARNING**
> - ♦ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
> - ♦ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Turn steering wheel so that opening in back of steering wheel is pointing straight upwards (approx. 12 o'clock position).
– Using Torx screwdriver T25 (length approx. 100 mm), release retaining clip -1- for airbag (driver side) -2- -arrows-.



Note

Using a flat screwdriver could damage the electrical wiring.

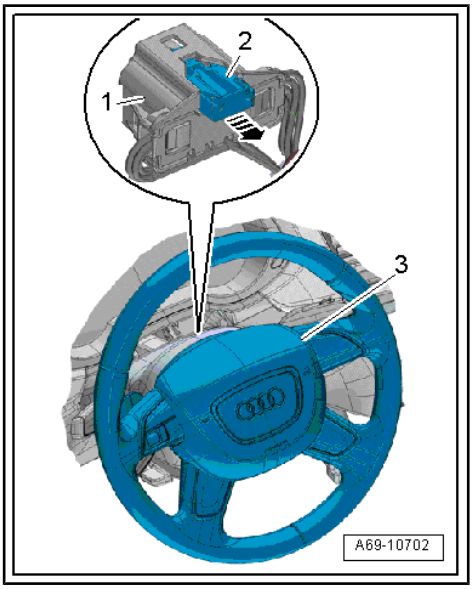
– Turn steering wheel by 180° and repeat procedure on opposite steering wheel side.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Pull airbag (driver side) -3- slightly away from steering wheel.
– Pull out connector locking element -2- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Equipment version with multi-function and tiptronic steering wheel: Unplug electrical connector.

WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Connect electrical plug for coil connector to airbag coupling at return ring with slip ring.
– To secure electrical connector in position, press it into recesses in steering wheel.
– Position airbag (driver side) in steering wheel and press on until it engages audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– As a final step, interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit as unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)", page 110

6.3 Renewing connector at airbag

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

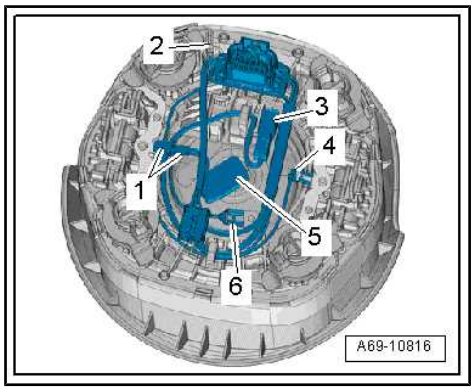
– Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ page 111 .

Equipment version with 3-spoke steering wheel:

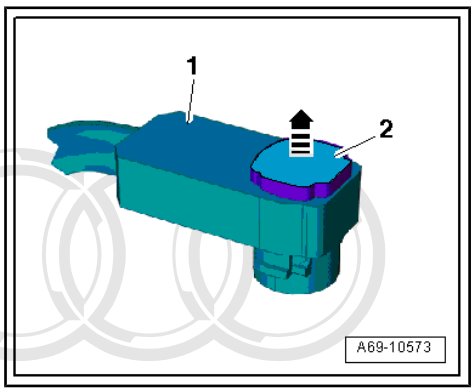
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connectors -1-, -2-, -4- and -6-.
– Unplug electrical connectors -3- at adapter and -5- for -N95- .



– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Disengage wiring harness at retainers and detach.

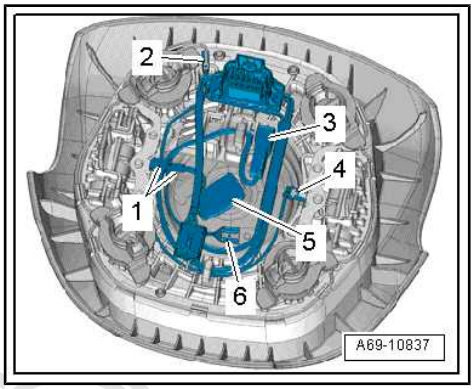


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

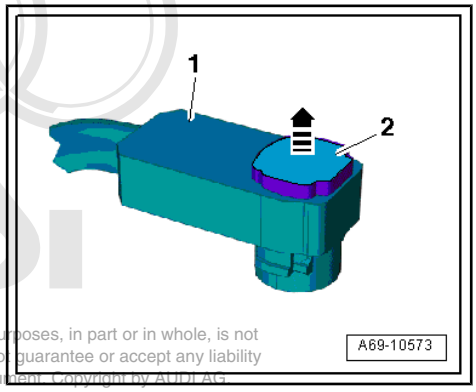
Equipment version with 4-spoke steering wheel:

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connectors -1-, -2-, -4- and -6-.
– Unplug electrical connectors -3- at adapter and -5- for -N95- .
– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Disengage wiring harness at retainers and detach.



Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unless authorized by AUDI AG, Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)", page 110

7 Airbag (front passenger side)

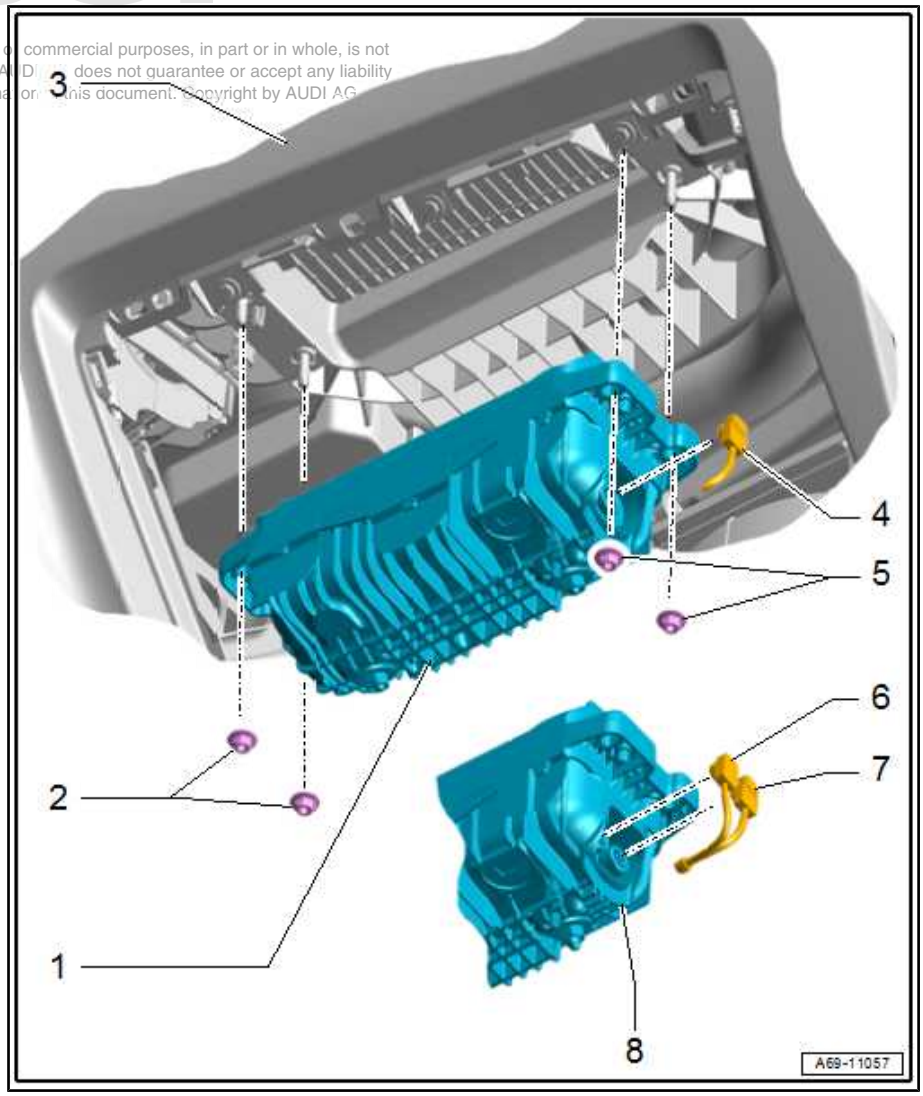
⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)”, page 116

⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters”, page 117

⇒ “7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag”, page 120

7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

> **WARNING**
>
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
>
> *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 117

2 - Nut

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Dash panel

- ❑ Renew dash panel after an airbag has been triggered ⇒ page 191

4 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

5 - Nut

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 9 Nm

6 - Electrical connector

- ❑ NAR version, for airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-

7 - Electrical connector

- ❑ NAR version, for airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

8 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ NAR version, with airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131- and airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 117

7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*
- *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 25 .

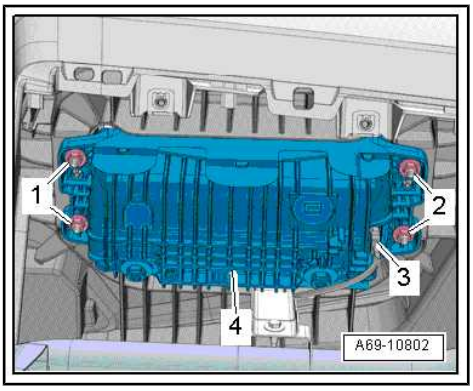
WARNING

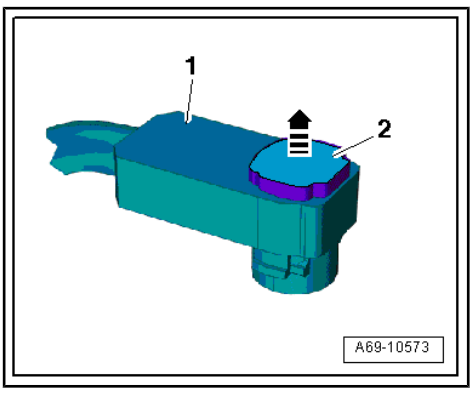
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug electrical connector -3- at airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.

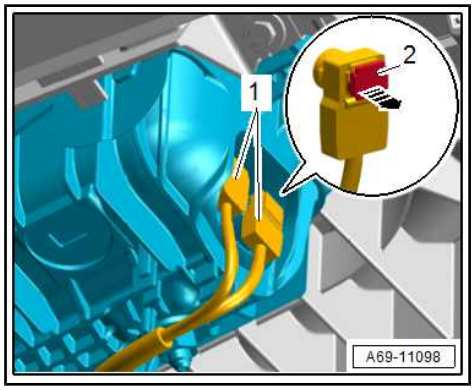




NAR version:

WARNING

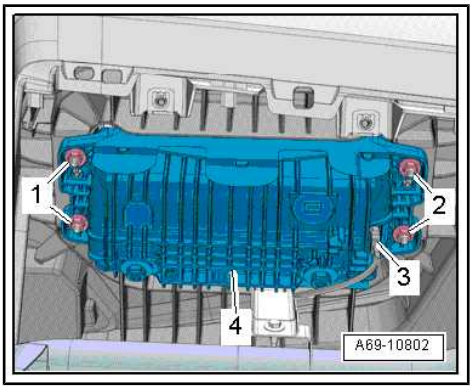
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connectors -1- at airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131- and airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

All vehicles (continued):



WARNING

Hold airbag unit to prevent it from dropping.

– Remove nuts -1 and 2-.
– Take out airbag (front passenger side) -4- downwards.

WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)”, page 116

7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag

Removing

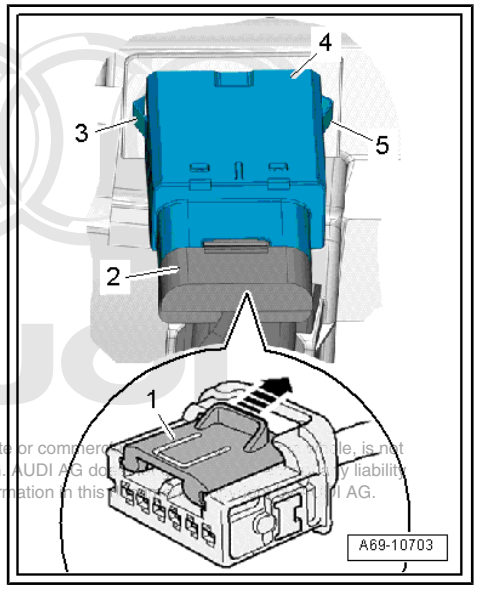
WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 25 .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector is disengaged.

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Release retaining springs -3- and -5- and press key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- -item 4- out of housing for key-operated switch.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this Repair Manual. © AUDI AG.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Make sure that key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag - E224- engages audibly in housing.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 20

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 Side airbags

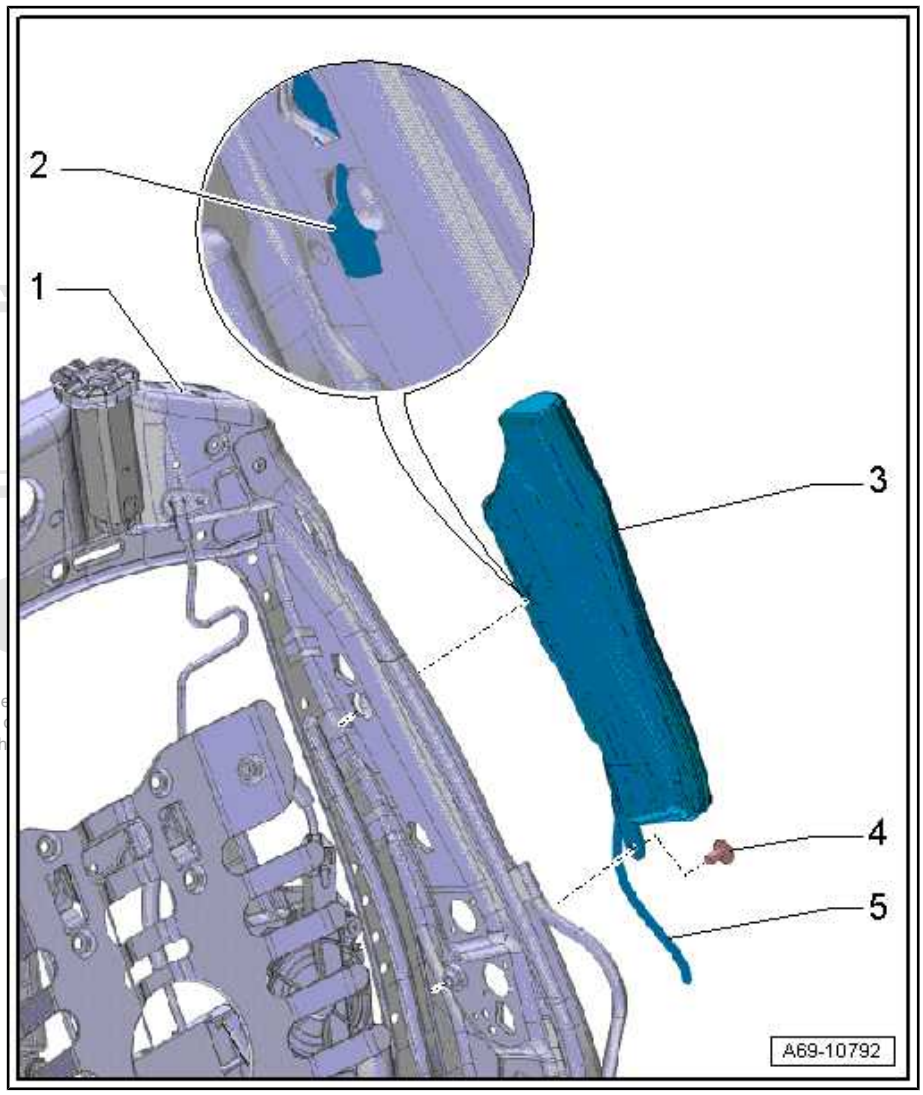
⇒ “8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)”, page 123

⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)”, page 124

⇒ “8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter”, page 124

⇒ “8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter”, page 125

8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)



1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Hook

- ❑ For securing side airbag to outer backrest frame

3 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 124

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Insert with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Electrical wiring

- ❑ Routed all the way through from side airbag igniter on driver side - N199- / side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200- to connector point

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)

1 - Electrical wiring

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Side airbag (rear)

- ❑ Driver side: with rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ❑ Passenger side: with rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

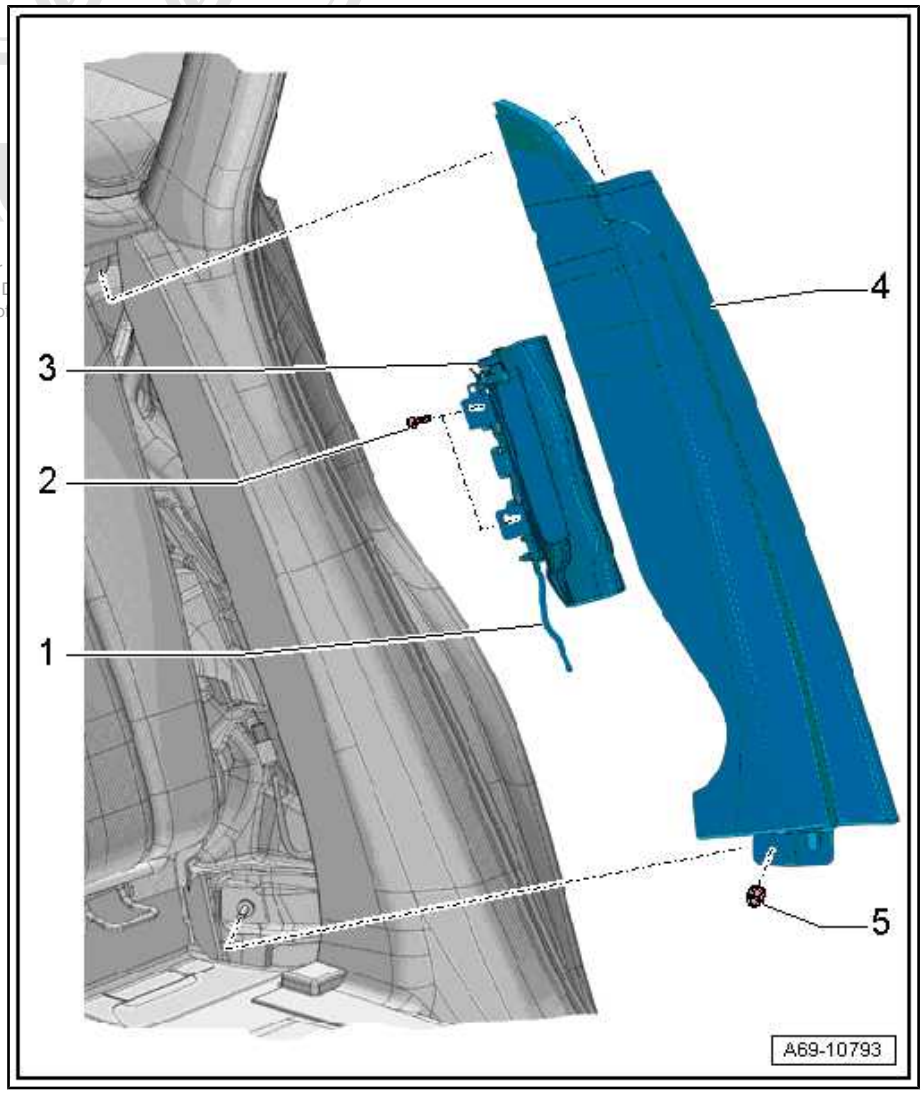
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 125

4 - Side padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 344

5 - Nut

- ❑ 9 Nm



8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter

Removing

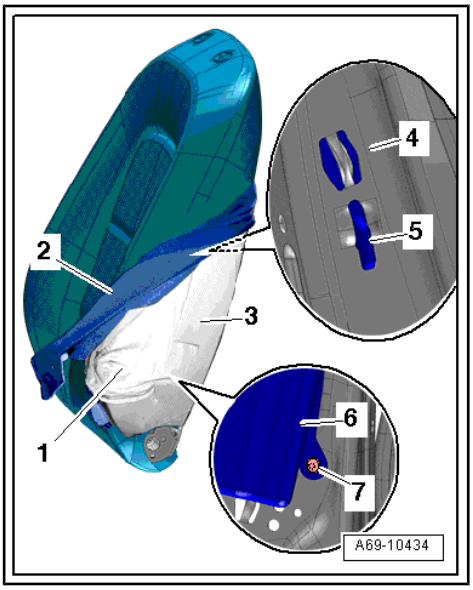
> **WARNING**
> - *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
> - *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 5 .*
> - *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 301 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 301 .
– Detach padding from backrest in area of side airbag until bolt -7- for side airbag is accessible ⇒ page 360 .
– In area of side airbag, carefully pull backrest cover -2- with backrest padding -3- forwards as far as possible.
– Remove bolt -7-.
– Disengage hook -5- of side airbag -6- from outer backrest frame -4- and leave in pouch -1- (sewn into cover).
– Detach backrest cover with padding from backrest ⇒ page 360 and take out side airbag.
– To do so, carefully pull electrical wiring harness for side airbag and, depending on equipment version, all other wiring harnesses out of backrest.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)", page 123

8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 5 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

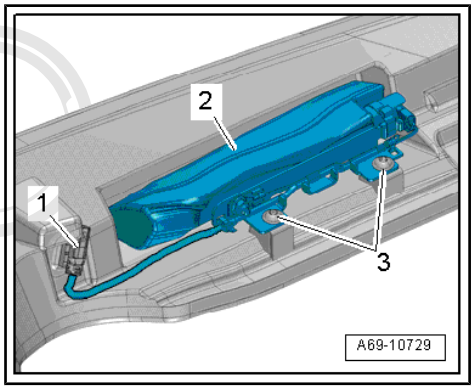
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 344 .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Move clear electrical connector -1- for side airbag (rear).
– Remove bolts -3-.
– Detach side airbag (rear) -2- from side padding.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)", page 124

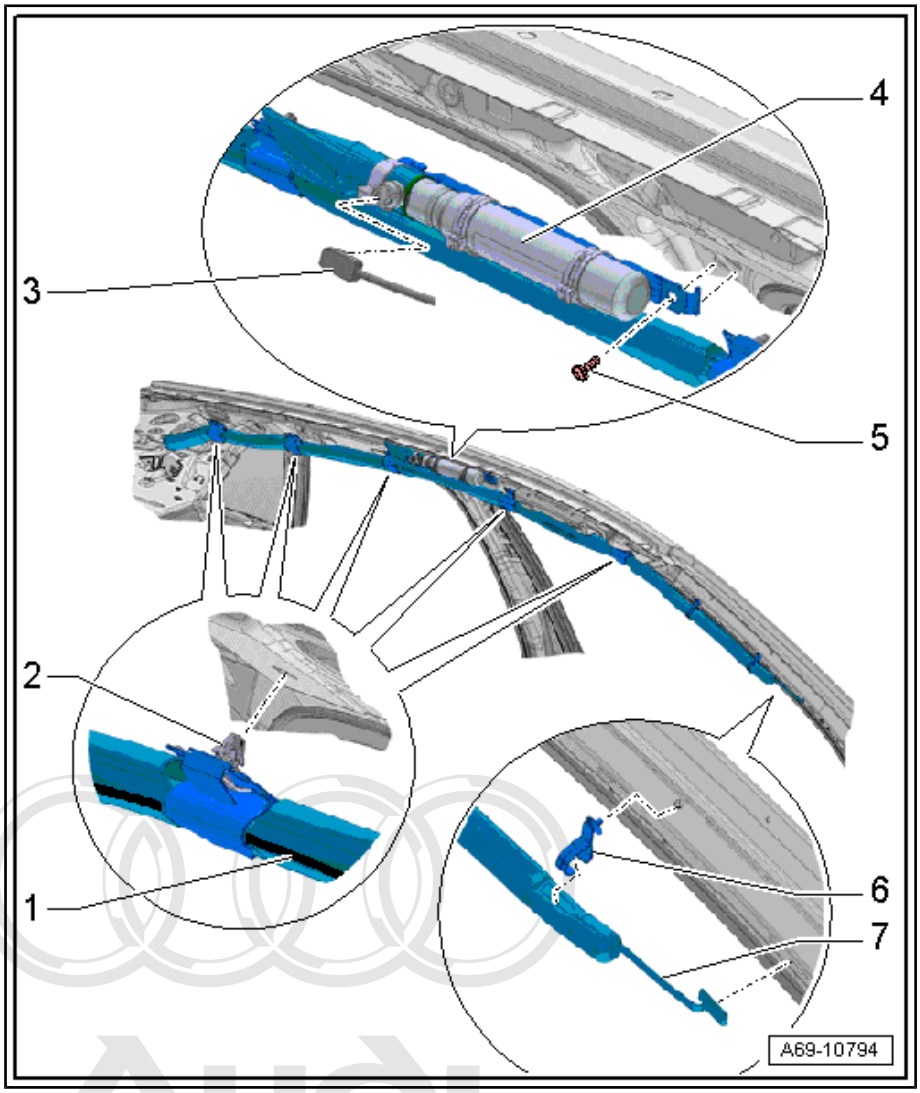
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 Curtain airbags

⇒ “9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag”, page 128

⇒ “9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter”, page 129

9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag



1 - Black line

- ❑ Designed to prevent twisting
- ❑ Must be visible all along airbag after installation

2 - Retaining clip

- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 130

3 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Driver side: for driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Passenger side: for front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 131

4 - Curtain airbag

- ❑ Driver side: with driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 129

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 5 Nm

6 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew clip if removed following an accident

7 - Bag tether

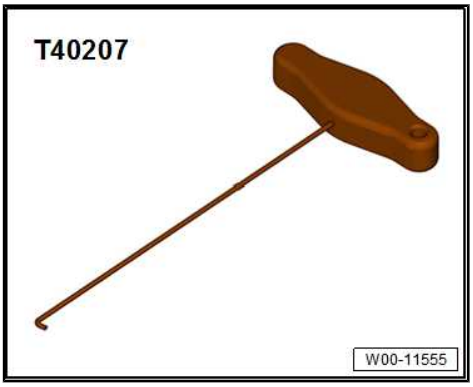
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 129

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hook - T40207-



- Release tool - VAS 1978/17- from release tool set - VAS 1978/35-



Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

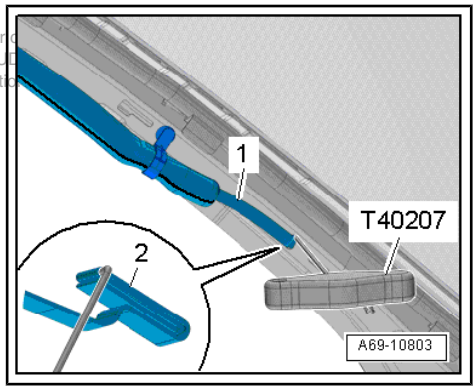
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 240 .

– Remove bag tether -1- for curtain airbag from A-pillar.

– To do so, carefully apply hook - T40207- and insert it in opening in body.

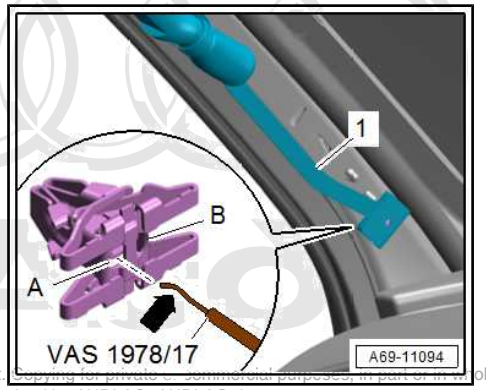
– Engage hook - T40207- in lug -2- at bag tether for curtain airbag and pull out carefully.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
mitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD
with respect to the correctness of informati

NAR version:

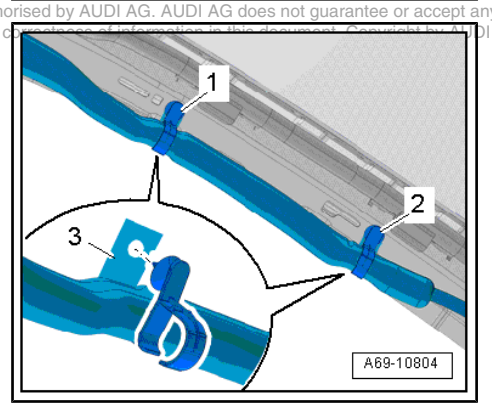
- Remove bag tether -1- for curtain airbag from A-pillar.
- To do so, carefully insert curved end -arrow- of release tool - VAS 1978/17- in opening -A- just as far as stop, as shown in illustration.
- At the same time, pull left section of clip out of body.
- Remove release tool - VAS 1978/17- again and make sure that clip does not engage again on side you have released.
- Turn release tool - VAS 1978/17- by 180° and repeat procedure for opening -B-.



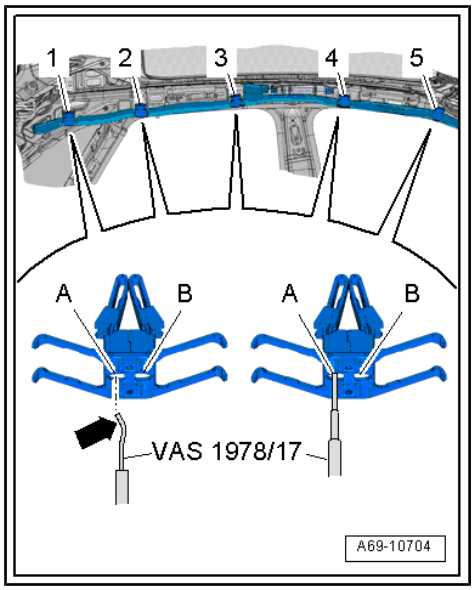
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

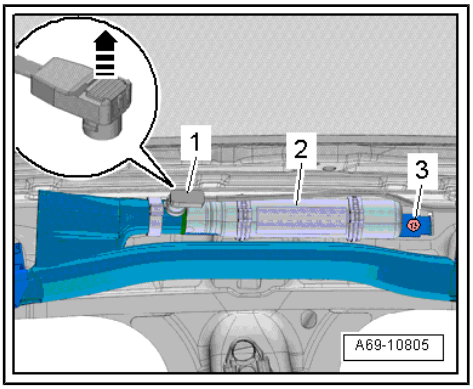
All vehicles (continued):

- Remove clips -1- and -2- from A-pillar.



- Disengage clips -1 ... 5- of retaining tabs for curtain airbag from body.
- To do so, carefully insert curved end -arrow- of release tool - VAS 1978/17- in opening -A- just as far as stop, as shown in illustration.
- At the same time, pull left section of clip out of body.
- Remove release tool - VAS 1978/17- again and make sure that clip does not engage again on side you have released.
- Turn release tool - VAS 1978/17- by 180° and repeat procedure for opening -B-.





WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Release connector locking element with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Remove bolt -3- at curtain airbag.
– Disengage curtain airbag -2- at front by pressing gas generator upwards and pulling inwards.
– Slide curtain airbag towards rear out of mounting and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

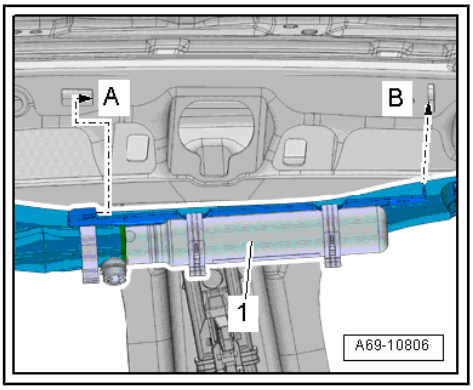
Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Always observe correct sequence for installing curtain airbag.*

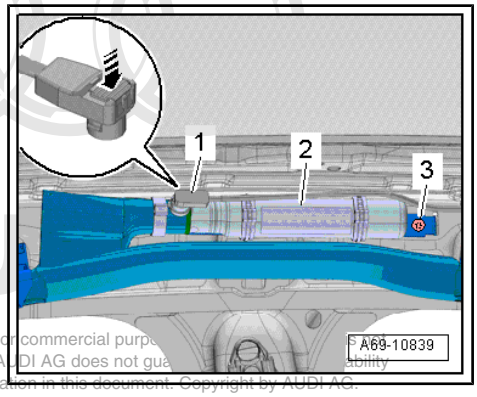
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



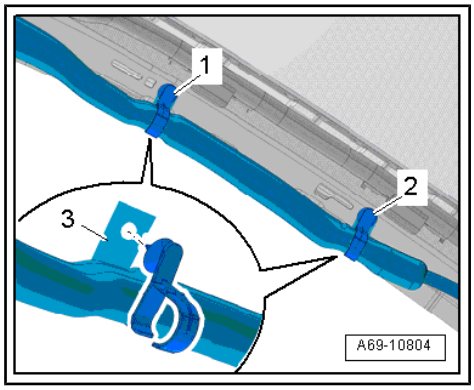
– First engage curtain airbag -1- at rear in body -Pfeil A- and then slide forwards.
– Engage curtain airbag at front in body -arrow B-.

– Tighten bolt -3-.
– Attach connector -1- to curtain airbag igniter -2-.
– Press in connector locking element -arrow-. This inserts connector as far as possible in curtain airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Install bag tether for curtain airbag at A-pillar.



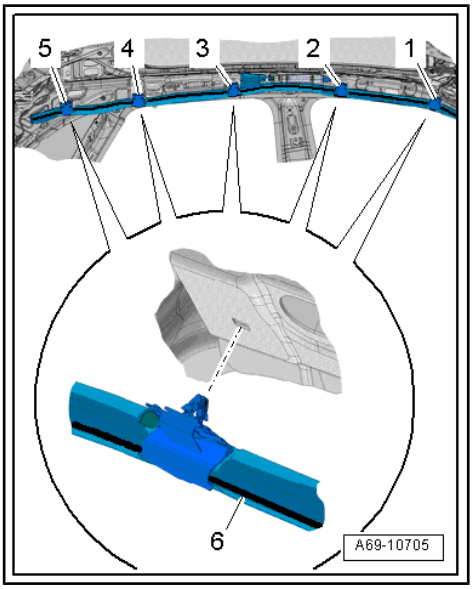
Note

Renew clips -1- and -2- if removed following an accident.

– Fasten clips -1 and 2- with retaining tab -3- for curtain airbag in body.
– Secure curtain airbag in clips.

– Fasten retaining clips for curtain airbag in body in the sequence -1 ... 5- until they engage audibly.
– Check that black line -6- is visible over entire length to make sure that curtain airbag is not twisted.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:



Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag”, page 128

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 Crash sensors for airbags

⇒ “10.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags”, page 134

⇒ “10.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283 ”, page 136

⇒ “10.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 ”, page 140

⇒ “10.4 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (rear) G256 / G257 ”, page 144

10.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags

⇒ “10.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags, all vehicles except NAR version”, page 134

⇒ “10.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags, NAR version”, page 135

10.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags, all vehicles except NAR version

1 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

- ❑ Fitting location: in centre of vehicle on lock carrier
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 136

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

4 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G180-

- ❑ Fitting location: on B-pillar behind B-pillar trim (bottom)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 140

5 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G257-

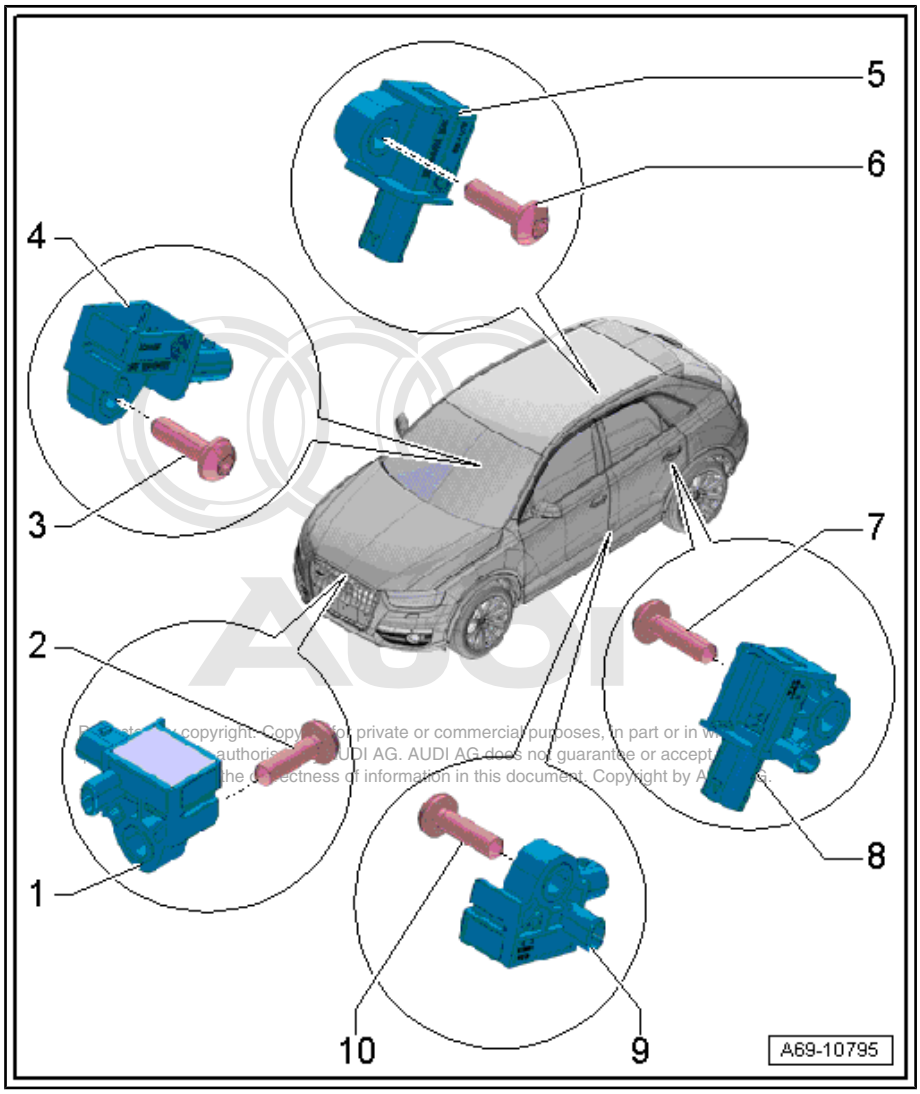
- ❑ Fitting location: on inside of wheel housing behind sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 144

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256-

- ❑ Fitting location: on inside of wheel housing behind sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 144

9 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G179-

- ❑ Fitting location: on B-pillar behind B-pillar trim (bottom)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 140

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

10.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags, NAR version

1 - Front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side - G284-

- ❑ Fitting location: on right side of lock carrier
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 138

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G180-

- ❑ Fitting location: in door
- ❑ Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 6
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 142

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

5 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G257-

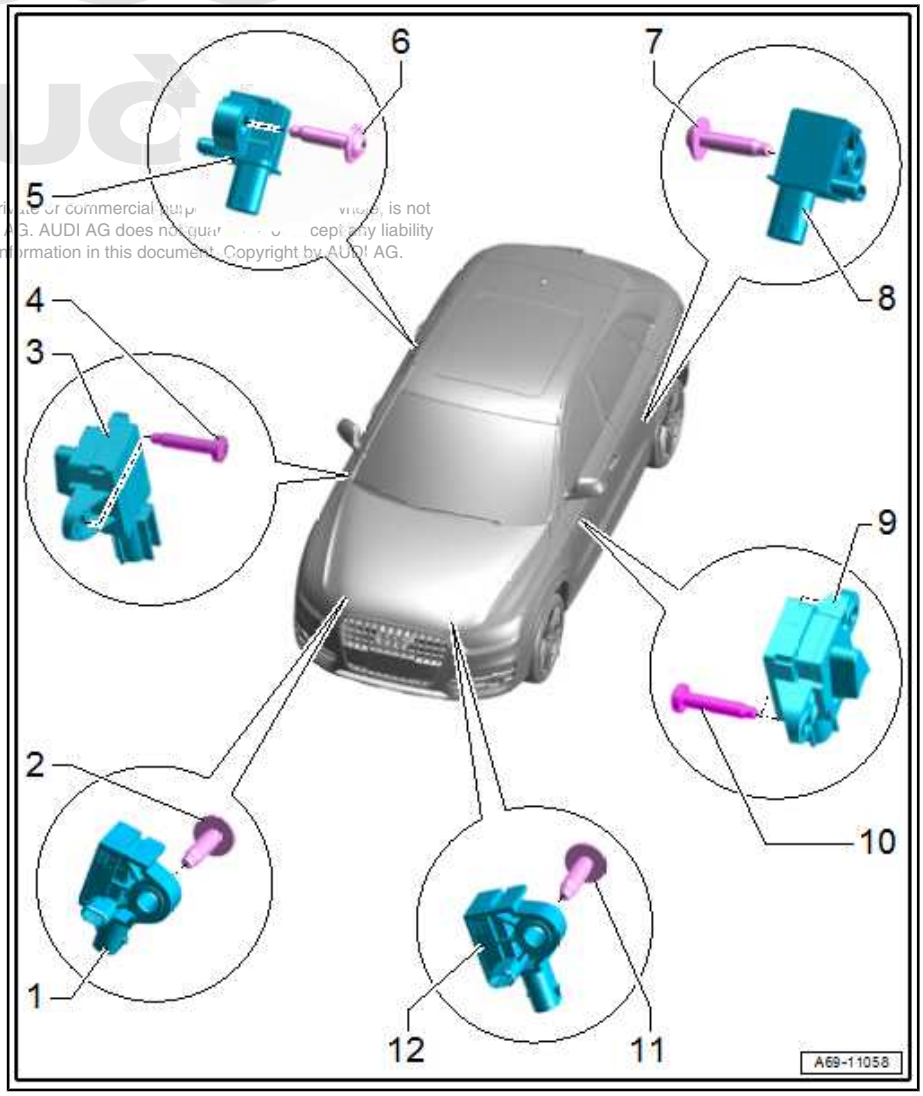
- ❑ Fitting location: behind sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 144

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm



8 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256-

- ❑ Fitting location: behind sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 144

9 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G179-

- ❑ Fitting location: in door
- ❑ Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 6

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 142

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

12 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

- ❑ Fitting location: on left side of lock carrier
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 138

10.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

⇒ "10.2.1 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283 - all vehicles except NAR version", page 136

⇒ "10.2.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor G283 / G284 - NAR version", page 138

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10.2.1 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283- - all vehicles except NAR version

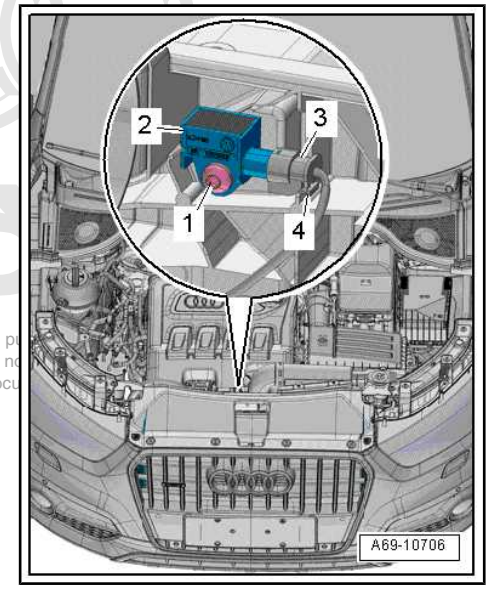
Removing

> **WARNING**
>
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
>
> *Risk of injury due to automatic engine start on vehicles with start/stop system.*
>
> - *On vehicles with activated start/stop system (indicated by a message in the instrument cluster), the engine may start automatically on demand.*
> - *Therefore it is important to ensure that the start/stop system is deactivated when performing repairs (switch the ignition off, and if required switch the ignition on again).*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Open bonnet.

– Remove air duct between lock carrier and air cleaner housing ⇒ Rep. gr. 23 ; Air cleaner; Exploded view - air cleaner housing or ⇒ Rep. gr. 24 ; Air cleaner; Exploded view - air cleaner housing .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

– Pull out connector locking element -4-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -3- at crash sensor.

– Remove bolt -1- and detach crash sensor -2- for front airbag.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "10.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 134

10.2.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor -G283- / -G284- - NAR version

Removing

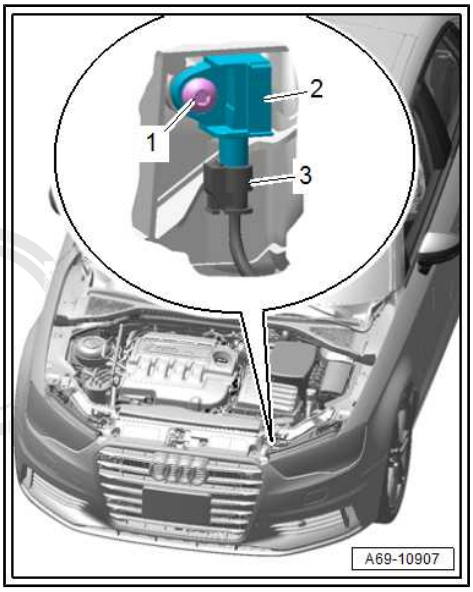
> **WARNING**
>
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Open bonnet.

– Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283- : Remove filler neck for washer fluid reservoir ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen washer system; Removing and installing washer fluid reservoir .

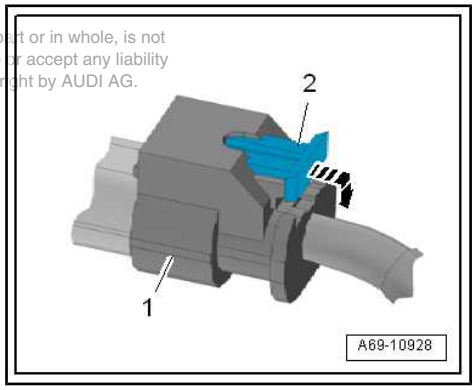
– Remove bolt -1- and detach crash sensor -2- for front airbag at lock carrier.



> **WARNING**
>
> ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

– To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

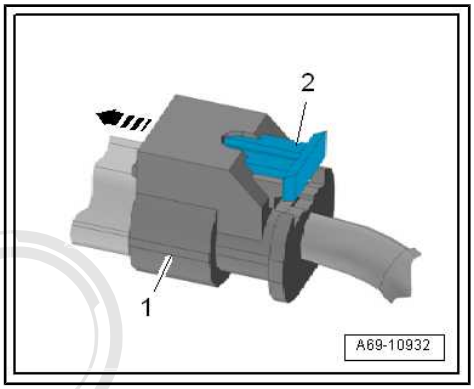


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.

– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "10.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags, NAR version", page 135

10.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor -G179- / -G180-

⇒ "10.3.1 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 - all vehicles except NAR version", page 140

⇒ "10.3.2 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 - NAR version", page 142

10.3.1 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor -G179- / -G180- - all vehicles except NAR version

Removing

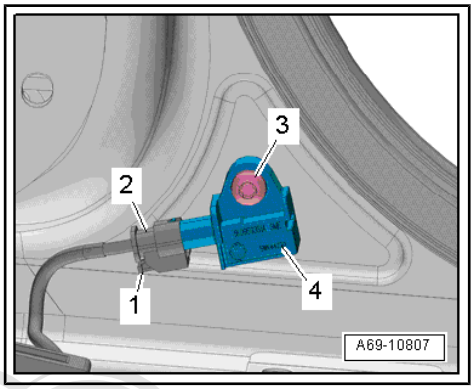
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 6 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 217 .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Pull out connector locking element -1-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -2- at crash sensor.
– Remove bolt -3- and detach crash sensor -4- for side airbag.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following.

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “10.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags”, page 134

10.3.2 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor -G179- / -G180- - NAR version

Removing

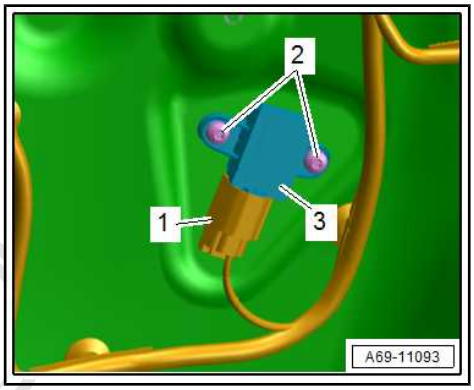
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 6 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ page 167 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Pull out and press down connector locking element and unplug electrical connector -1- from crash sensor.

– Remove bolts -2- and detach crash sensor -3- for side airbag.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Audi
Reproduction of this publication, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to this publication. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “10.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags”, page 134

10.4 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (rear) -G256- / -G257-

Removing

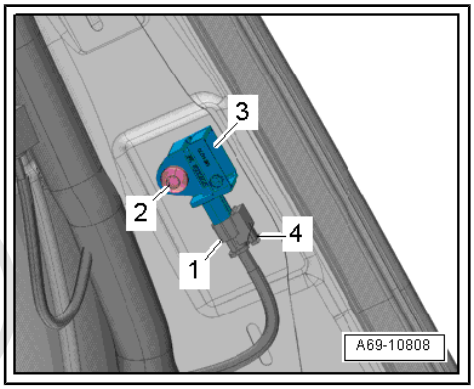
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove sill panel trim panels (rear) ⇒ page 213 .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Pull out connector locking element -4-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.
– Unscrew bolt -2- and detach crash sensor -3- for side airbag (rear).

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "10.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 134

11 Seat position sensor

⇒ “11.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor”, page 146

⇒ “11.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor”, page 146

11.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

The illustration shows the seat position sensor with wiring harness for the front passenger seat as an example.

1 - Plug-in connector

- ❑ Connector point in vehicle floor at side member under seat

2 - Cable retainer/cable tie

- ❑ Clip into seat pan

3 - Plug-in connector

- ❑ For belt buckle

4 - Cable retainer/cable tie

- ❑ Clip into seat pan

5 - Seat rail

- ❑ Tunnel side

6 - Front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-

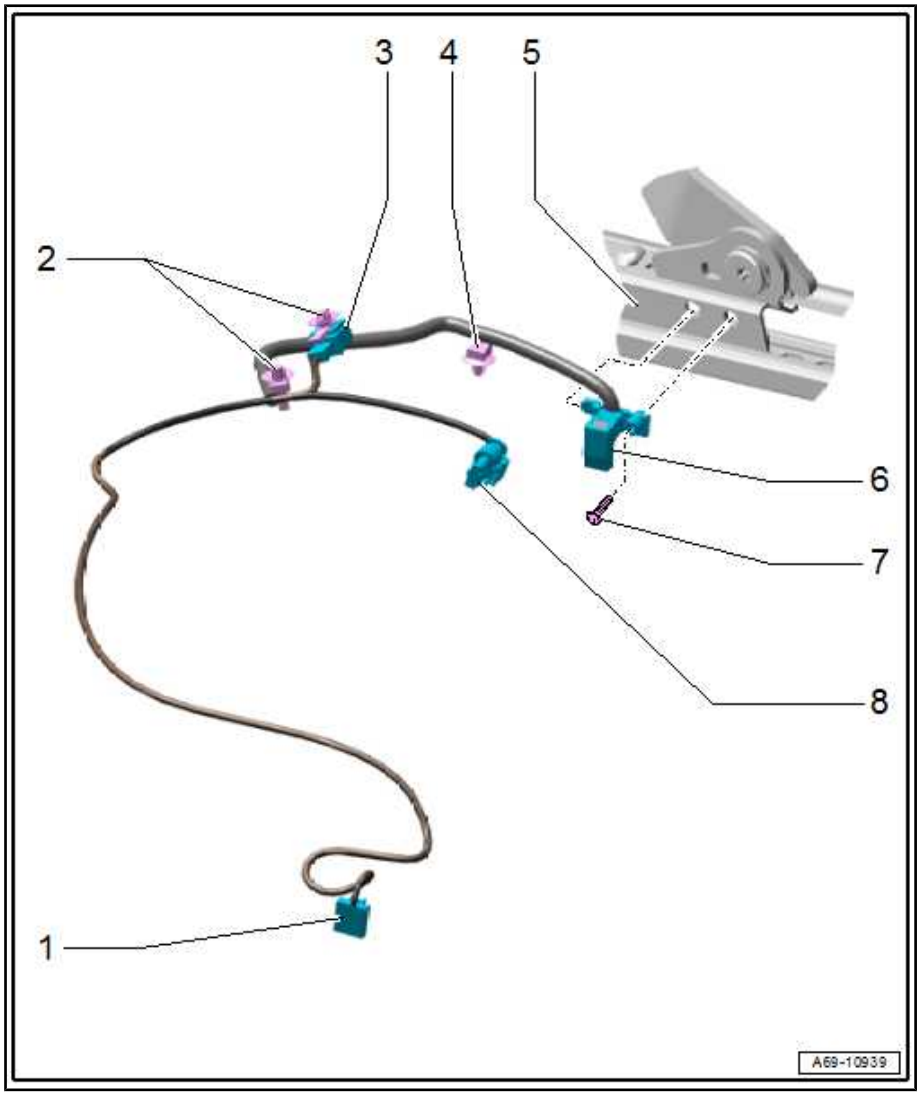
- ❑ Driver seat: driver side seat position sensor - G553-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 146

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.2 Nm

8 - Plug-in connector

- ❑ Passenger seat only: for seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-



11.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor

Replacement seat position sensors are available with wiring harness and electrical connector. The following wires with connectors are incorporated into the wiring harness:

- ◆ Driver seat: Wire with connector for belt buckle coupling

- Front passenger seat: Wire with connector for belt buckle coupling and seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

Removing

WARNING

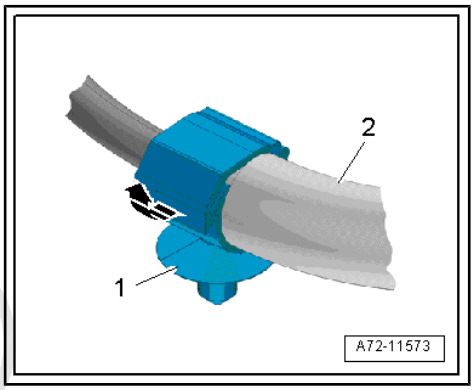
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .

– Using a screwdriver, open cable retainer (rear) -1- for modular wire routing at lower seat pan frame -arrows- and detach corrugated tube -2-.

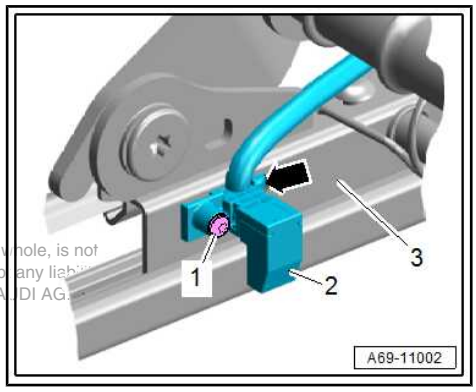
– Pull wire for seat position sensor -G553- / -G554- out of protective sleeve -2- and move clear.



– Remove bolt -1-.

– Unclip and disengage seat position sensor -2- from lower seat pan frame -3- -arrow-.

– Unfasten cable ties/cable clips for wiring from lower seat pan frame.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

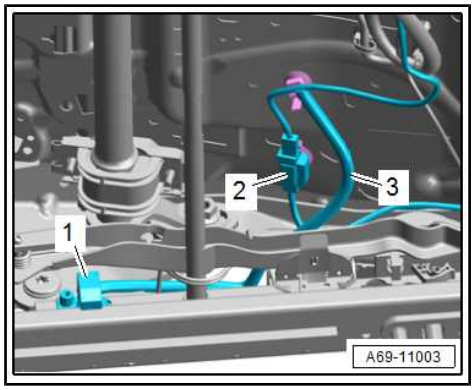
Driver seat:

– Unplug electrical connector -2- for belt buckle.

– Detach seat position sensor -1- with wires -3-.

Front passenger seat:

– Remove seat occupied sensor ⇒ page 154 .



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "11.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor", page 146

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 Belt-fastened recognition system

⇒ "12.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) G128 ", page 149

12.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

Note

The seat occupied sensor is only fitted on the front passenger seat.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hot air blower - VAS 1978/14A- (only for front seat with seat heating element)

Removing

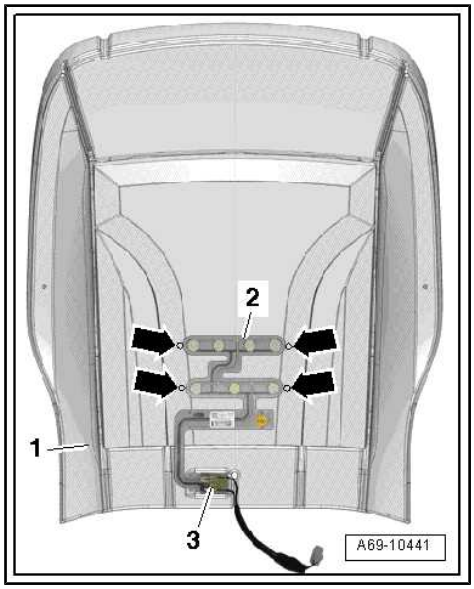
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Audi
Reproduction or binding for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove front passenger's seat ⇒ page 278 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .
– Remove padding from rear section of seat cover until seat occupied sensor is exposed (seat pan) ⇒ page 362 .

– Unplug electrical connector for seat occupied sensor.
– If fitted, carefully heat seat heating element with hot air blower - VAS 1978/14A- .
– Pull off seat heating element just far enough so that seat occupied sensor is exposed.
– Carefully detach seat occupied sensor -2- with printed circuit board -3- from seat padding -1-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Position printed circuit board -3- of seat occupied sensor -2- in cut-out in seat padding -1-.
– Align seat occupied sensor according to marks -arrows- on seat padding.

Caution

Install new seat occupied sensor in seat padding in same position as old seat occupied sensor.

– Peel off protective film and bond seat occupied sensor onto seat padding.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure seat occupied sensor is not covered by coils of the seat heating element.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 Seat occupied recognition system

⇒ “13.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system”, page 152

⇒ “13.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor”, page 154

13.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system

WARNING

The replacement part (service kit) for seat occupied recognition (country-specific version) is already pre-calibrated and the components must NOT be disconnected. The service kit consists of:

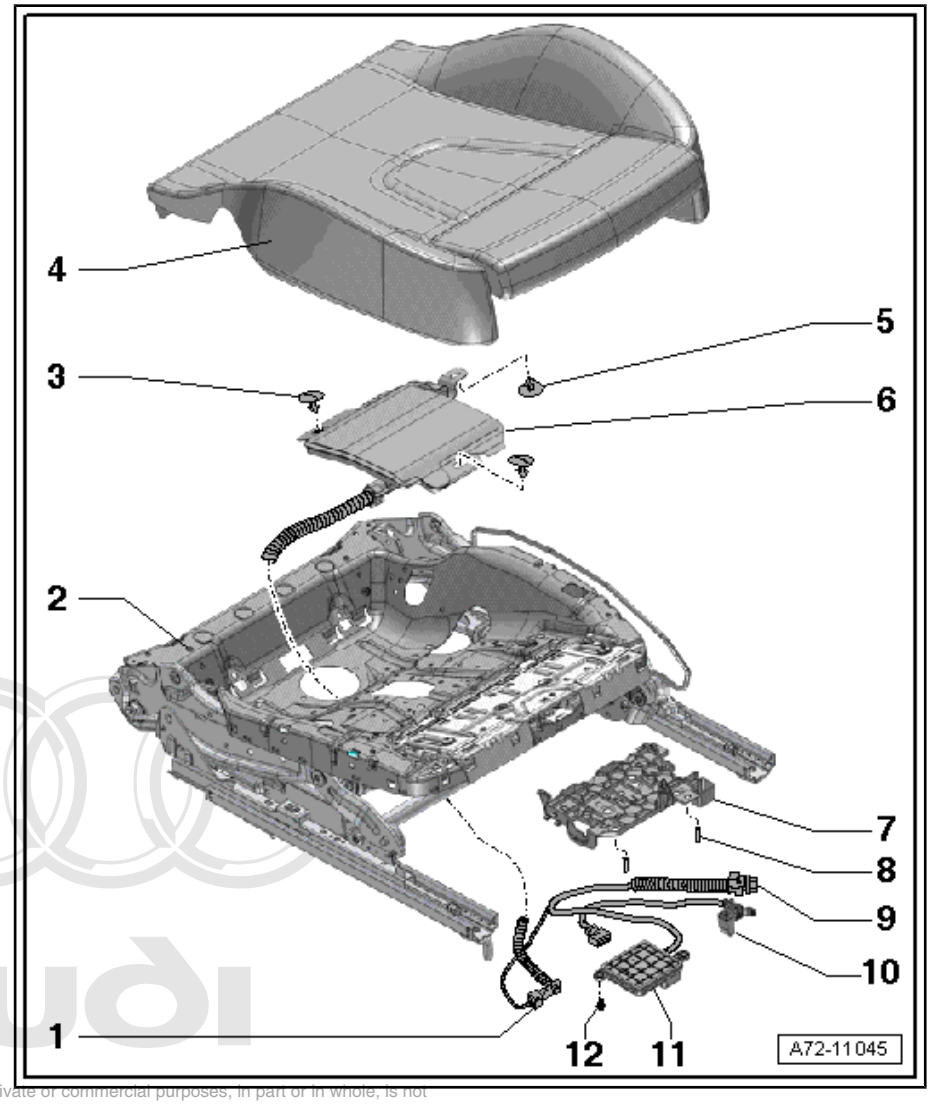
WARNING

Observe safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensors ⇒ page 6 .

Note

The seat occupied sensor is only fitted in the front passenger's seat.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452-

- ❑ Combined with padding, seat occupied sensor and control unit -J706- ; these components must not be separated
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 154

Caution

Do not unplug electrical connector.

2 - Seat pan

3 - Retaining clip

4 - Padding

- ❑ For seat pan
- ❑ Combined with seat occupied sensor, pressure sensor -G452- and control unit -J706- ; these components must not be separated

5 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Do not release

6 - Seat occupied sensor

- ❑ Combined with padding, pressure sensor -G452- and control unit -J706- ; these components must not be separated
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 154

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 - Mounting

- ❑ For seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

8 - Spreader pin

- ❑ For securing retainer to seat pan

9 - Electrical wiring harness

- ❑ Do not separate from pressure sensor -G452- and control unit -J706-

10 - Front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-

- ❑ Is component of electrical wiring harness -item 9-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 154

11 - Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

- ❑ Combined with seat occupied sensor, padding and pressure sensor -G452- ; these components must not be separated
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 154

Caution

Do not unplug electrical connector.

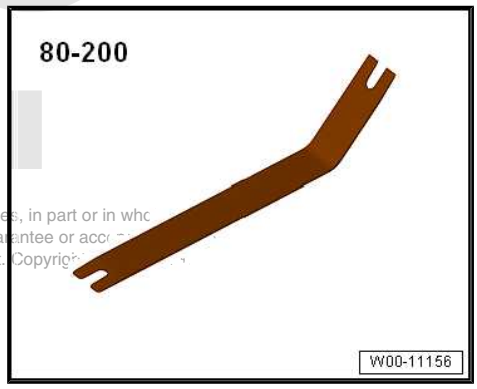
12 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

13.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acc
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 and seat occupied sensors ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

WARNING

The replacement part (service kit) for seat occupied recognition (country-specific version) is already pre-calibrated and the components must NOT be disconnected. The service kit consists of:

- *Seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-*
- *Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452-*
- *Seat occupied sensor*
- *Seat padding*
- *Wiring harness between seat occupied recognition control unit -J706- and pressure sensor -G452- with front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-*

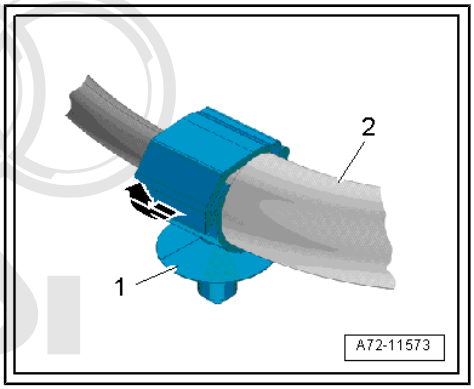
Removing

– Before taking out seat, move seat height adjuster to centre position.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

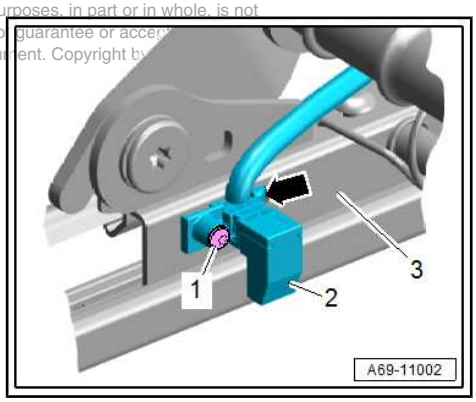
– Remove front passenger's seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .
– Depending on equipment version: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 319 .
– Using a screwdriver, open cable retainer (rear) -1- for modular wire routing at lower seat pan frame -arrows- and detach corrugated tube -2-.
– Pull wires out of protective sleeve -2- and move clear.
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 302 .
– Move electrical connector for belt buckle clear and unplug it.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

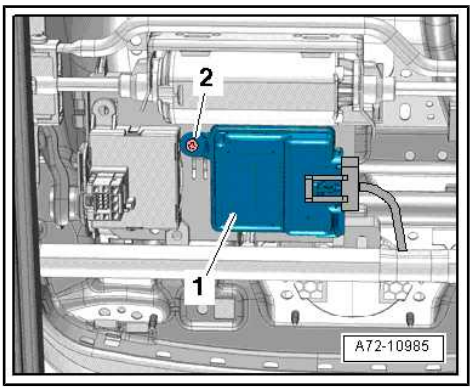
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Unclip and disengage seat position sensor -2- from lower seat pan frame -3- -arrow-.
– Unfasten cable ties/cable clips for wiring from lower seat pan frame.



– Unscrew bolt -2- and swivel seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- -item 1- out of retainer.

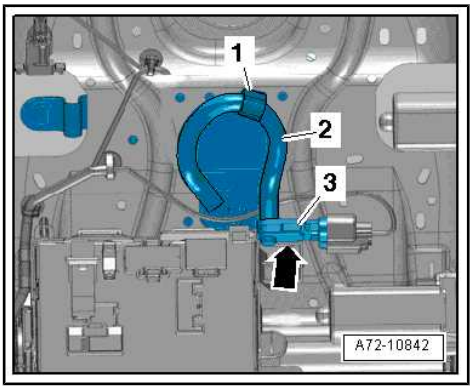
Caution

Do not unplug electrical connectors at pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- and seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .



Caution

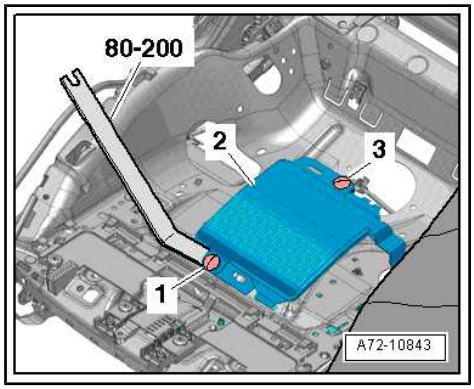
Do not unplug electrical connectors at pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- and seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .



– Using a thin screwdriver, open guide -1- for pressure hose -2- for seat occupied sensor and move pressure hose clear.
– Using a thin screwdriver, carefully unclip pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- -item 3- from retainer -arrow-.

Caution

Do not separate seat pan padding from seat occupied sensor.



– Remove seat cover and seat pan padding and carefully fold to side ⇒ page 357 .

– Carefully remove retaining clips -1, 3- for seat occupied sensor from seat pan using removal lever - 80-200- .

WARNING

Risk of damage!

- *The pressure hose and the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.*

– Detach seat cover with seat pan padding. To do so, first guide pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- with wiring harness out through opening in seat pan. Finally, guide seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- out through opening.

Caution

Do not separate seat pan padding from seat occupied sensor.

– Separate seat cover and seat pan padding ⇒ page 362 .

Installing

Caution

Do not unplug electrical connectors at pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition - G452- and seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- .

Install in reverse order of removal; note the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 and seat occupied sensors ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *The pressure hose and the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

poses, in part or in whole, is not guarantee or accept any liability ment. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

When installing a new service kit and following any repair work on the front passenger's seat during which the seat cover and/or backrest cover is/are disengaged, the basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed ⇒ page 6 . The seat occupied sensor is only fitted on the front passenger seat.

– Finally, select “Airbag” function in “Guided Fault Finding” mode using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester. The seat occupied sensor is only fitted on the front passenger seat.

♦ Basic setting for seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “13.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system”, page 152

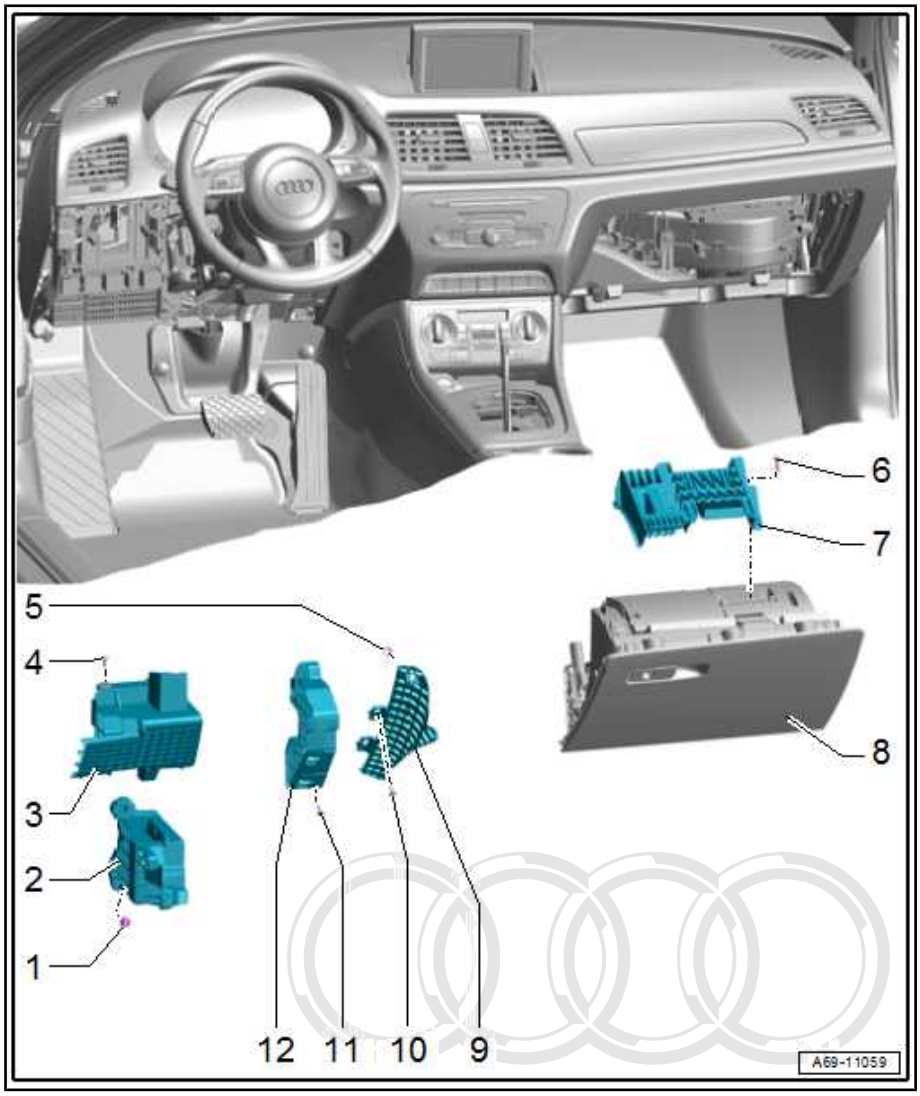
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 Deformation element

⇒ “14.1 Exploded view - deformation element”, page 158

⇒ “14.2 Removing and installing deformation elements”, page 159

14.1 Exploded view - deformation element



1 - Nut

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 25 Nm

2 - Deformation element (bottom)

- ❑ Fitting location: under dash panel cover (driver side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160

3 - Outer deformation element (top)

- ❑ Fitting location: under dash panel cover (driver side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 159

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

5 - Clamping washer

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Press in as far as stop

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

7 - Deformation element (front passenger side)

- ❑ Fitting location: on glove box
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 161

8 - Glove box

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25

9 - Deformation element (dash panel)

- ❑ Fitting location: on left side of dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Inner deformation element (top)

- ❑ Fitting location: under dash panel cover (driver side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 159

14.2 Removing and installing deformation elements

⇒ "14.2.1 Removing and installing outer deformation element (top) - driver side", page 159

⇒ "14.2.2 Removing and installing inner deformation element (top) - driver side", page 159

⇒ "14.2.3 Removing and installing deformation element (bottom) - driver side", page 160

⇒ "14.2.4 Removing and installing deformation element (dash panel)", page 160

⇒ "14.2.5 Removing and installing deformation element (front passenger side)", page 161

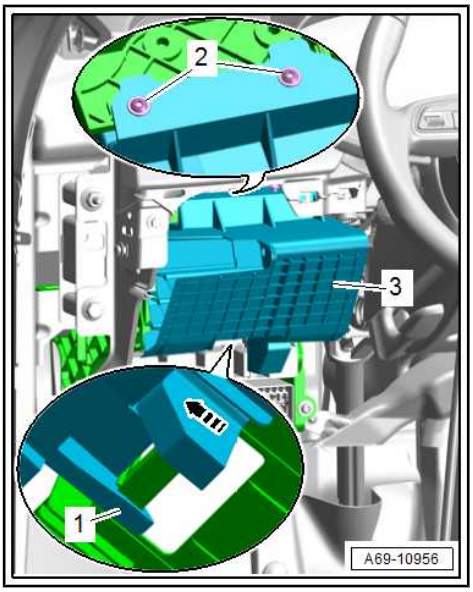
14.2.1 Removing and installing outer deformation element (top) - driver side

Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 21 .

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Release retaining hook -1- and detach deformation element -3- towards rear from relay and fuse carrier -arrow-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "14.1 Exploded view - deformation element", page 158

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14.2.2 Removing and installing inner deformation element (top) - driver side

Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 21 .

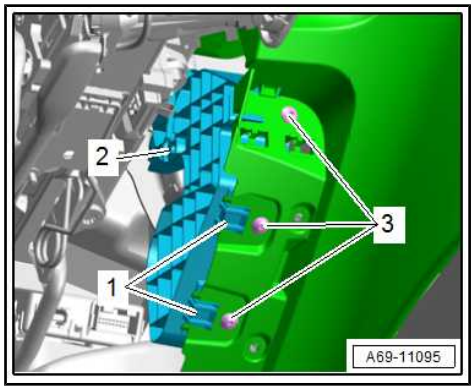
– Remove steering column trim (bottom) ⇒ page 24 .

– Move steering wheel upwards and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Unclip wire from deformation element and move clear.

– Remove bolts -3-.

– Release fasteners -1- and detach deformation element -2- from dash panel.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “14.1 Exploded view - deformation element”, page 158

14.2.3 Removing and installing deformation element (bottom) - driver side

Removing

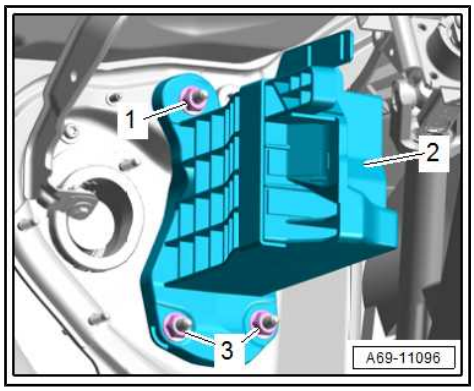
– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 21 .

– Remove outer deformation element (top) ⇒ page 159 .

– Remove relay and fuse carrier behind dash panel (driver side) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Removing and installing relay and fuse carrier behind dash panel (driver side) .

– Remove nuts -1 and 3-.

– Disengage deformation element -2- from pin and detach.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “14.1 Exploded view - deformation element”, page 158

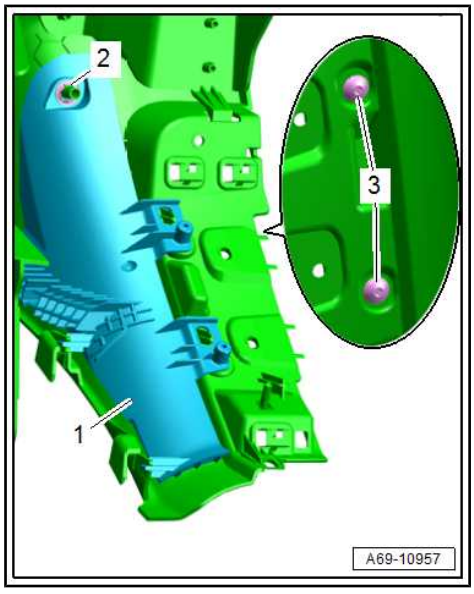
14.2.4 Removing and installing deformation element (dash panel)

Removing

– Remove dash panel ⇒ page 191 .

– Remove bolts -3-.

– Remove clamping washer -2- and detach deformation element -1- from dash panel.



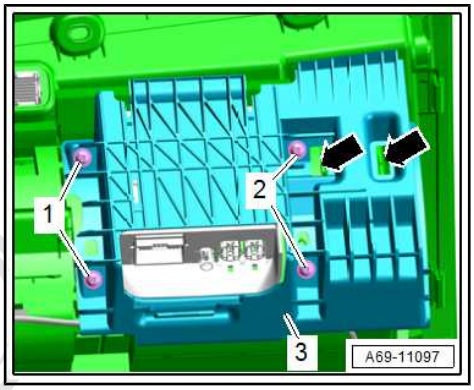
Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “14.1 Exploded view - deformation element”, page 158

14.2.5 Removing and installing deformation element (front passenger side)



Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 25 .

– Remove bolts -1 and 2-.

– Unclip deformation element -3- from glove box -arrows- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "14.1 Exploded view - deformation element", page 158

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

70 – Trim, insulation

1 Door trim (front)

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 162

⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim”, page 165

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing treble loudspeaker trim”, page 165

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing bass loudspeaker trim”, page 166

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing trim panel”, page 166

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing door trim (front)”, page 167

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing armrest (front)”, page 170

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing door puller (front)”, page 171

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 172

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing window frame trim”, page 172

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)

1 - Door puller

- ❑ With switch mounting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 171

2 - Front left entry light - W31-

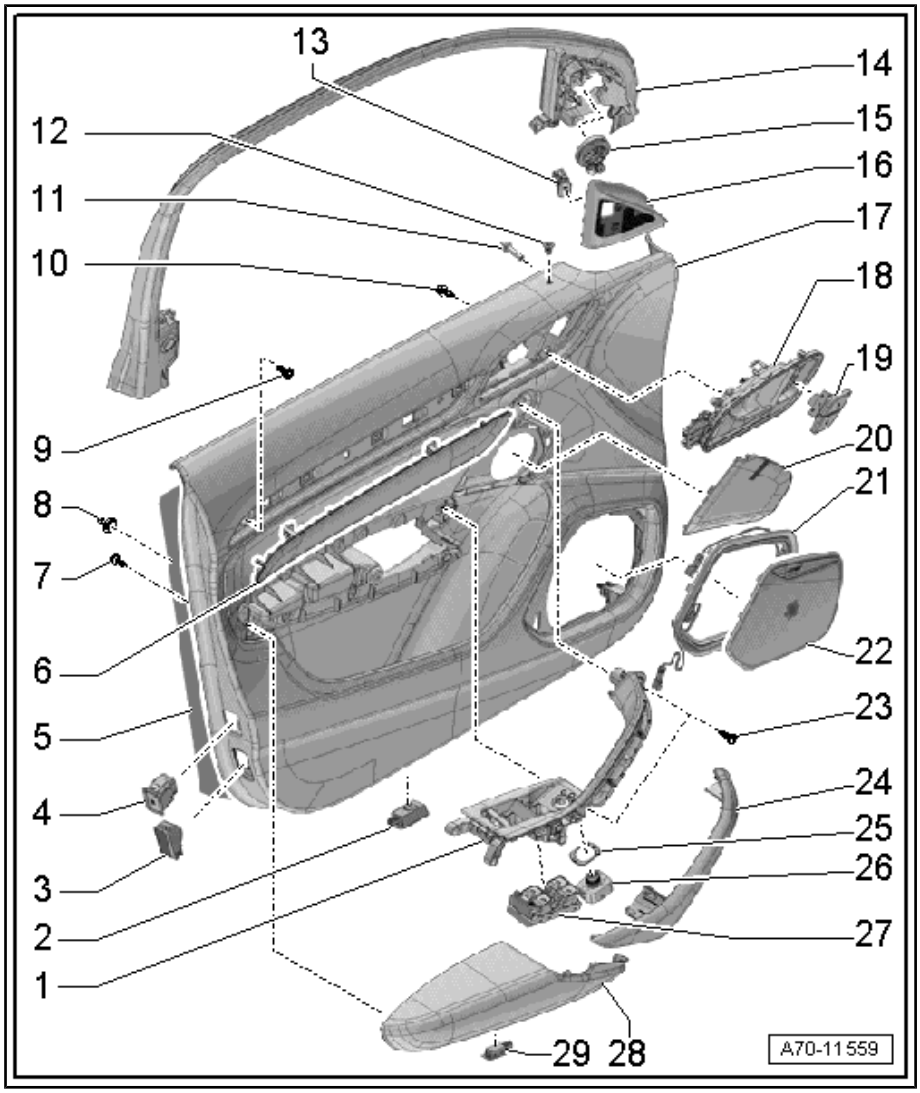
- ❑ Passenger side: front right entry light - W32-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing entry light (front) -W31- / -W32-

3 - Reflector

- ❑ Driver side (equipment version): driver side door warning lamp - W30-
- ❑ Passenger side (equipment version): front passenger side door warning lamp - W36-
- ❑ Removing and installing door warning lamp ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing door warning lamp -W30- / -W36-

4 - Interior monitoring switch - E183-

- ❑ Depending on equip-



ment version

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls

5 - Insulating mat

6 - Trim panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 166

7 - Bolt

- ❑ For door puller/armrest
- ❑ 11x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

8 - Clip

- ❑ With seal
- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 6x, one-piece
- ❑ 1x, two-piece
- ❑ Renew two-piece clip if damaged

9 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

10 - Bolt

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

11 - Stop

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 6 Nm

12 - Sleeve

- ❑ For central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-
- ❑ Driver's door only
- ❑ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

13 - Button for lane change assist - E530-

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Removing and installing button for lane change assist - E530-

14 - Trim

- ❑ For window frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 172

15 - Treble loudspeaker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Removing and installing front treble loudspeakers -R20- / -R22-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

16 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ For treble loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 165
- ❑ Clip into trim for window frame

17 - Door trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 167
- ❑ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve -item 12- must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

18 - Interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 172

19 - Driver side interior locking button for central locking system - E308-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger side interior locking button for central locking system - E309-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing driver side interior locking button for central locking system - E308-

20 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ For mid-range loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 165
- ❑ Hook into door trim and press on until it engages audibly

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

21 - Background lighting bulb

- ❑ Loudspeaker background lighting bulb 1 - L211- / loudspeaker background lighting bulb 2 - L212-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - ambient lighting in doors

22 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ For bass loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 166
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

23 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

24 - Grip moulding

- ❑ For door puller
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 171

25 - Symbol trim

26 - Mirror adjustment switch - E43-

- ❑ Equipment version: adjustment switch for mirror with fold-in feature - E168-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing mirror adjustment switch -E43- / -E168-

27 - Operating unit for window regulator

- ❑ Driver side: operating unit with window regulator switch -E40- / -E81- / -E53- / -E55- / -E189-
- ❑ Passenger side: window regulator switch in front passenger door - E107-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

28 - Armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 170

29 - Driver door storage compartment illumination bulb - L160-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger door storage compartment illumination bulb - L161-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing door storage compartment illumination bulb -L160- / -L161-

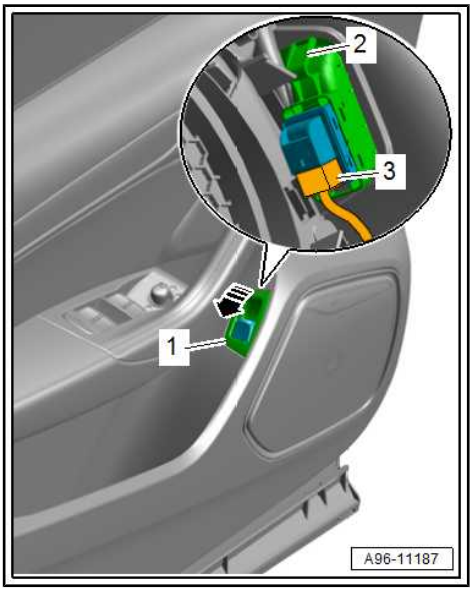
Rear lid release switch - E165-

– Remove switch -E165- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

1 - Trim

2 - Retaining clip

3 - Electrical connector

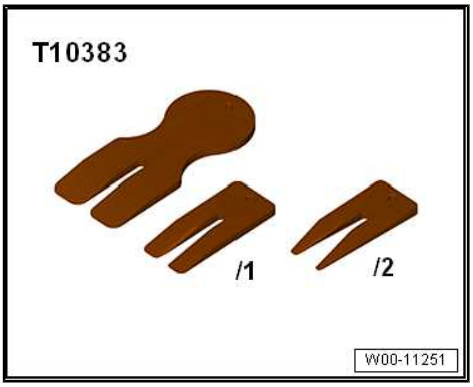


1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



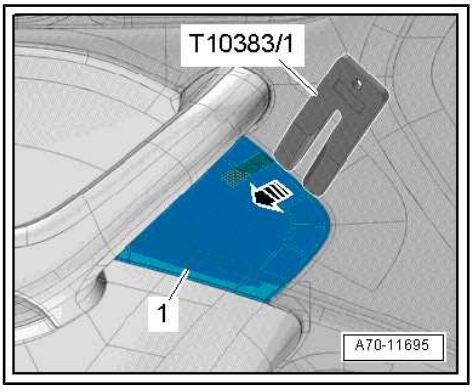
Removing

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

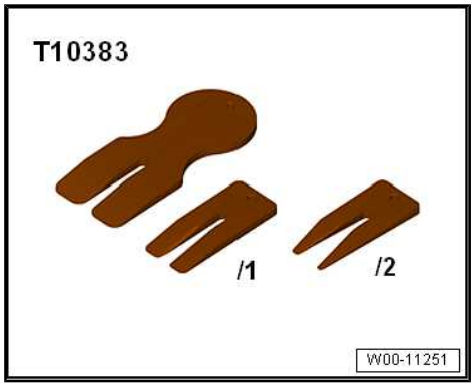
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 162



1.3 Removing and installing treble loud-speaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

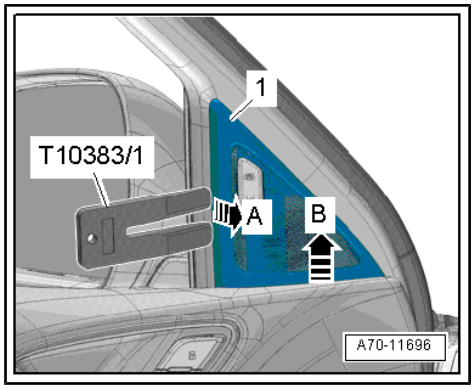
– Carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off window frame trim -arrow - along gap using wedge -T10383/1- .

– Pull loudspeaker trim out of door trim -arrow B- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

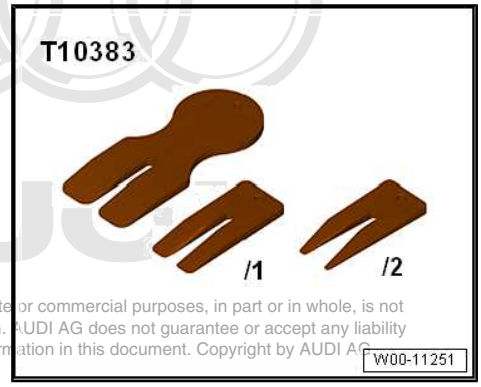
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 162



1.4 Removing and installing bass loud-speaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

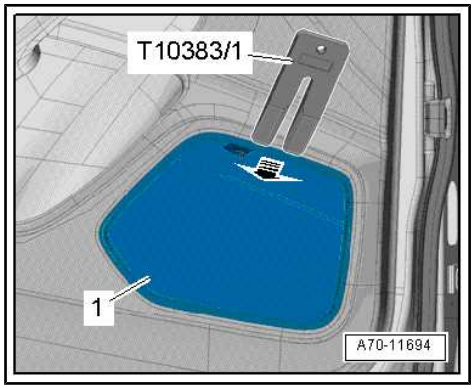
– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow- and detach.

– Equipment version with background lighting bulb -L164- / -L165- : Unplug electrical connectors.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

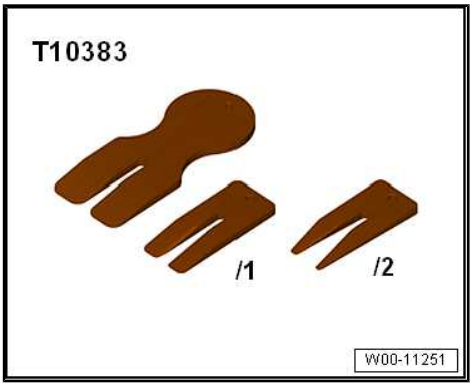
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 162



1.5 Removing and installing trim panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

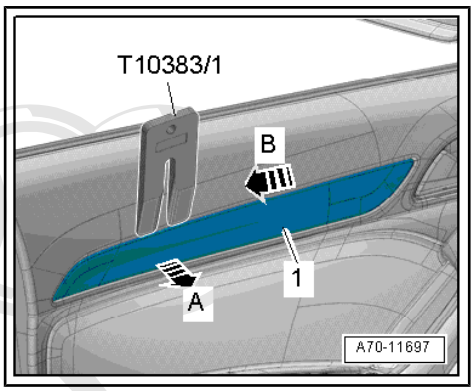
♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully prise trim panel -1- off door trim along gap -arrow A-.

– Lift trim panel slightly and slide it towards rear -arrow B- to allow hook on inside of trim panel to be unfastened from recess in door trim.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 162

1.6 Removing and installing door trim (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



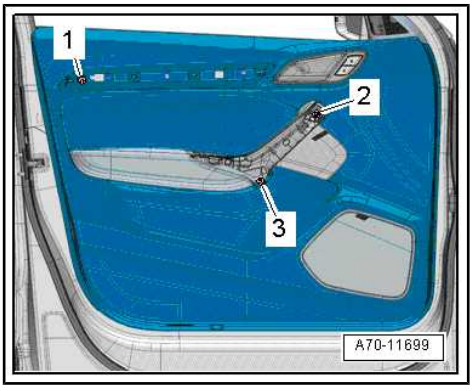
Removing

– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.

– Remove trim panel ⇒ page 166 .

– Remove grip moulding for door puller ⇒ page 171 .

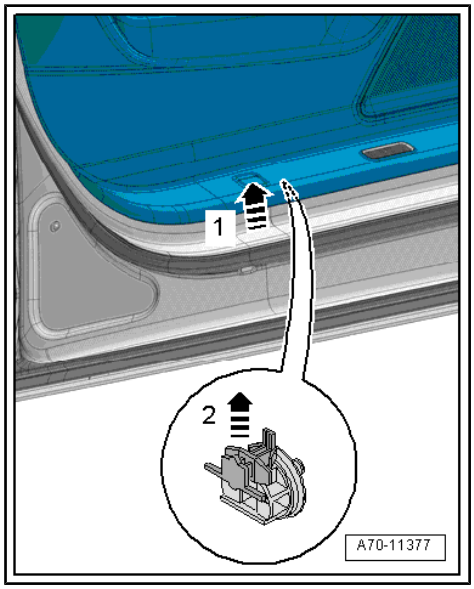
– Remove bolts -1 ... 3-.



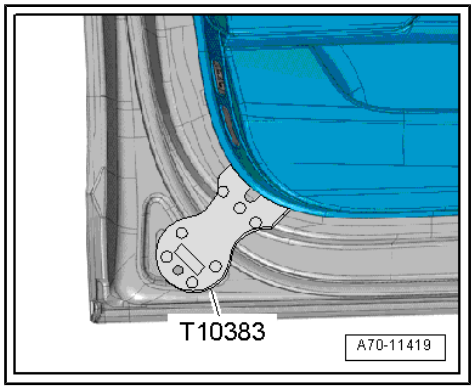
Note

A two-piece clip is fitted at the bottom centre of the door trim. This clip must be released before unfastening the six "normal" one-piece clips.

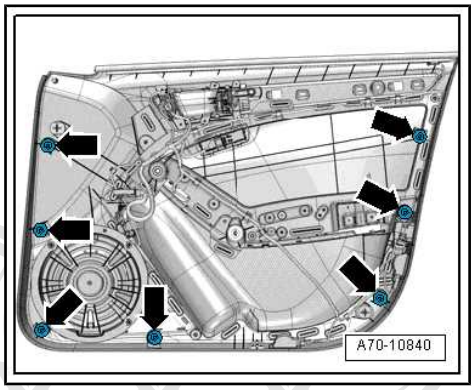
– Press firmly against embossed area of door trim (at bottom next to entry light) -arrow 1- with your thumb to release two-piece clip -arrow 2-.



– Starting in bottom rear corner, use wedge -T10383- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips.



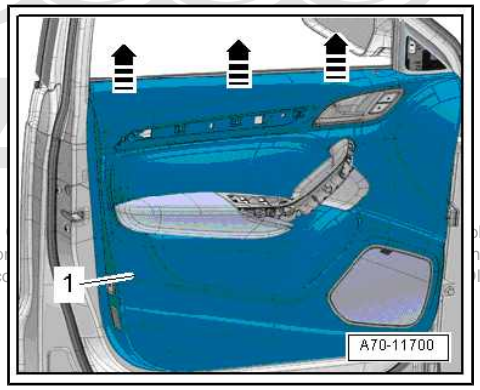
• Position of remaining retaining clips -arrows-



– Pull door trim -1- approx. 15 mm away from the door all around.

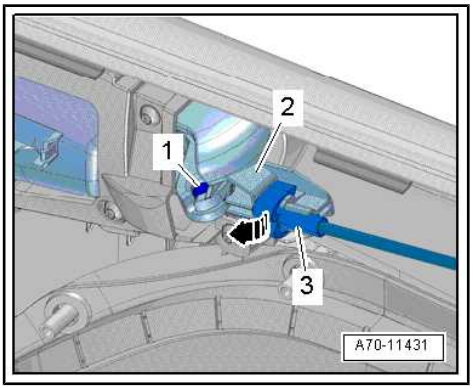
• Do not leave retaining clips in door.

– Disengage door trim from door at top of window slot -arrows- and detach.

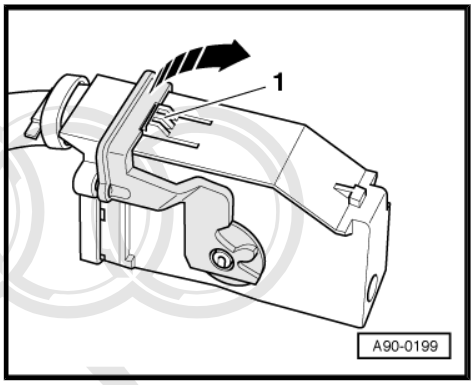


Protected by copyright. ... ble, is not permitted unless autho... ny liability with respect to the c... l AG.

– Carefully unclip Bowden cable -3- from interior door handle -2-.
– Swivel Bowden cable for interior door handle inwards -arrow-.
– Disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.



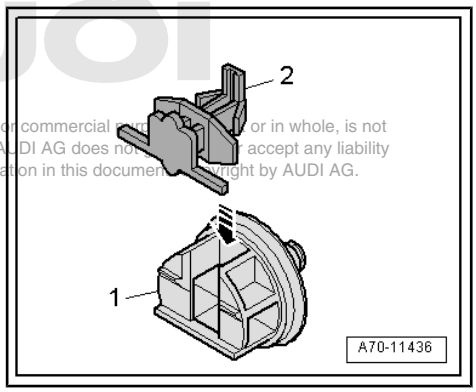
– To unplug electrical connector, press catch -1-, turn retaining bracket in direction of -arrow- and unplug connector.
– Detach door trim.



Installing

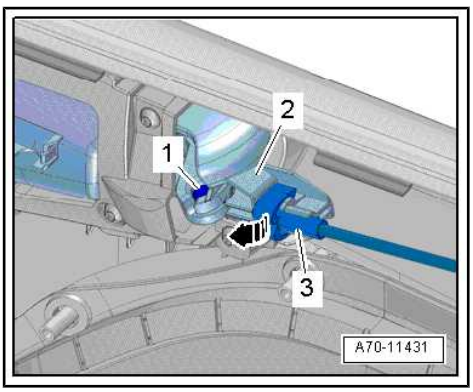
– Renew damaged two-piece clip; to do so, disengage bottom part -1- from door (working from back of door) and remove top part -2- from door trim.
– Assemble two-piece clip -arrow- and insert in door trim.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



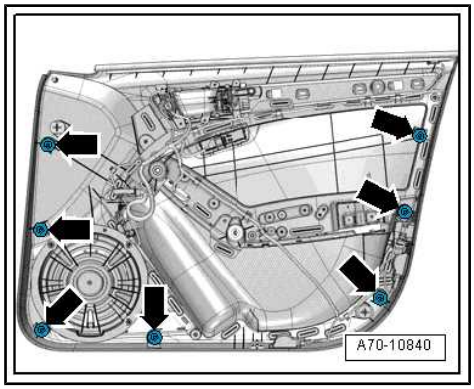
– Engage end of cable -1- in lever of interior door handle.
– Clip in Bowden cable -3- for interior door handle at interior door handle -2-.

• Bowden cable must engage audibly.



WARNING

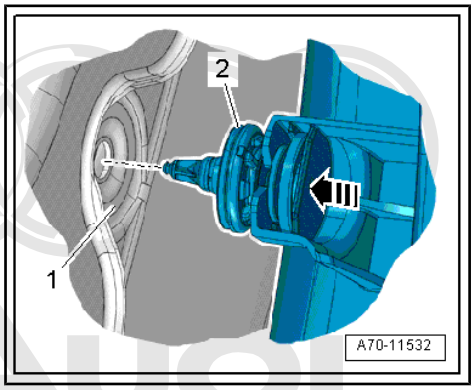
- *Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.*
- *The retaining clips -arrows- for the door trim provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips for door trim.*



– Plug in electrical connector at door control unit.

– Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.

– Carefully position clips -2- for door trim all around door -1- and press door trim onto door -arrows- until it engages audibly at anchorage points ⇒ page 170 .



Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 162

1.7 Removing and installing armrest (front)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorise... liability with respect to the corre... G.

Removing

– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ page 167 .

– Remove insulating mat.

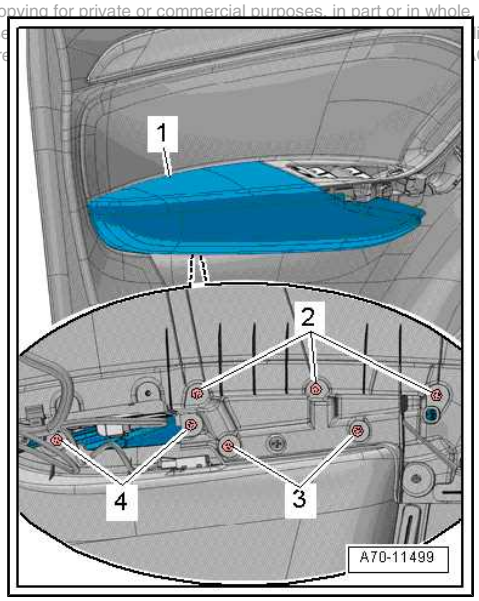
– Unscrew bolts -2 ... 4- at rear of door trim.

– Release armrest -1- and detach from door trim.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 162



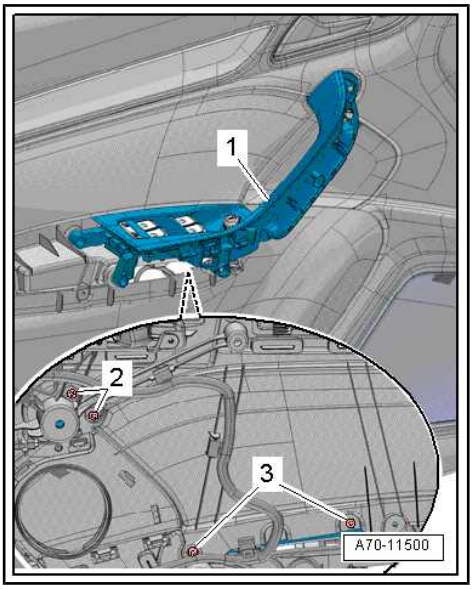
1.8 Removing and installing door puller (front)

⇒ “1.8.1 Removing and installing door puller (front)”, page 171

⇒ “1.8.2 Removing and installing grip moulding for door puller”, page 171

1.8.1 Removing and installing door puller (front)

Removing



– Remove armrest ⇒ page 170 .
– Unplug electrical connector for operating unit for window regulator.
– Driver side: Unplug electrical connector for mirror adjustment switch - E43- .
– Equipment version with background lighting: Unplug electrical connector for background lighting bulb -L164- / -L165- .
– Unscrew bolts -2- and -3- at rear of door trim.
– Release door puller -1- and detach from door trim.

Installing

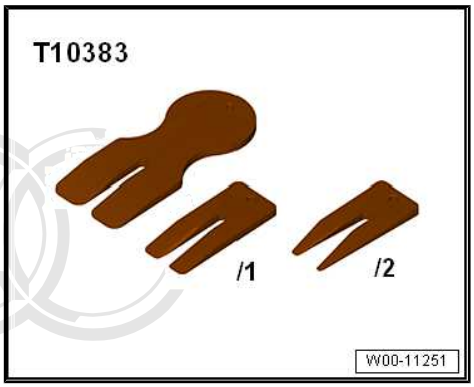
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 162

1.8.2 Removing and installing grip moulding for door puller

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



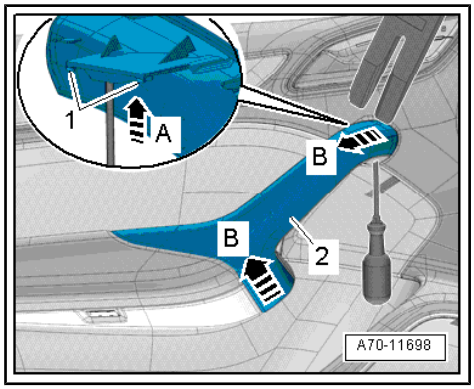
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Insert screwdriver through hole in door puller and use it to press lug of grip moulding upwards -arrow A-; this releases retaining lug -1-.

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully prise grip moulding -2- for door puller off door puller along gap -arrows B-.

– Disengage grip moulding for door puller at rear and detach.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 162

1.9 Removing and installing interior door handle

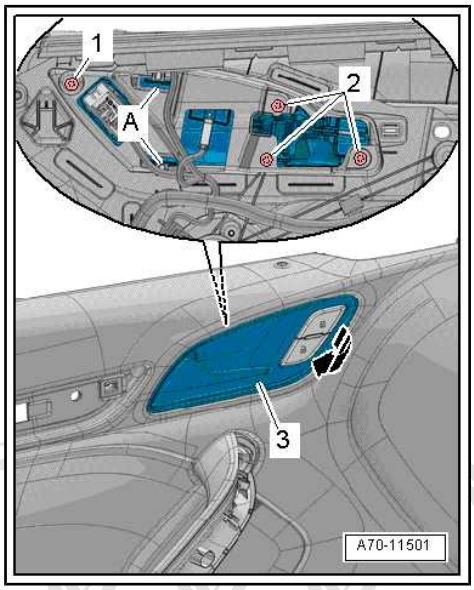
Removing

– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ page 167 .

– Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring clear.

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- at rear of door trim.

– Release fasteners -A- and detach interior door handle -3- from door trim.



Installing

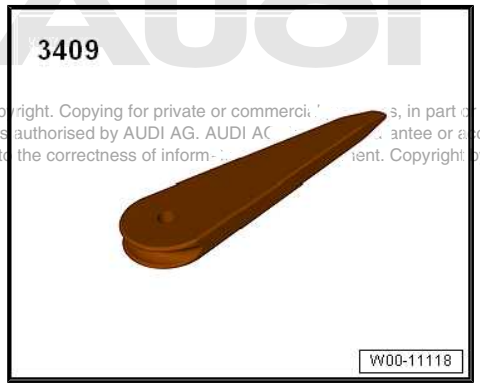
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 162

1.10 Removing and installing window frame trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

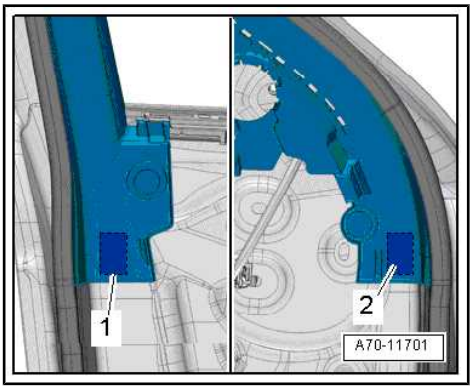
Removing

– Lower door window.

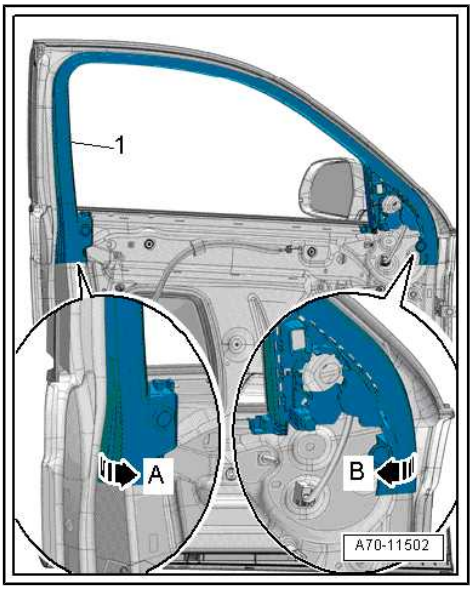
– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ page 167 .

– Remove treble loudspeaker trim ⇒ page 165 .

– Equipment version with lane change assist: Unclip button for lane change assist - E530- and move electrical wiring clear.
– Equipment version with treble loudspeaker: Remove treble loudspeaker and move wiring clear.
– Unfasten ends of trim from adhesive pads -1- and -2- on door frame using removal wedge - 3409- .

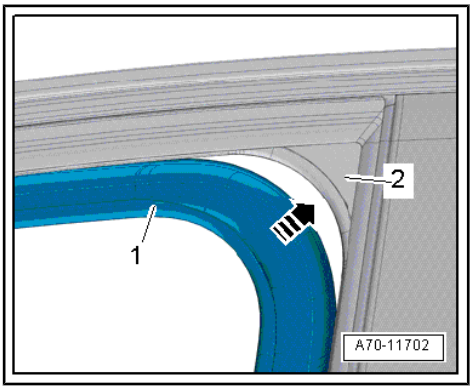


– Working from bottom front to top rear, carefully prise off trim -1- for window frame working along window guide -arrow B- with removal wedge - 3409- .
– Then prise off trim for window frame at bottom rear with removal wedge - 3409- , working carefully along length of window guide -arrow A-.
– Pull trim for window frame downwards off window frame and detach.



Installing

– Insert trim -1- for window frame in window guide -2- at top rear -arrow-.
– Install trim for window frame over entire length of window guide.

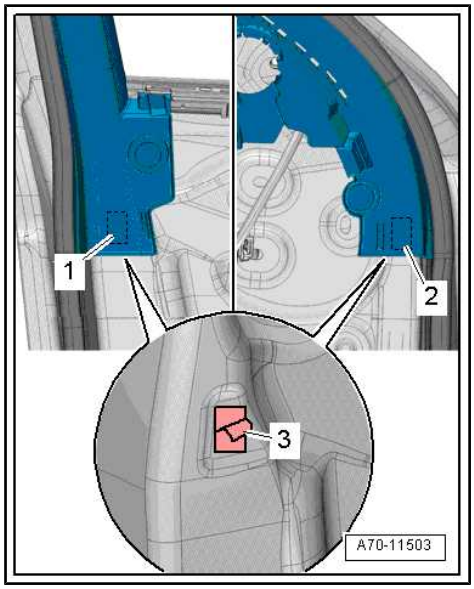


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Apply adhesive pads -1- and -2- to door frame and press on.
– Peel protective film -3- off adhesive pads.
– Press trim firmly onto door frame in area of adhesive pads.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 162



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Door trim (rear)

⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 175

⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing interior door handle", page 177

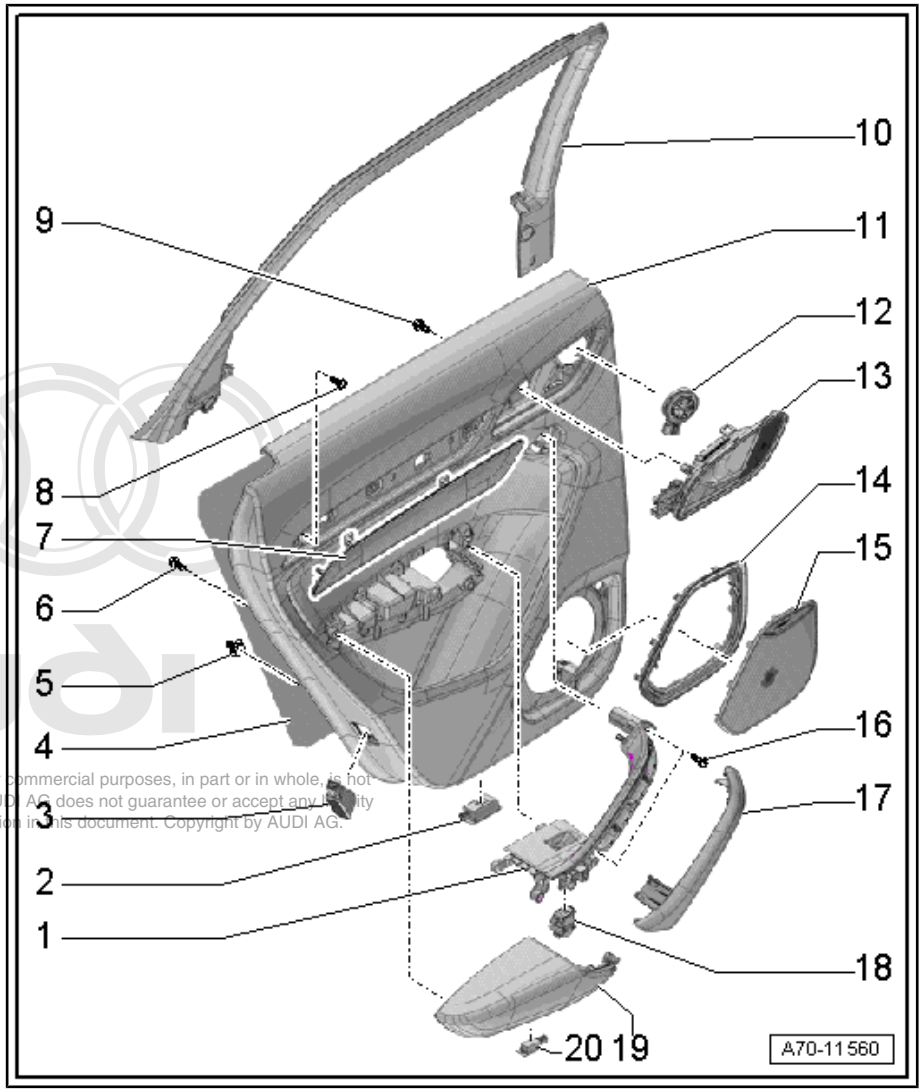
⇒ "2.3 Removing and installing door trim (rear)", page 177

⇒ "2.4 Removing and installing armrest (rear)", page 180

⇒ "2.5 Removing and installing door puller (rear)", page 180

⇒ "2.6 Removing and installing trim for window frame", page 180

2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)



1 - Door puller

- ❑ With switch mounting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 180

2 - Rear left entry light - W33-

- ❑ Right side: rear right entry light - W34-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing entry light (rear) -W33- / -W34-

3 - Reflector

- ❑ Left side (equipment version): rear left door warning lamp - W37-
- ❑ Right side (equipment version): rear right door warning lamp - W38-
- ❑ Removing and installing door warning lamp ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 - Insulating mat

5 - Clip

- ❑ 6x, one-piece
- ❑ 1x, two-piece
- ❑ Renew two-piece clip if damaged

6 - Bolt

- ❑ For door puller/armrest
- ❑ 13x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

7 - Trim panel

- ❑ The removal and installation procedures for the rear door are similar to those described for the front door; removing and installing ⇒ page 166
- ❑ Hook into door trim and press on until it engages audibly

8 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

9 - Bolt

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

10 - Trim

- ❑ For window frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 180

11 - Door trim (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 177

12 - Treble loudspeaker

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Removing and installing rear treble loudspeakers -R14- / -R16-

13 - Interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 177

14 - Frame

- ❑ For loudspeaker trim
- ❑ Equipment version: loudspeaker background lighting bulb 1 - L211- / loudspeaker background lighting bulb 2 - L212-

15 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ For bass loudspeaker
- ❑ The removal and installation procedures for the rear door are similar to those described for the front door; removing and installing ⇒ page 166
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

16 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

17 - Grip moulding

- ❑ For door puller
- ❑ The removal and installation procedures for the rear door are similar to those described for the front door; removing and installing ⇒ page 171

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

18 - Rear left window regulator switch, in door - E52-

- ❑ Right-side: rear right window regulator switch, in door - E54-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in rear doors

19 - Armrest

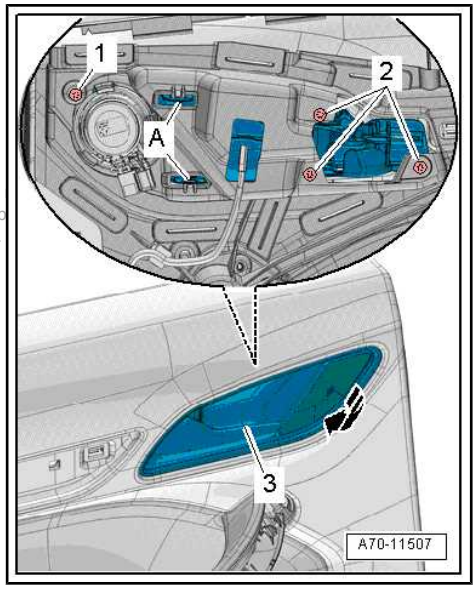
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 180

20 - Rear left door storage compartment illumination bulb - L170-

- ❑ Right side: rear right door storage compartment illumination bulb - L171-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear door storage compartment illumination bulb -L170- / -L171-

2.2 Removing and installing interior door handle

Removing



– Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ page 177 .
– Remove insulating mat.
– Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring clear.
– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- at rear of door trim.
– Release fasteners -A- and detach interior door handle -3- from door trim.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

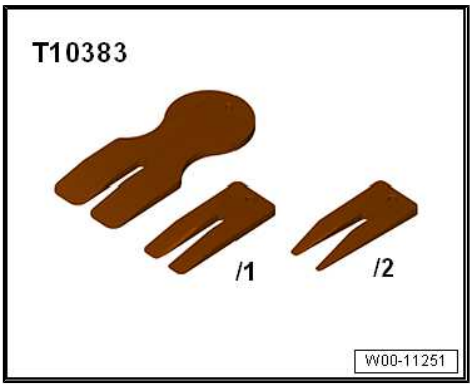
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 175

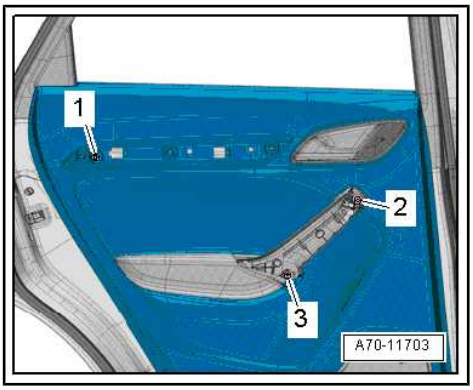
2.3 Removing and installing door trim (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

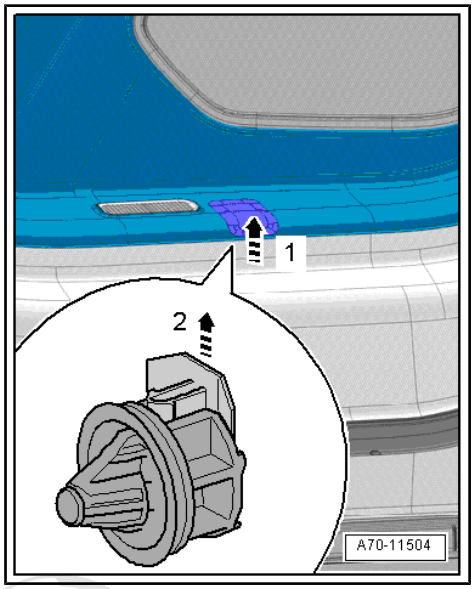


– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.
– Remove trim panel ⇒ page 166 .
– Remove grip moulding for door puller ⇒ page 171 .
– Remove bolts -1 ... 3-.

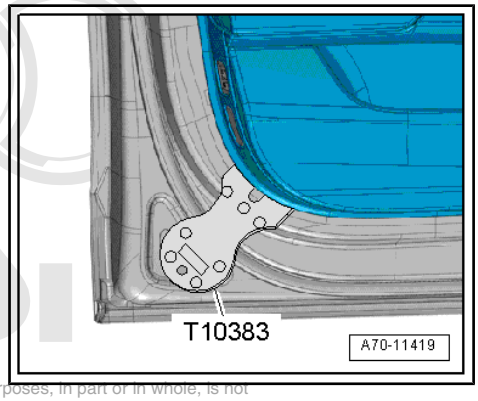
Note

A two-piece clip is fitted at the bottom centre of the door trim. This clip must be released before unfastening the six "normal" one-piece clips.

– Press firmly against embossed area of door trim (at bottom next to entry light) -arrow 1- with your thumb to release two-piece clip -arrow 2-.

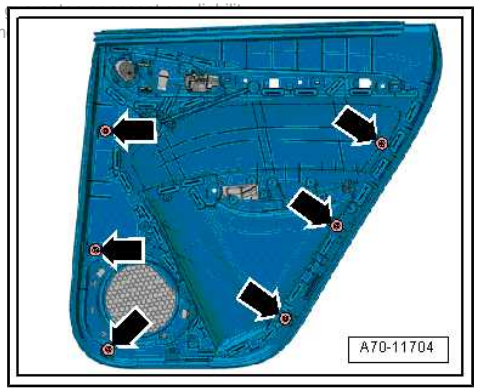


– Starting in bottom rear corner, use wedge -T10383- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

• Position of remaining retaining clips -arrows-



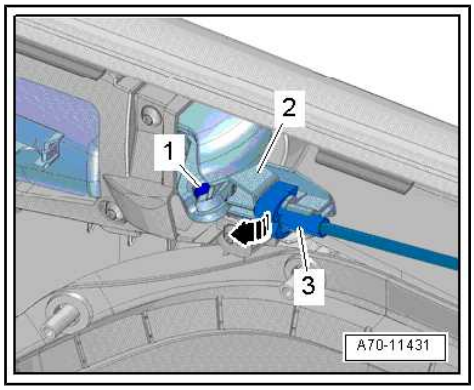
– Disengage door trim from door at top of window slot. To do so, pull door trim upwards.

– Equipment version with treble loudspeaker: Unplug electrical connector for treble loudspeaker.

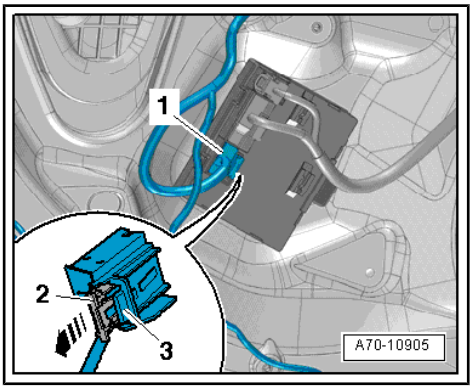
– Carefully unclip Bowden cable -3- from interior door handle -2-.

– Swivel Bowden cable for interior door handle in direction of -arrow-.

– Disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.

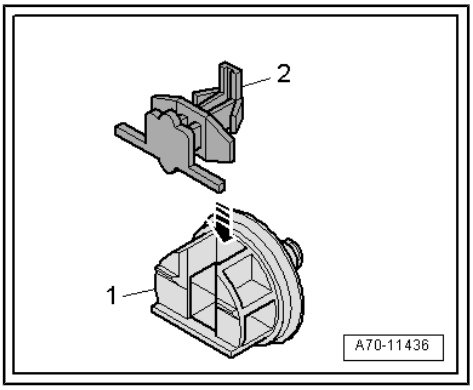


– Unplug electrical connector -1- at door control unit. To do so, pull out fastener -2- -arrow- and press down release mechanism -3-.
– Detach door trim.

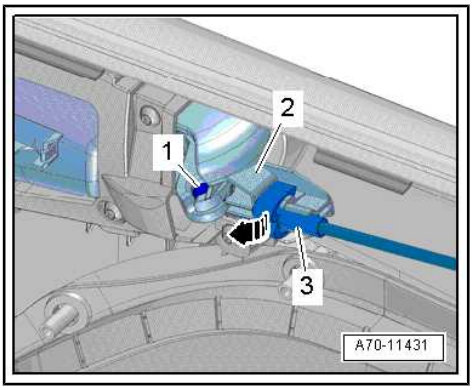


Installing

– Renew damaged two-piece clip; to do so, disengage bottom part -1- from door (working from back of door) and remove top part -2- from door trim.
– Assemble two-piece clip -arrow- and insert in door trim.



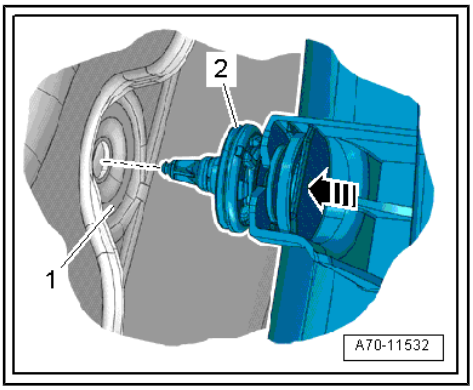
– Engage end of cable -1- in lever of interior door handle.
– Clip in Bowden cable -3- for interior door handle at interior door handle -2-.
– Plug in electrical connector at door control unit.



– Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.
– Carefully position clips -2- for door trim all around door -1- and press door trim onto door -arrows- until it engages audibly at anchorage points ⇒ page 178 .

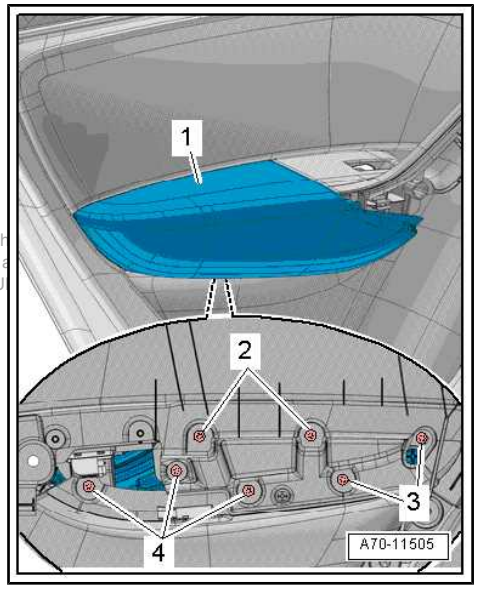
Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 175



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Removing and installing armrest (rear)



Removing

– Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ page 177 .
– Remove insulating mat.
– Unscrew bolts -2 ... 4- at rear of door trim.
– Release armrest -1- and detach from door trim.

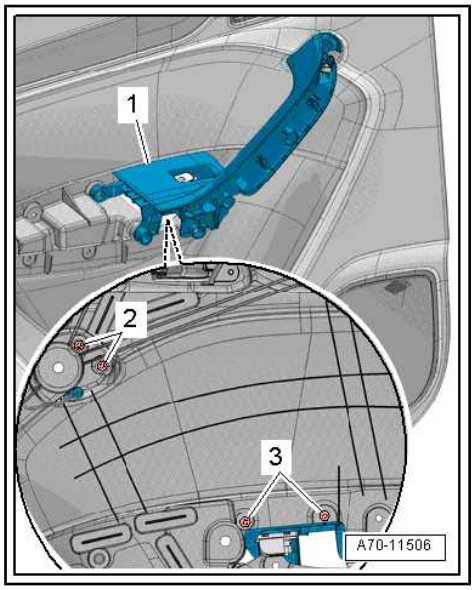
Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in wh
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 175

2.5 Removing and installing door puller (rear)



Removing

– Remove armrest ⇒ page 180 .
– Unplug electrical connectors.
– Equipment version with background lighting: Unplug electrical connector for background lighting bulb -L166- / -L167- .
– Unscrew bolts -2- and -3- at rear of door trim.
– Release door puller -1- and detach from door trim.

Installing

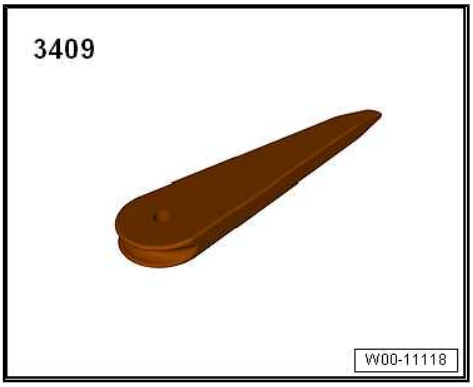
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 175

2.6 Removing and installing trim for window frame

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

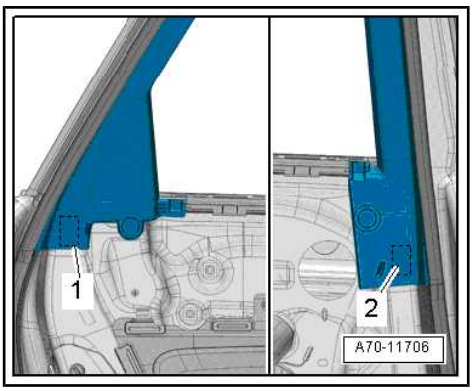


Removing

– Lower door window.

– Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ page 177 .

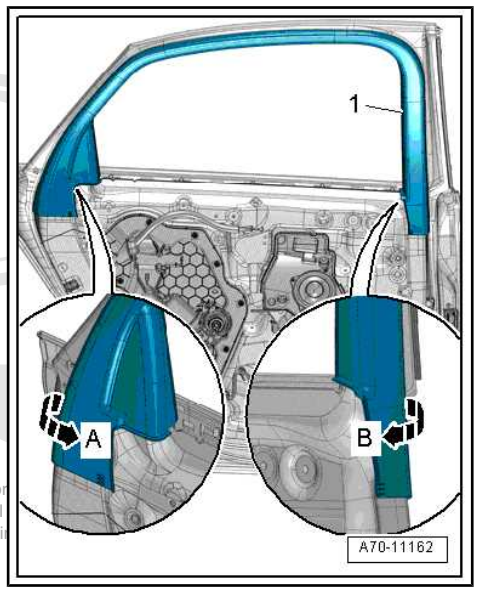
– Unfasten ends of trim from adhesive pads -1- and -2- on door frame using removal wedge - 3409- .



– Working from bottom rear to top front, carefully prise off trim -1- for window frame working along window guide -arrow A- with removal wedge - 3409- .

– Then prise off trim for window frame at bottom front with removal wedge - 3409- , working carefully along length of window guide -arrow B-.

– Pull trim for window frame downwards off window frame and detach.

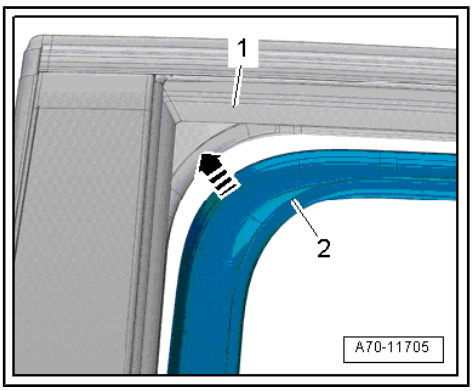


Protected by copyright. Copying for pr
permitted unless authorised by AUDI
with respect to the correctness of i

Installing

– Starting at top of B-pillar, insert trim -2- for window frame in window guide -1- -arrow-.

– Install trim for window frame over entire length of window guide.

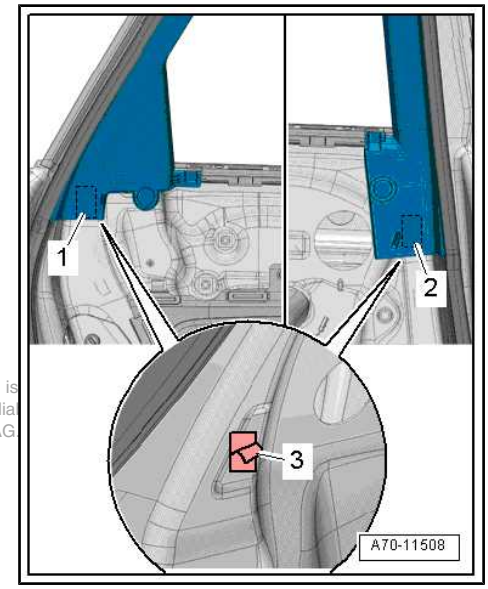


– Apply adhesive pads -1- and -2- to door frame and press on.
– Peel protective film -3- off adhesive pads.
– Press trim firmly onto door frame in area of adhesive pads.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 175

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any lia
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG



3 Dash panel

⇒ “3.1 Overview of fitting locations - dash panel”, page 183

⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 184

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)”, page 186

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel”, page 187

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim”, page 188

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing dash panel”, page 190

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing dash panel vent”, page 194

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)”, page 195

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing defroster vent (side)”, page 196

3.1 Overview of fitting locations - dash panel

1 - Centre console

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 34

2 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 18

3 - Trim

- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 19

4 - Dash panel

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 184

5 - Central tube

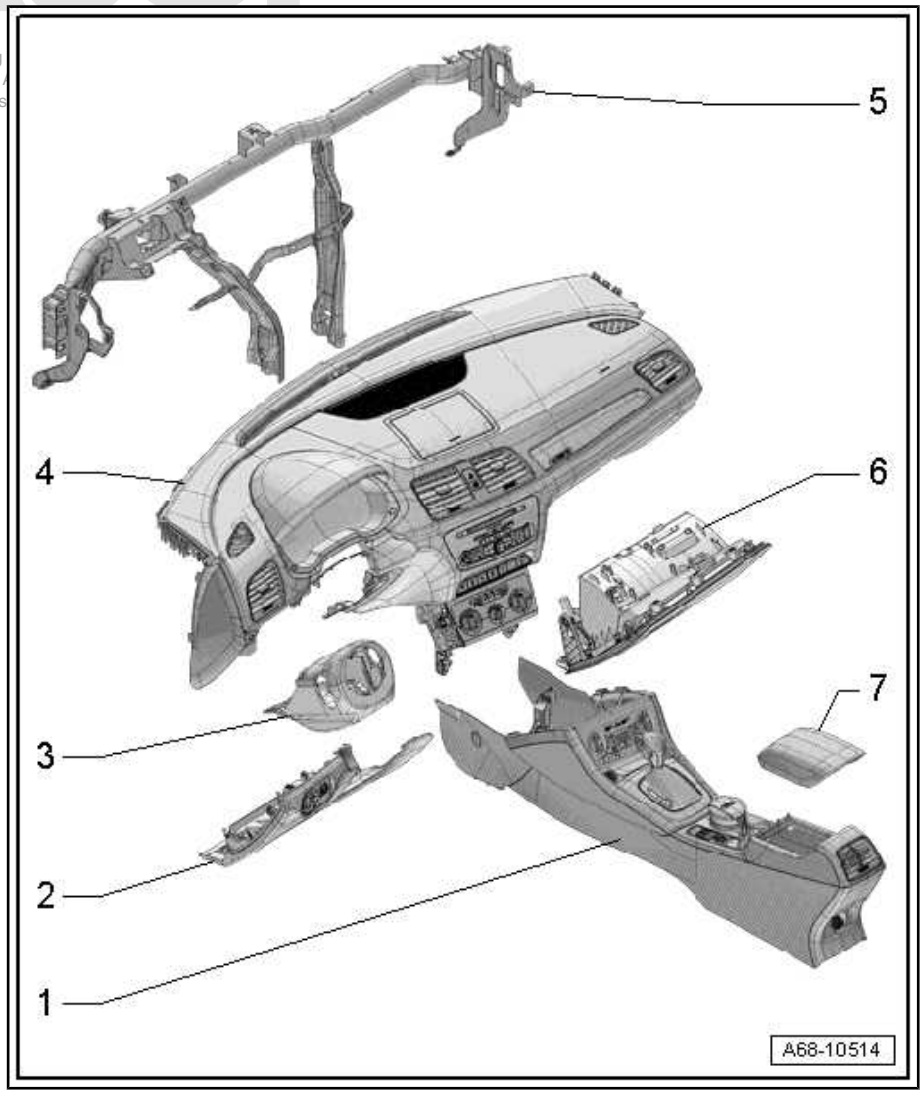
- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 197

6 - Glove box

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 20

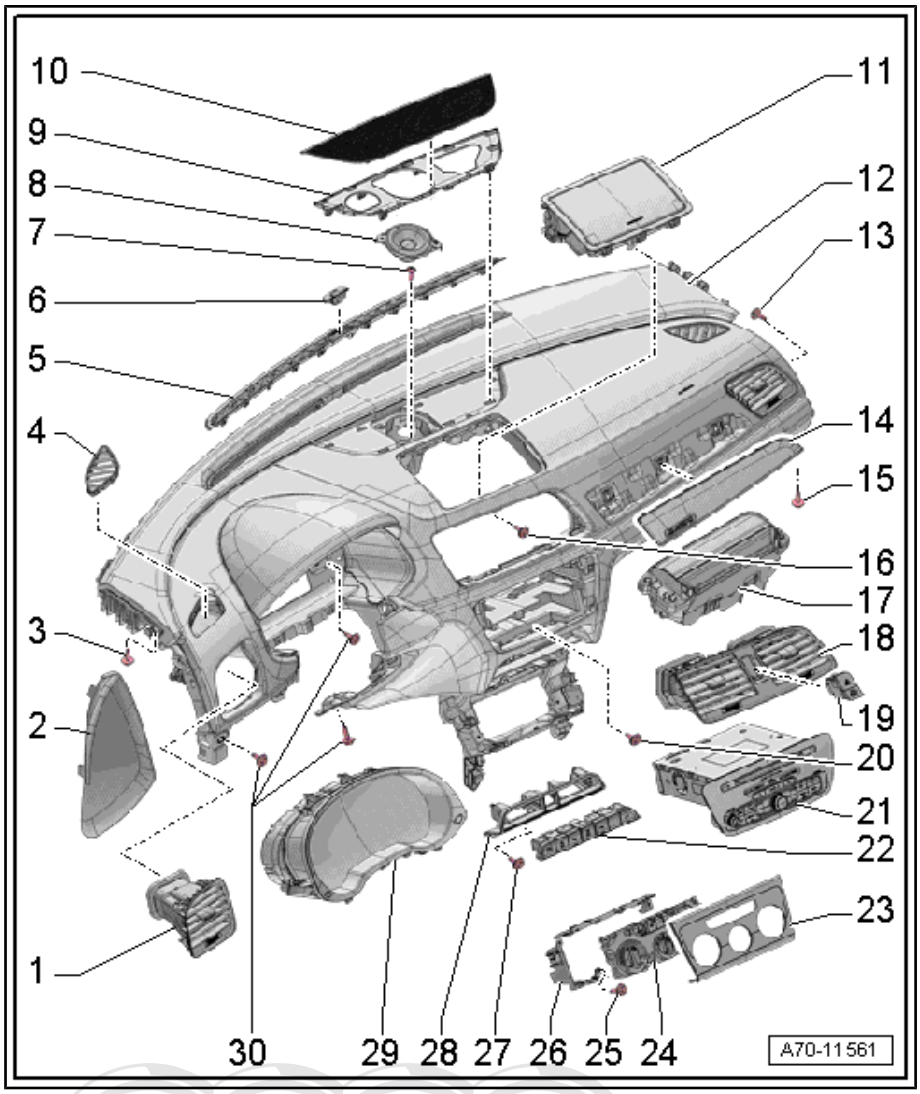
7 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 52



...yright. Copying ... unless authorised by ... with respect to the correctnes...

3.2 Exploded view - dash panel



1 - Side dash panel vent

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 194
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ When inserting in opening, make sure that air duct engages properly
- ❑ Press into installation opening as far as stop

2 - End trim

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 186
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

4 - Side defroster vent

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 196
- ❑ Press on until it engages

5 - Defroster vent (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 195
- ❑ Press on until it engages

6 - Sunlight penetration photosensor - G107-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor - G107-

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

8 - Centre loudspeaker - R208-

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

9 - Mounting

- ❑ For loudspeaker trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 189
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Press on until it engages

10 - Loudspeaker trim (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 188
- ❑ First insert in front of dash panel and press on until it engages audibly

11 - Display unit -J685- /storage compartment

- ❑ Depending on equipment version

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Removing and installing display unit -J685- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system
- ❑ Removing and installing storage compartment ⇒ page 190
- ❑ Insert at front in dash panel and press on until it engages audibly

12 - Dash panel

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 191

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

14 - Trim (passenger side)

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Clip into dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 187
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

17 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 116
- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 117

18 - Dash panel vent (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 194
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ When inserting in opening, make sure that air duct engages properly
- ❑ Press into installation opening as far as stop

19 - Switch unit

- ❑ With -K145- , hazard warning lights button - E229-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

20 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

21 - Radio - R- /navigation system

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Navigation system; Overview of fitting locations - navigation system

22 - Switch panel (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

23 - Trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Only for air conditioning system control unit - J301-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit
- ❑ Clip in at air conditioning system control unit - J301-

24 - Air conditioning system control unit - J301- / Climatronic control unit - J255-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit

25 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

26 - Retaining frame

- ❑ Only for air conditioning system control unit - J301-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.6.3 Removing and installing dash panel”, page 191

27 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

28 - Mounting

- ❑ For switch panel (bottom)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 191

29 - Dash panel insert

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert

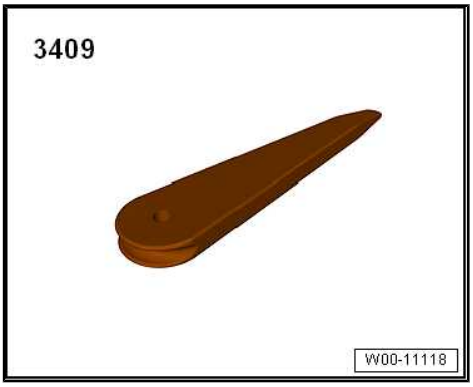
30 - Bolts

- ❑ 3 Nm

3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

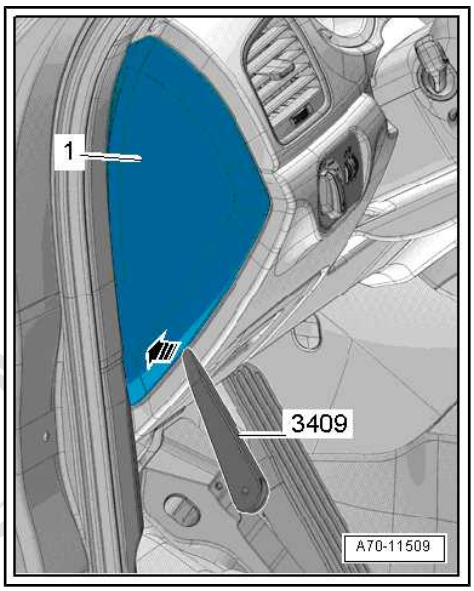
– Prise off dash panel cover (side) -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow-.

– Pull trim towards rear out of trim cover at A-pillar and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 184



3.4 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel

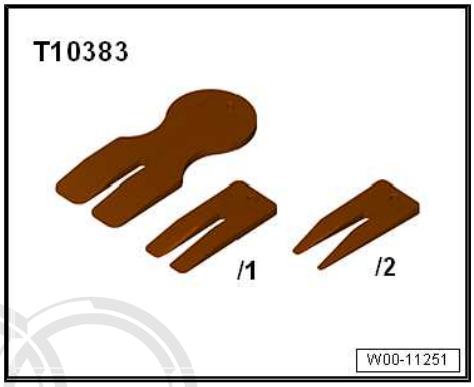
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

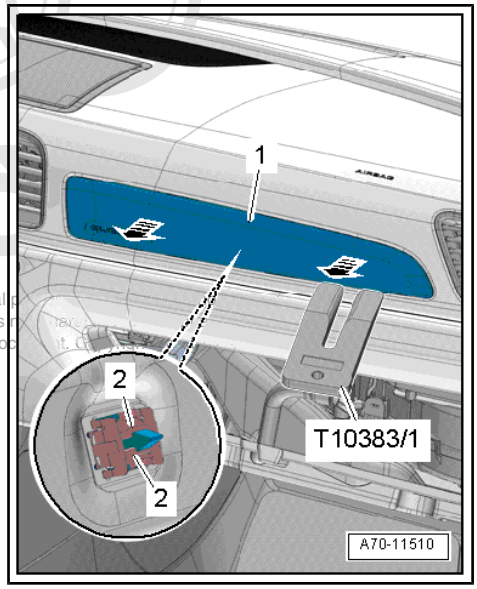
– Remove glove box ⇒ page 25 .
– Carefully unclip dash panel trim -1- using wedge -T10383/1- -arrows-.
– To do so, release catches -2- of clips using removal wedge -3409- .
– Take out dash panel trim.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this do

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 184



3.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

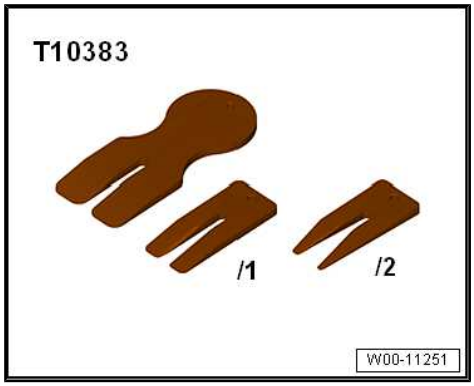
⇒ "3.5.1 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim", page 188

⇒ "3.5.2 Removing and installing mounting for loudspeaker trim", page 189

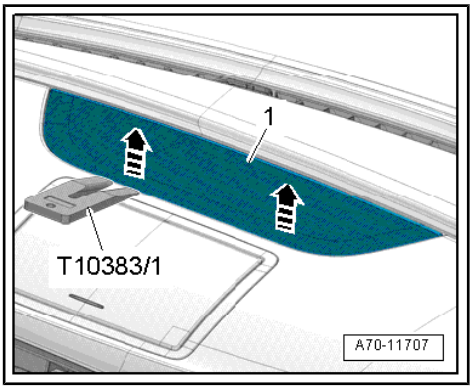
3.5.1 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing



Note

Proceed very carefully when removing and installing as the loudspeaker trim can be damaged quite easily.

– Using wedge -T10383/1- carefully disengage loudspeaker trim -1- at retaining pins at rear (as seen in direction of travel) -arrows-.
– Fold loudspeaker trim upwards and pull out towards rear.

Installing

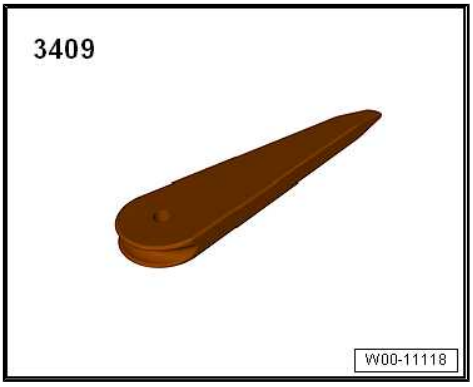
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 184

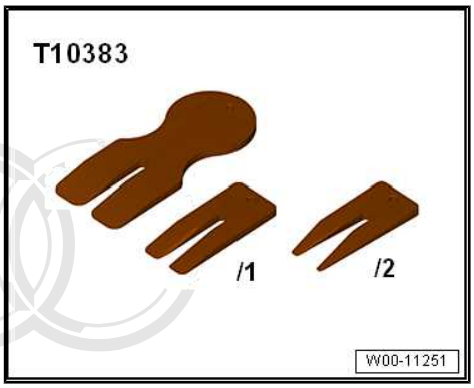
3.5.2 Removing and installing mounting for loudspeaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Wedges - T10383-

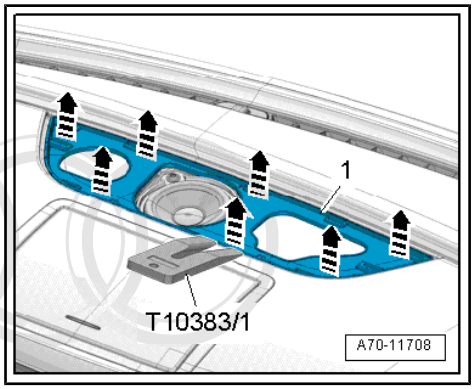


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove loudspeaker trim in dash panel ⇒ page 188 .

– Carefully unclip mounting -1- for loudspeaker trim in dash panel using wedge -T10383/1- and removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and detach.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 184

3.6 Removing and installing dash panel

⇒ "3.6.1 Removing and installing storage compartment in dash panel", page 190

⇒ "3.6.2 Removing and installing mounting for switch panel (bottom)", page 191

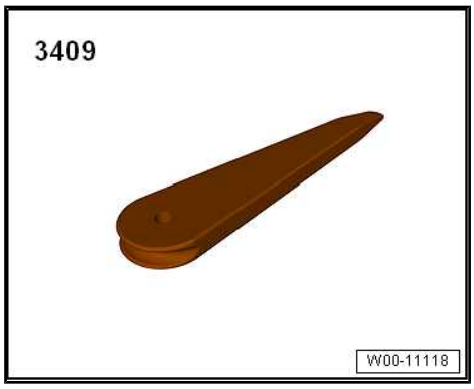
⇒ "3.6.3 Removing and installing dash panel", page 191

Audi
Any unauthorised use of these data for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.6.1 Removing and installing storage compartment in dash panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



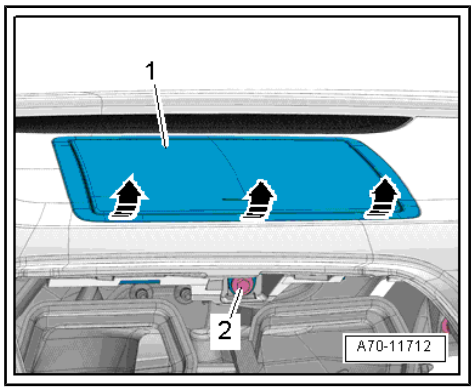
Removing

– Remove dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ page 194 .

– Remove bolt -2-.

– Unclip storage compartment -1- from dash panel -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Swivel up storage compartment and pull it out of dash panel towards rear.

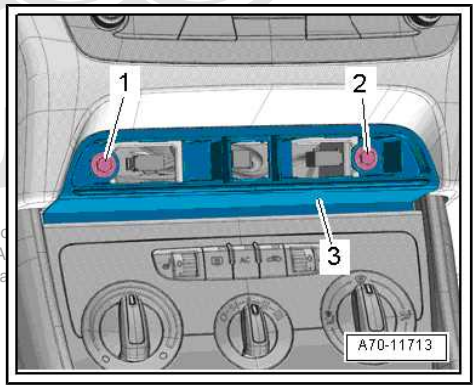


Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 184

3.6.2 Removing and installing mounting for switch panel (bottom)



Removing

– Remove switch panel (bottom) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel .

– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.

– Detach mounting -3- for switch panel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of informa

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 184

3.6.3 Removing and installing dash panel

Removing

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Move front seats as far towards rear as possible and tilt backrests to 45°.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components* ⇒ page 3 *.*
- *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 214 .

– Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ page 111 .

– Remove steering wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .

– Remove steering column switch module ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column switch module .

– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 186 .

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 21 .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 25 .

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 45 .

– Remove switch panel (bottom) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel .

– Remove radio - R- /navigation system ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Navigation system; Overview of fitting locations - navigation system .

– Remove dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ page 194 .

- Equipment version with display unit -J685- : Remove display unit -J685- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .
- Remove loudspeaker trim in dash panel ⇒ page 188 .
- Equipment version with loudspeaker: Remove centre loudspeaker - R208- from dash panel ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
- Equipment version with Climatronic: Remove sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- .
- Equipment version with Climatronic: Remove side dash panel vent ⇒ page 194 .

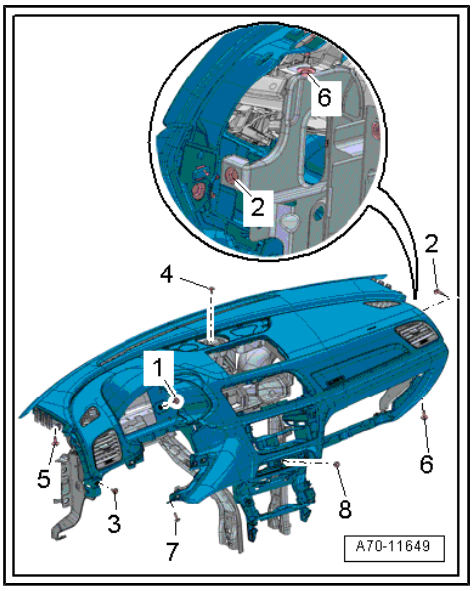
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Audi

This is by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Unplug electrical connector for airbag (front passenger side) ⇒ page 117 .
- Remove dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert .
- Remove bolts for dash panel at central tube for dash panel in the sequence -8 ... 1-.



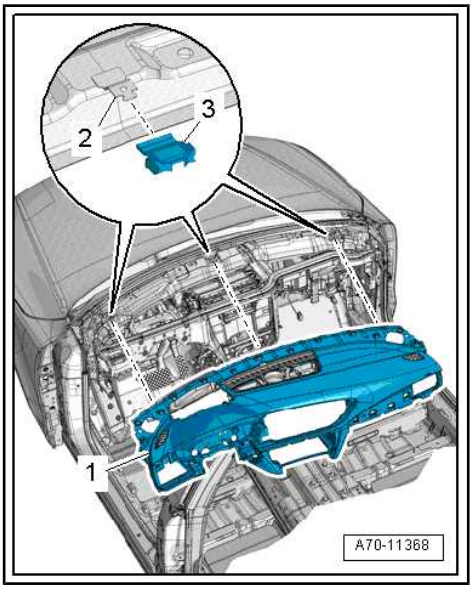
Note

A second mechanic is required for detaching the dash panel.

- Disengage dash panel (bottom) at bracket (front) for centre console ⇒ page 51 .
- Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring harnesses at dash panel clear.
- Carefully detach dash panel from central tube for dash panel towards rear.
- Take dash panel out of passenger compartment and set it down on a soft surface.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



WARNING

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- Place dash panel in position and route electrical connectors for sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- and loudspeakers through openings in dash panel.
- Check whether a rubber buffer -3- has been fitted on each of the dash panel mountings -2- at the lower windscreen frame.
- When inserting dash panel -1-, make sure mountings for dash panel engage in box-shaped sections on underside of dash panel.

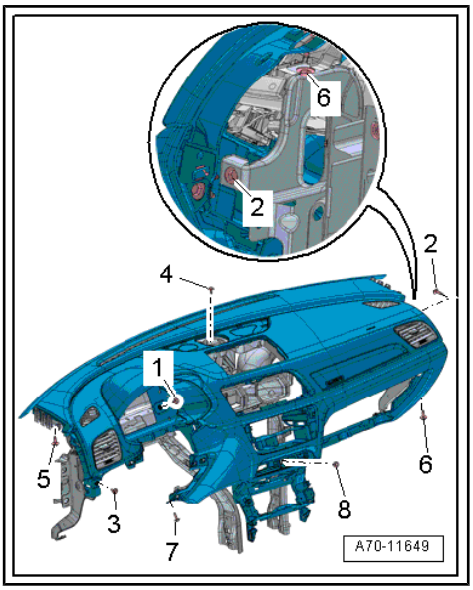
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.



- Tighten bolts for dash panel at central tube for dash panel in the sequence -1 ... 8-.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 184

3.7 Removing and installing dash panel vent

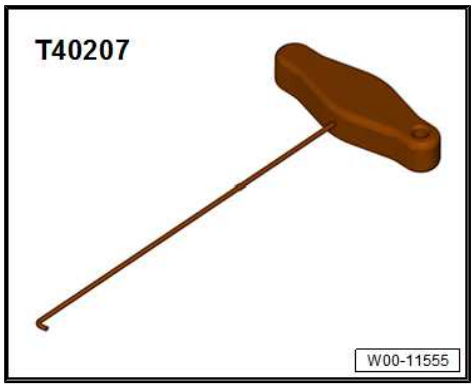
⇒ “3.7.1 Removing and installing dash panel vent (side)”, page 194

⇒ “3.7.2 Removing and installing dash panel vent (centre)”, page 194

3.7.1 Removing and installing dash panel vent (side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hook - T40207-

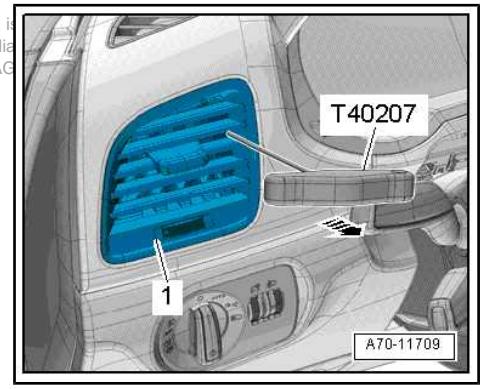


Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any lia
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Note

A hole is provided on the inside of the vent for engaging the hook -T40207- .



– Carefully insert hook - T40207- between louvres and engage at side of vent.
– Carefully pull vent -1- out of opening -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector and detach dash panel vent.

Installing

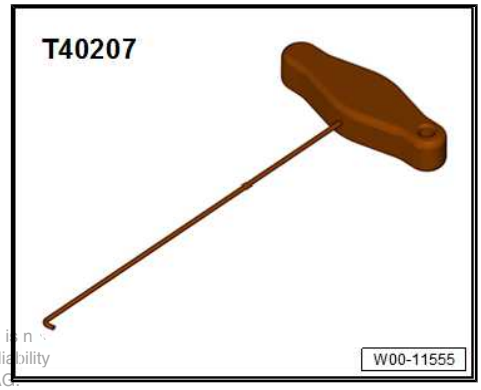
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 184

3.7.2 Removing and installing dash panel vent (centre)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hook - T40207-

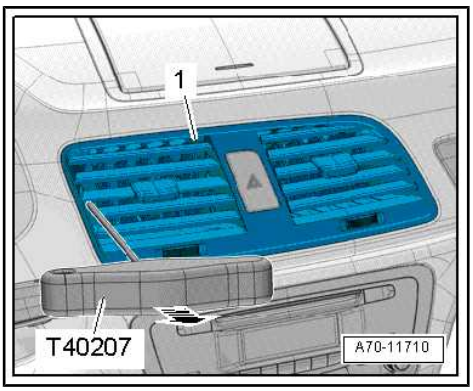


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is n
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

Note

A hole is provided on both sides of the vent for engaging the hook -T40207- .



– Carefully insert hook - T40207- between louvres and engage at side of vent.
– Working alternately on each side, carefully pull vent -1- out of opening -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connectors and detach dash panel vent.

Installing

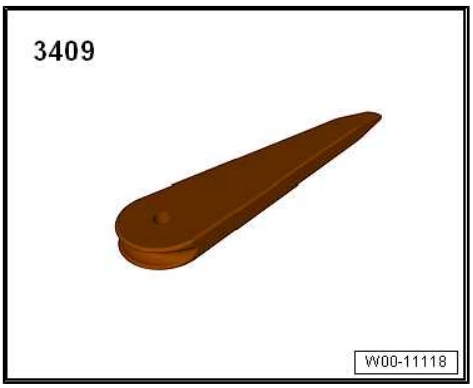
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 184

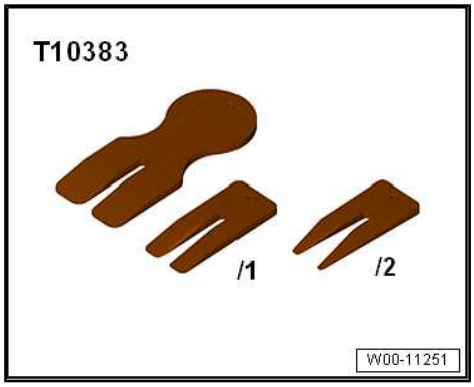
3.8 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



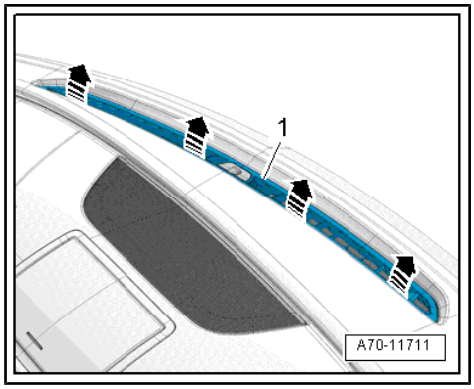
♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

– Using wedge -T10383/1- and removal wedge - 3409- , prise defroster vent -1- off dash panel -arrows- and pull out towards rear.

– Detach defroster vent and pull it out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connector for sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- .



Installing

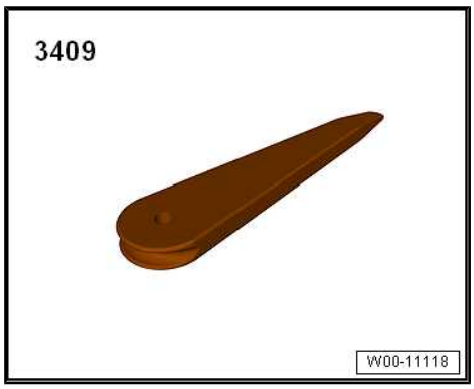
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 184

3.9 Removing and installing defroster vent (side)

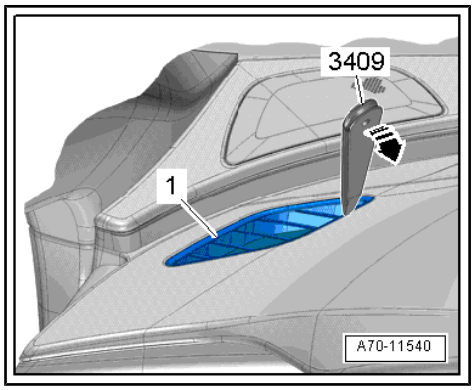
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Using removal wedge - 3409-, carefully prise defroster vent -1- upwards off dash panel -arrow- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

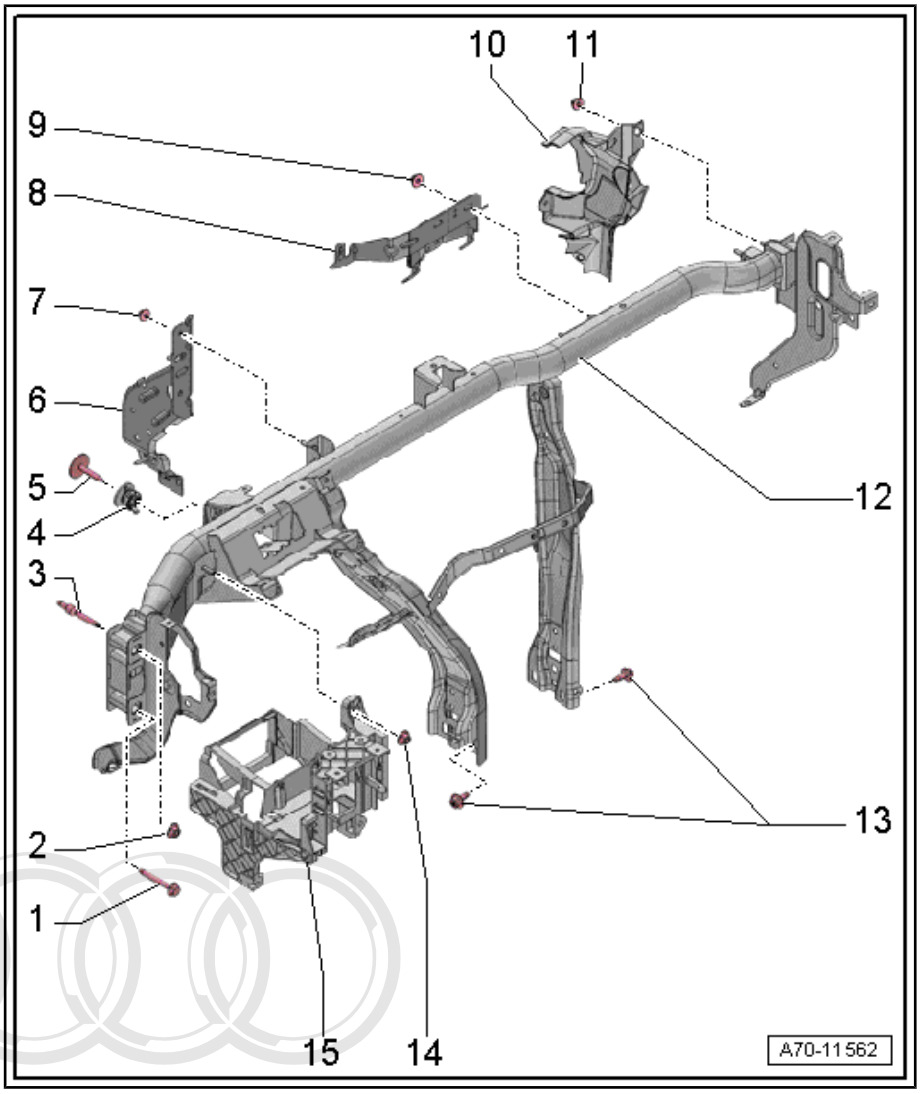
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 184

4 Central tube for dash panel

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - central tube for dash panel”, page 197

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel”, page 198

4.1 Exploded view - central tube for dash panel



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 20 Nm

2 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ 23 Nm

3 - Threaded pin
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

4 - Compensation element
- ❑ Clip in at central tube
- ❑ Check freedom of movement of adjuster nut of compensation element.
- ❑ Completely screw down adjuster nut, but do not tighten

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 20 Nm

6 - Bracket
- ❑ For air conditioning unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Front heater and air conditioning unit; Exploded view - heater/air conditioning unit and air intake box add-on components

7 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

8 - Bracket
- ❑ For air conditioning unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Front heater and air conditioning unit; Exploded view - heater/air conditioning unit and air intake box add-on components

9 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document.

10 - Cable guide

11 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

12 - Central tube

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 198

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 23 Nm

14 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

15 - Mounting

- ❑ For control units and relay and fuse holder

4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel

Removing

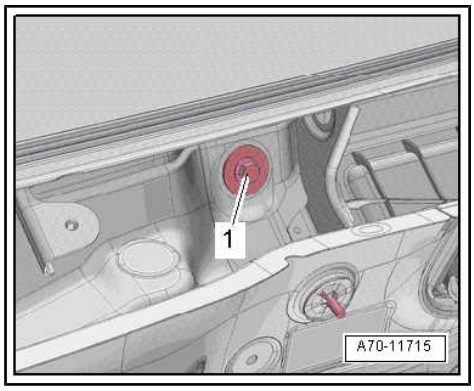
– Remove dash panel ⇒ page 191 .

– Remove wiper motor ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing wiper motor -V- .

– Remove bolt -1- from plenum chamber partition panel.

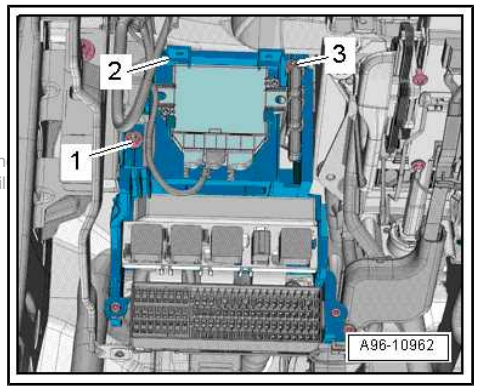
– Remove air duct for dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

– Remove air duct for windscreen and defroster vent ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .



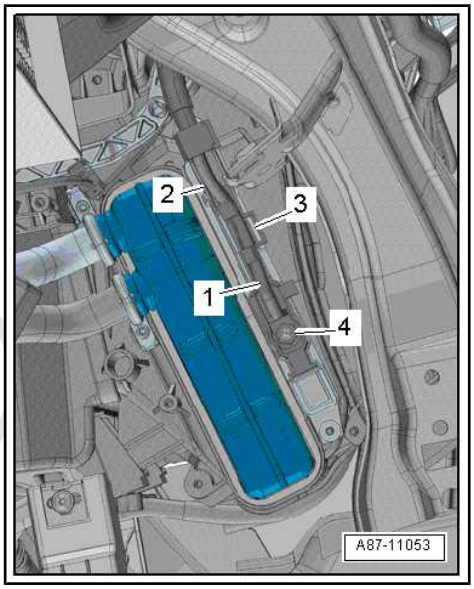
– Remove nuts -1- and -3-.

– Disengage mounting -2- for control units and relay and fuse holder from central tube for dash panel and move clear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is n
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liabil
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew nut -4- and detach earth wire -1-.
– Release retaining tab -3- and unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Unclip wires at central tube for dash panel and move clear.
– Unbolt steering column from central tube for dash panel and set it down on floor of vehicle ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .

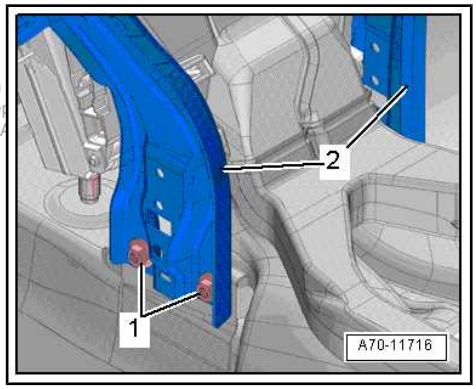


Caution

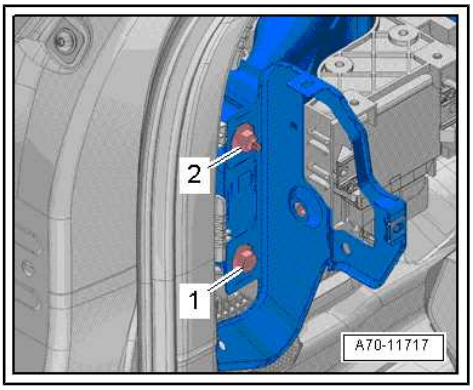
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep

Mark the vertical and side positions at the central tube for dash panel for re-installation.

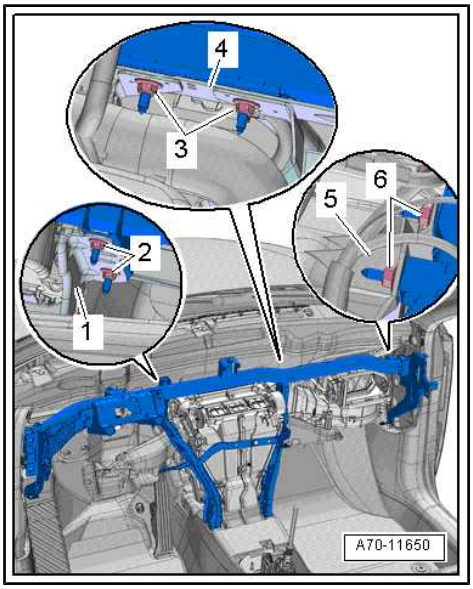
– Remove bolts -1- (left and right) for support -2- for dash panel central tube.



– Remove bolt -1- for central tube dash panel.
– Remove nut -2- for central tube for dash panel at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).



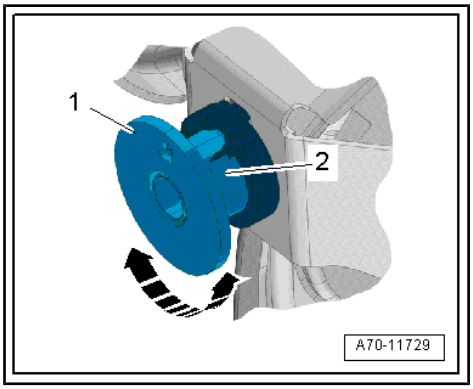
– Remove nuts -2-, -3- and -6- from brackets (front) for central tube for dash panel.
– Unplug electrical connectors, unclip wires at central tube for dash panel and move clear.



Note

A second mechanic is required to detach central tube for dash panel.

– Carefully swivel top of central tube for dash panel to rear.
– Pull central tube for dash panel off threaded pin at A-pillar and at the same time disengage at brackets -1-, -4- and -5-.
– Take central tube for dash panel out of passenger compartment.



Installing

– Check freedom of movement of adjuster nut -1- of compensation element -2- -arrows-.
– Completely screw down adjuster nut, but do not tighten.
– Carefully insert central tube for dash panel in body.
– Engage central tube for dash panel at threaded pin on A-pillar and at brackets.
– Align central tube for dash panel with A-pillar in accordance with marks for central tube (made during removal).
– Tighten nuts and bolts for central tube for dash panel at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

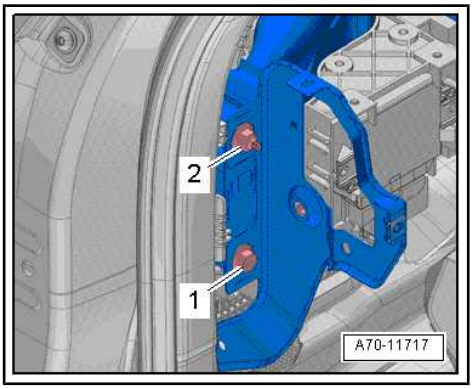
Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

– Install steering column ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .

Checking installation position of central tube for dash panel

– Insert dash panel to try if it fits correctly.
– Bolt dash panel (left and right) to central tube for dash panel.
– Close doors.
– Check whether gap between dash panel and door is the same on left and right.
– Check whether height of dash panel coincides with recesses in door trim.
– If setting is incorrect, note down the lateral and/or vertical deviation.
– Unscrew bolts on central tube for dash panel.
– Adjust central tube for dash panel in accordance with notes on deviations.

– Tighten bolt -1- and nut -2- for central tube for dash panel at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - central tube for dash panel”, page 197

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ “5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels”, page 202

⇒ “5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim”, page 204

⇒ “5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim”, page 206

⇒ “5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim”, page 207

⇒ “5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim”, page 208

⇒ “5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim”, page 209

⇒ “5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 210

⇒ “5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 211

⇒ “5.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim”, page 211

⇒ “5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 214

⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim”, page 215

⇒ “5.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim”, page 217

⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing D-pillar trim”, page 219

⇒ “5.14 Removing and installing foot rest”, page 220

⇒ “5.15 Removing and installing floor covering”, page 221

⇒ “5.16 Removing and installing rear shelf”, page 222

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels

1 - Cover

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 208

2 - Sill panel trim (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 205

3 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 207

4 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 207

5 - Sill panel trim (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 204

6 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 206

7 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 204

8 - Foot rest/floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 210

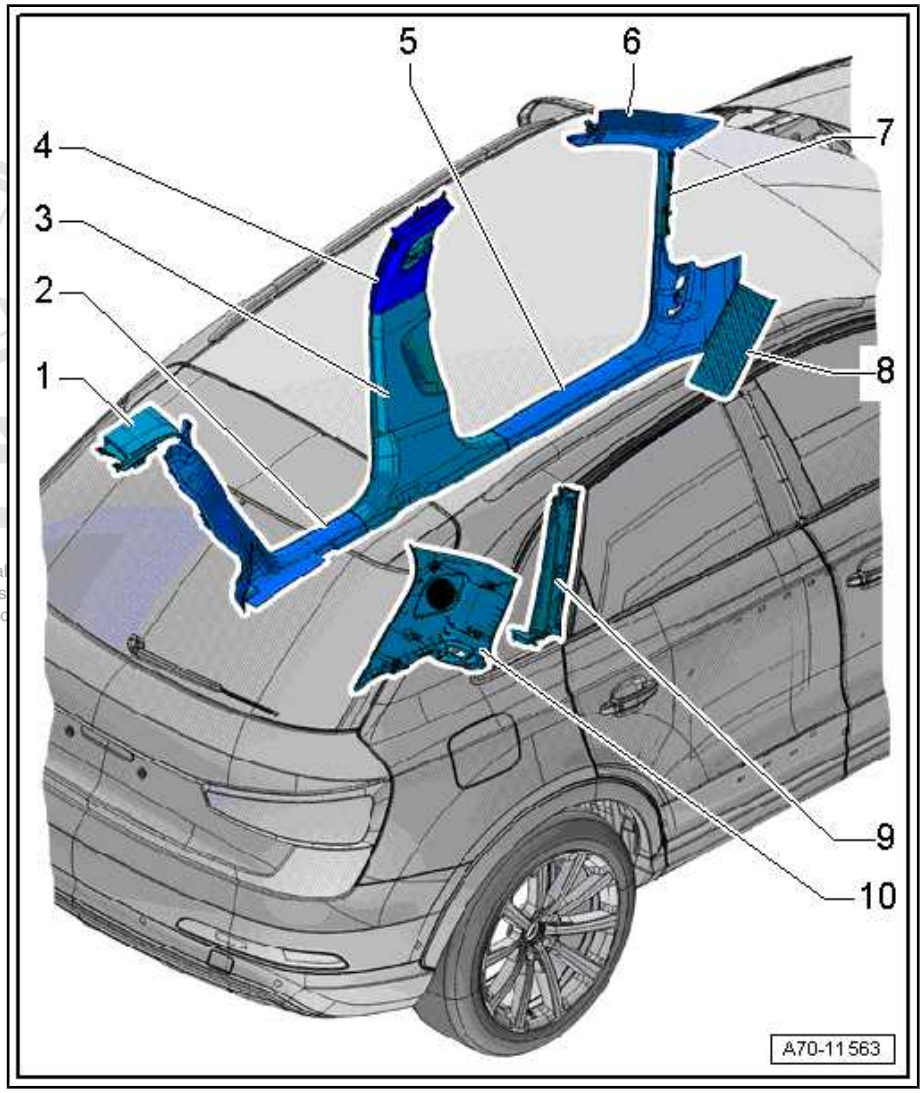
9 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 208

10 - D-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 209

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

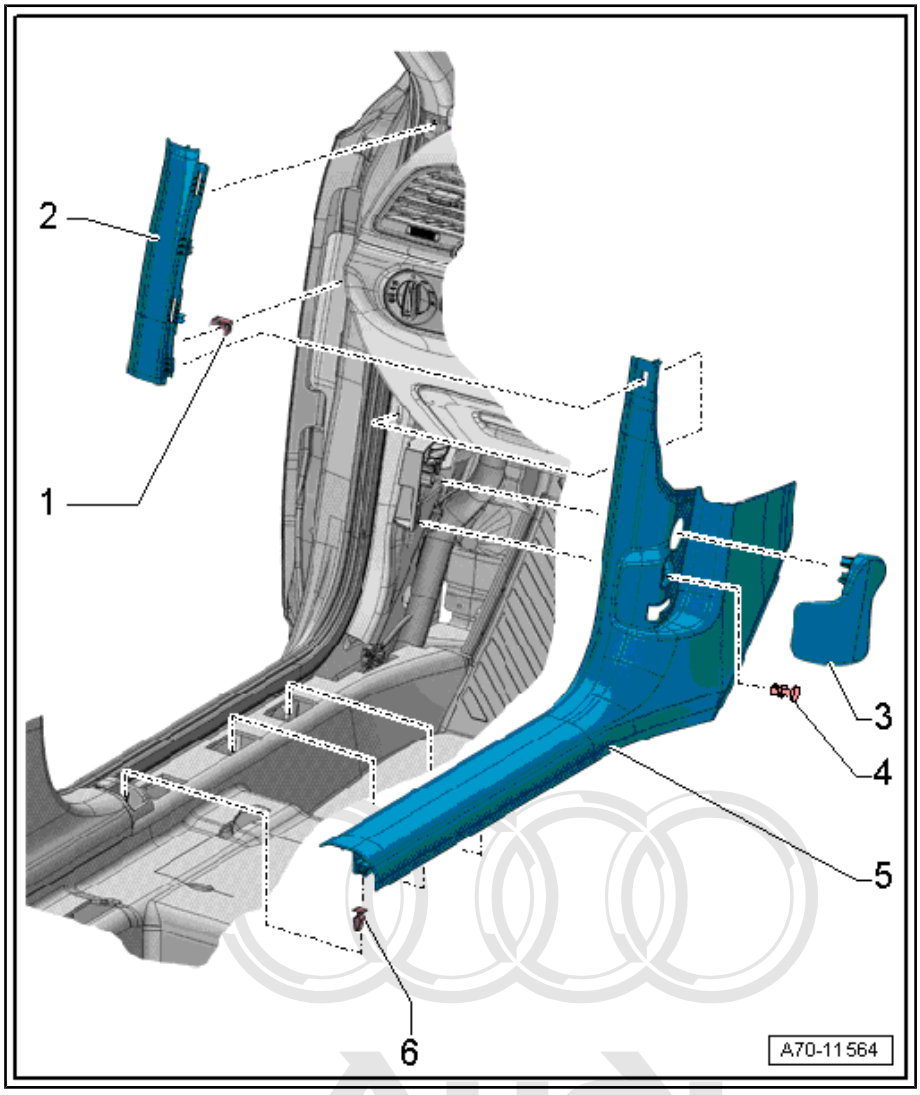


5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim

⇒ “5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim (front)”, page 204

⇒ “5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim (rear)”, page 205

5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim (front)



1 - Clip

- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in body
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim cover for installation

2 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.9.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim (front)”, page 211
- ❑ Clip into A-pillar trim (top) and sill panel trim (front)
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal

3 - Operating lever

- ❑ For Bowden cable for bonnet lock
- ❑ Driver side only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet
- ❑ Press onto mounting in mounting bracket and secure with retaining clip

4 - Fastener

- ❑ Driver side only

5 - Sill panel trim (front)

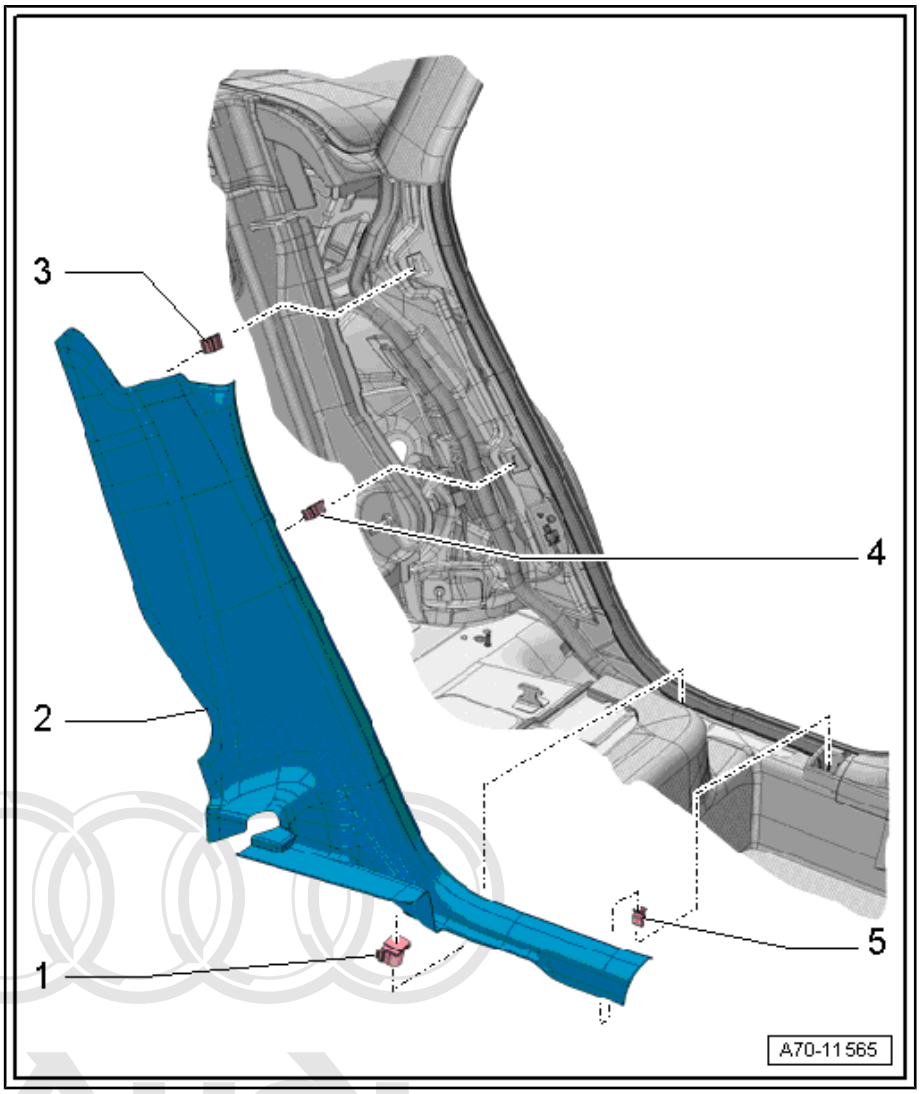
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 211
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim (rear)



1 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim

2 - Sill panel trim (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 213
- ❑ Insert sill panel trim in belt guide and C-pillar trim
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal

3 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

5 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim

1 - Clip (bottom)

- ❑ Without catch
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool -T40280- and insert in trim for installation

2 - Clip (centre)

- ❑ With catch
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool -T40280-

3 - Fastener

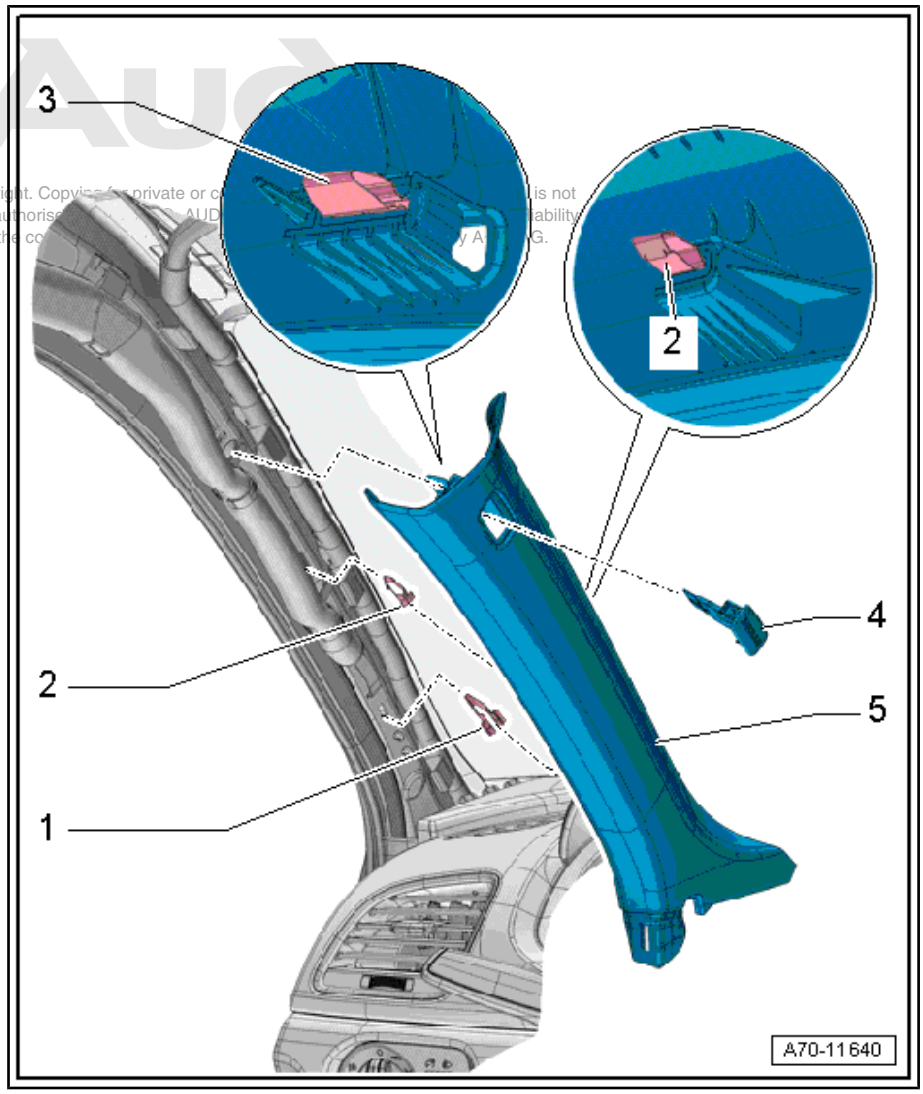
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool -T40280- and insert in trim for installation

4 - Expanding cap

- ❑ With “airbag” symbol
- ❑ Unclip carefully

5 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim

1 - Clip

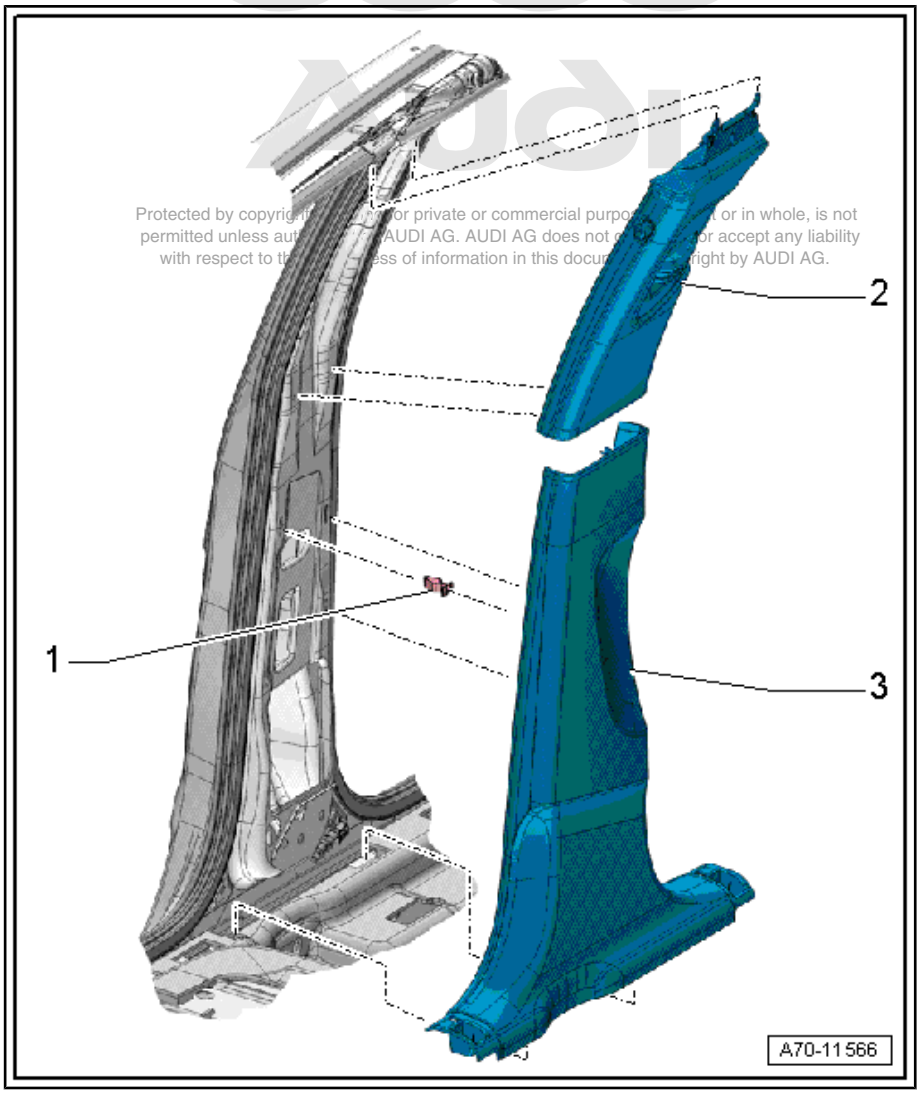
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 215
- ❑ Insert at top in mounting points at roof and clip into belt guide
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seals

3 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 217
- ❑ Insert at bottom in mounting points on side member and clip into B-pillar
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seals



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim

1 - Cover

- ❑ For belt guide
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 219
- ❑ Clip into C-pillar trim and D-pillar trim

2 - Clip

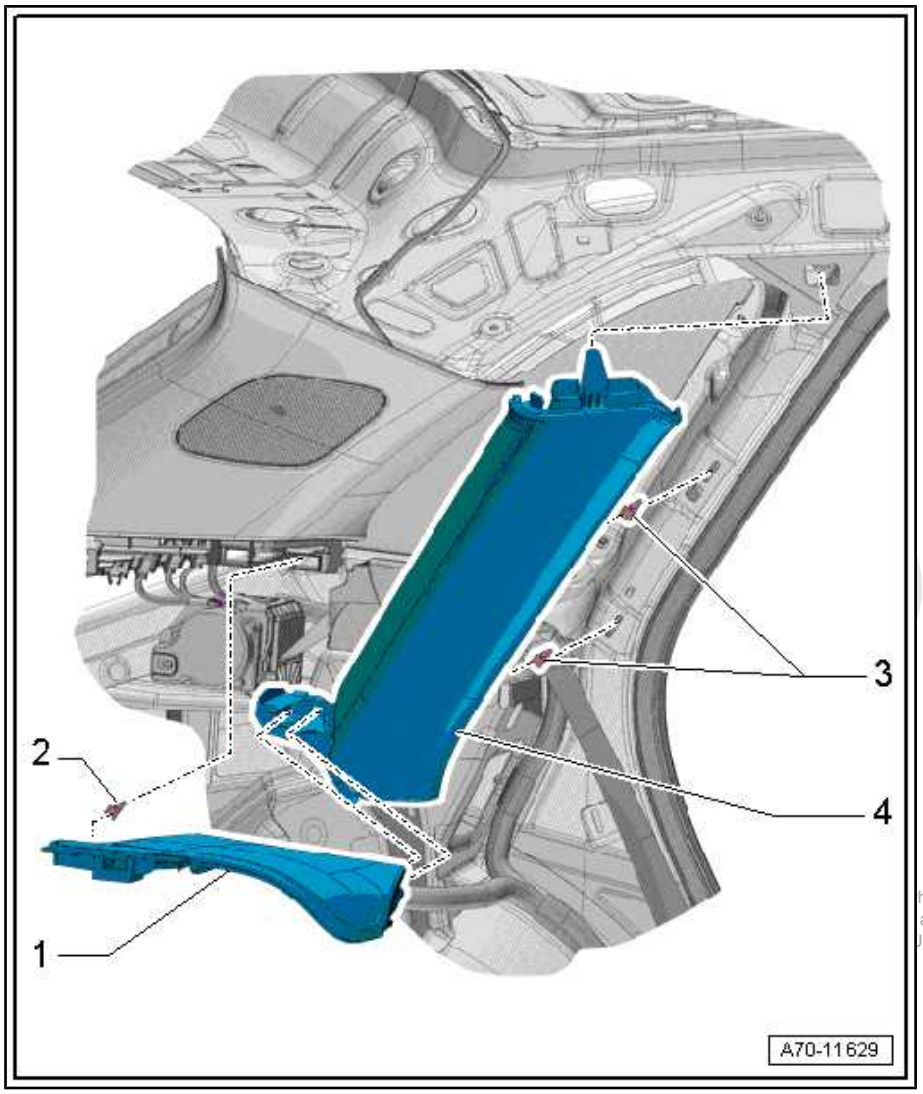
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in cover for belt guide
- ❑ Renew clip if damaged or deformed

3 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 217
- ❑ Insert at top in mounting point at roof and clip into C-pillar
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seal



hole, is not
any liability
UDI AG.

5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim

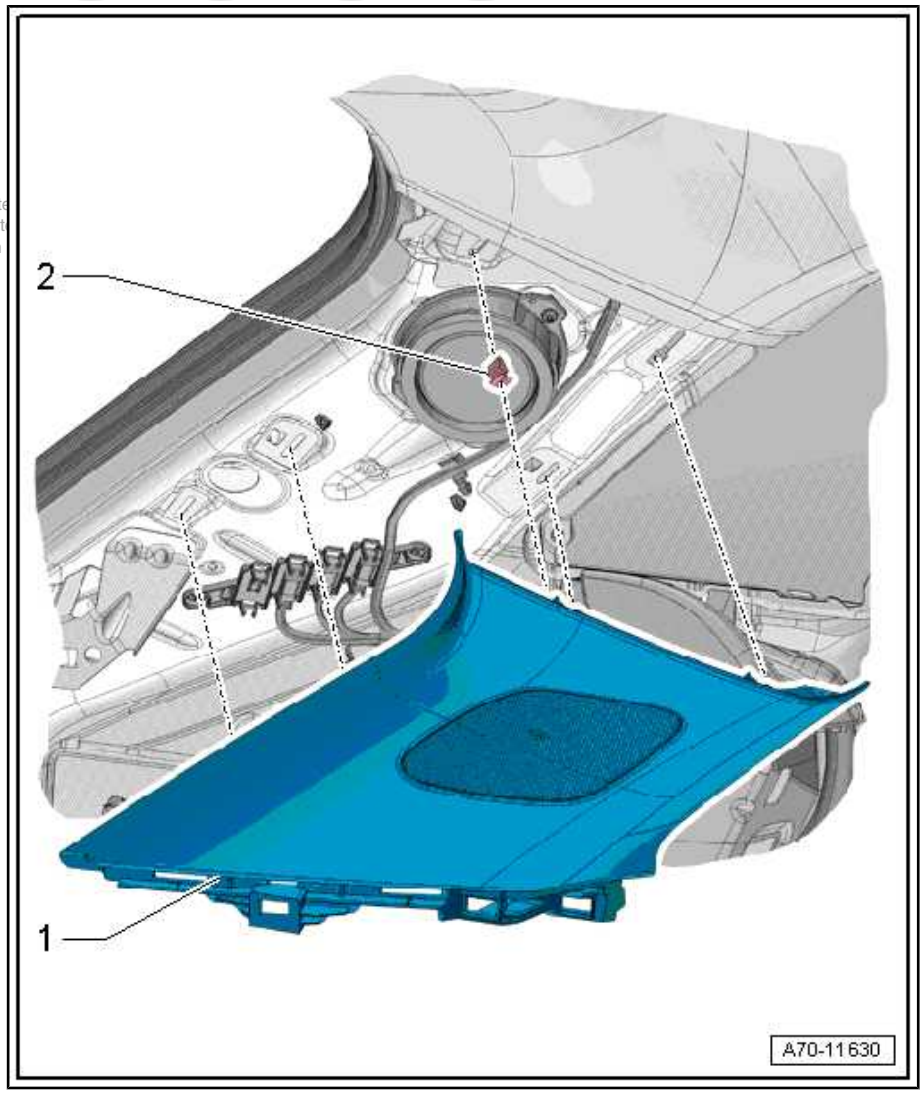
1 - D-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 219
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

Protecte
permitt
with

2 - Clip

- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering

1 - Floor covering
- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 221

2 - Stud
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Press in as far as stop

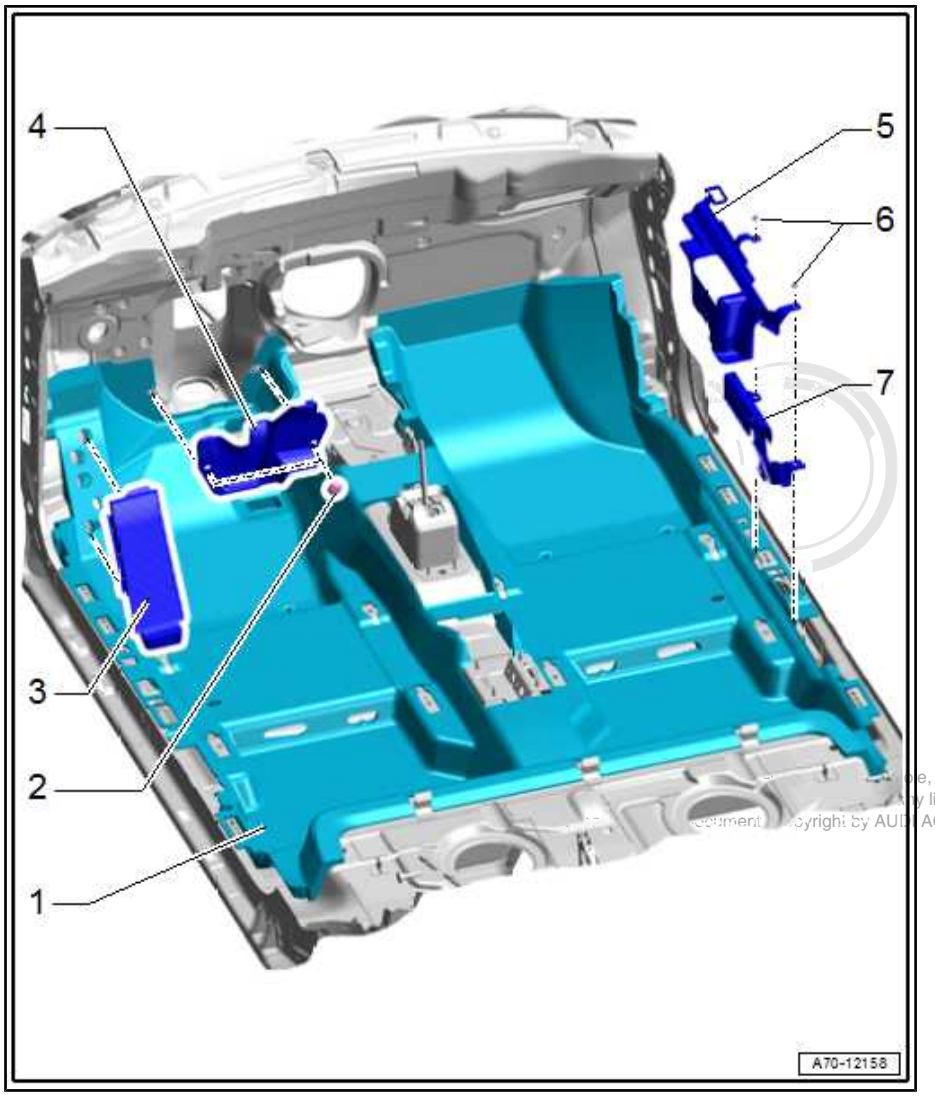
3 - Foot rest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 220
- ❑ Must engage completely in mountings

4 - Steering column cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 221

5 - Reinforcement for floor covering
- ❑ Only for NAR version
- ❑ 1x on each side

6 - Nut
- ❑ 2x on each side
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

7 - Cover for belt end fitting
- ❑ Only for NAR version
- ❑ 1x on each side



...e, is not ...y liability
...cument ... ...yright by AUDI AG.

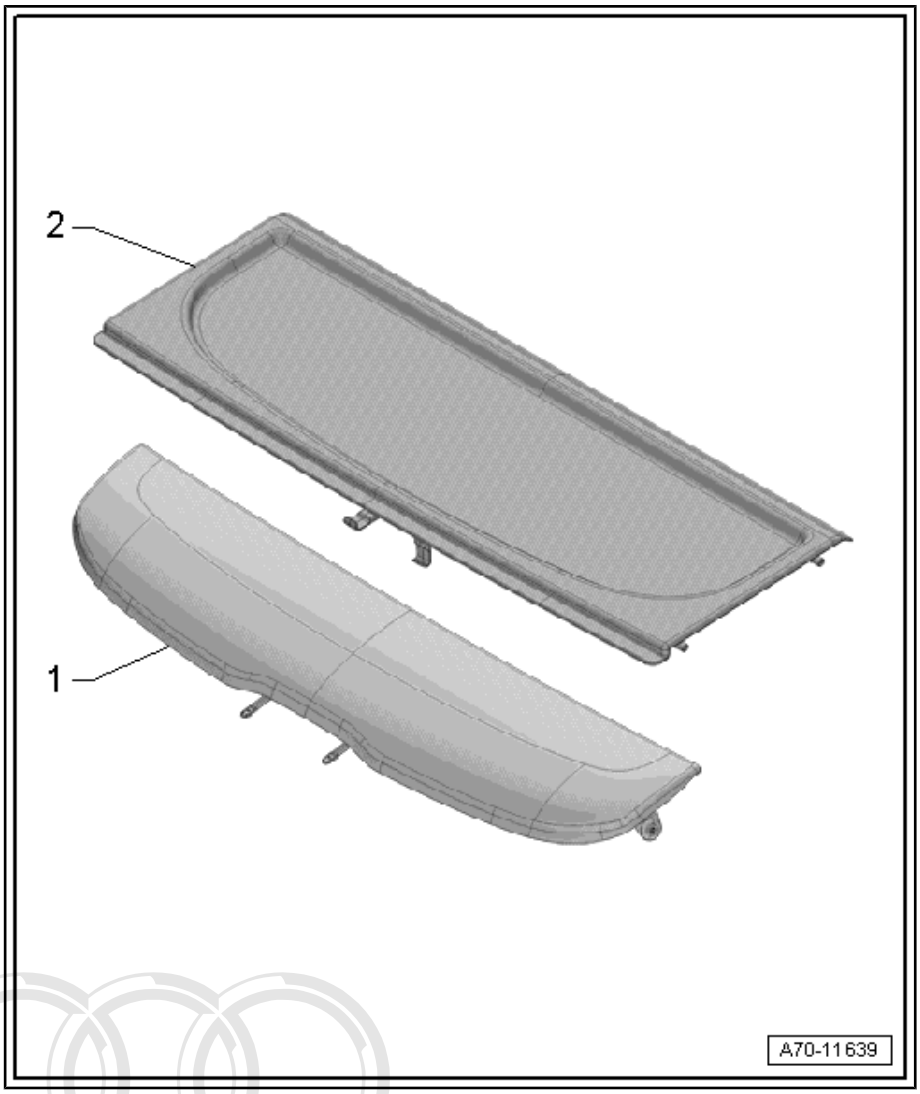
5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf

1 - Rear section of rear shelf

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 222
- ❑ Hooked into rear lid

2 - Front section of rear shelf

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 222
- ❑ Insert in mountings (left and right) in luggage compartment side trim and slide forwards.



5.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim

⇒ "5.9.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim (front)", page 211

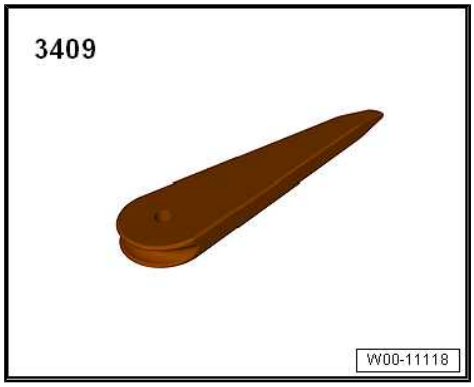
⇒ "5.9.2 Removing and installing sill panel trim (rear)", page 213

5.9.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim (front)

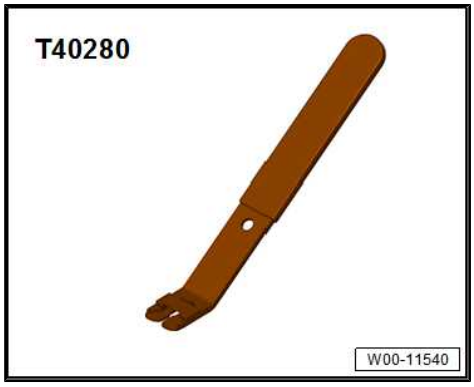
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



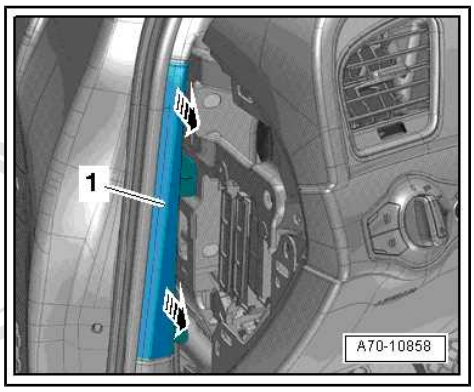
♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 186 .

– Unclip trim cover -1- at A-pillar using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Driver side:

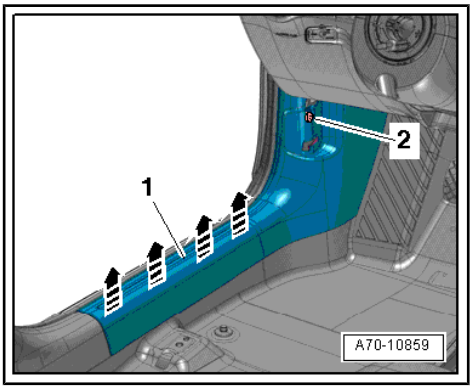
– Remove operating lever for Bowden cable for bonnet lock ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet .

– Remove fastener -2- for sill panel trim (front).

Both sides of vehicle (continued):

– Starting at rear, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim (front) -1- from side member -arrows- and pull off towards rear.

– Detach sill panel trim (front).



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Driver side: Engage sill panel trim (front) at mounting for operating lever and slide into foot rest.

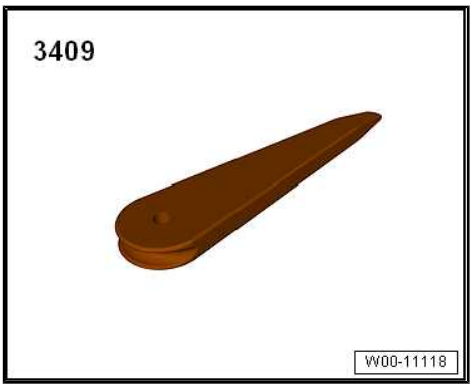
– Passenger side: Insert guide for sill panel trim (front) in floor covering.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim (front)", page 204

5.9.2 Removing and installing sill panel trim (rear)

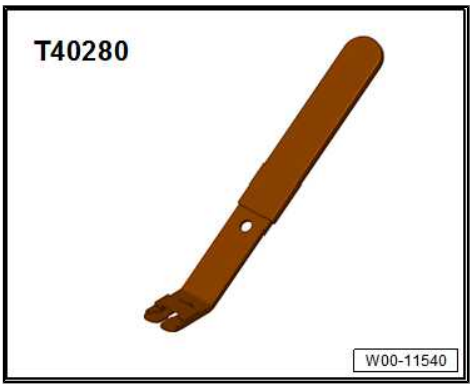
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



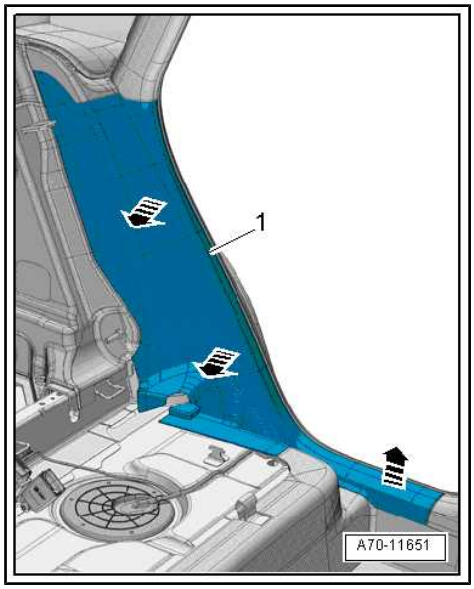
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 340 .
– Equipment version with side padding: Remove side padding ⇒ page 344 .
– Starting at front, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim -1- from side member and side panel -arrows -.
– Pull sill panel trim downwards out of belt guide and C-pillar trim.
– Detach sill panel trim.



Installing

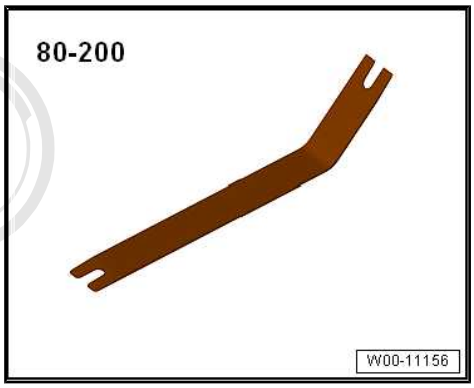
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim (rear)", page 205

5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



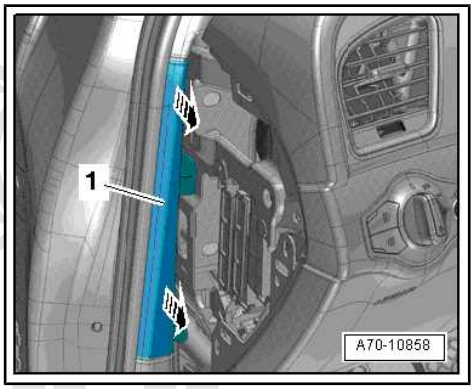
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

> **WARNING**
>
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 186 .

– Unclip trim cover -1- at A-pillar using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows- and detach.



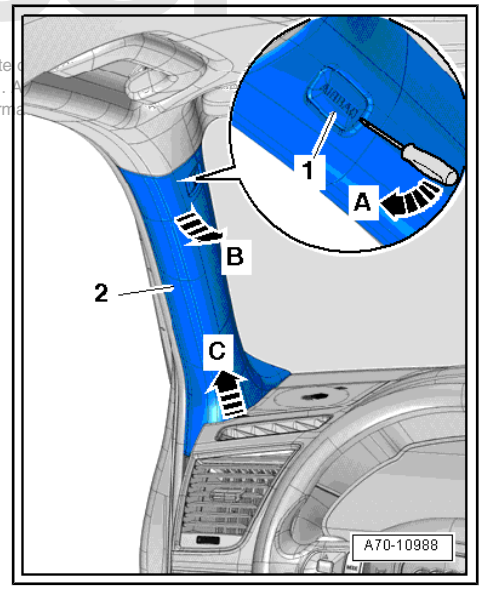
– Use a screwdriver to prise out expanding cap -1- with “airbag” symbol -arrow A-.

– Starting at top, carefully unfasten A-pillar trim (top) -2- as far as first detent -arrow B- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– To release clip with catch, pull trim upwards -arrow C-; this causes clip to slide out of mounting point in body.

– Pull A-pillar trim (top) out of dash panel and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

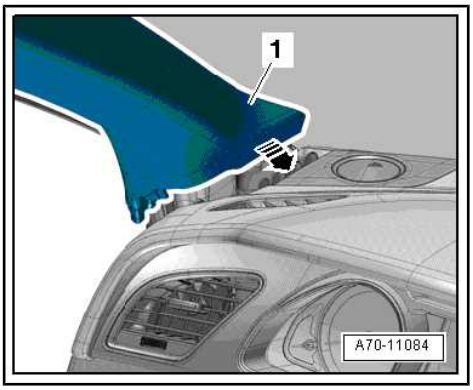


Installing

> **WARNING**
>
> - *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
> - *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting A-pillar trim (top).*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert A-pillar trim (top) -1- in mounting at dash panel -arrow-.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim”, page 206

5.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim

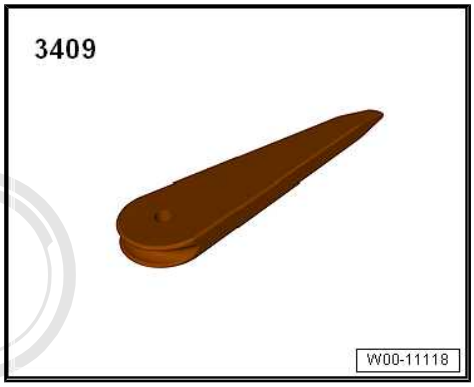
⇒ “5.11.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top)”, page 215

⇒ “5.11.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom)”, page 217

5.11.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

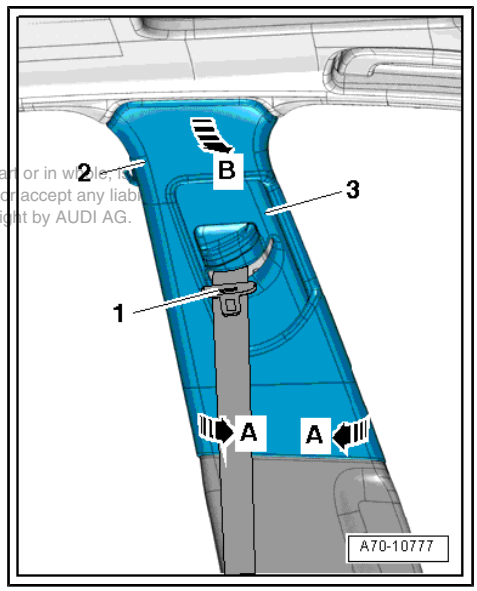


Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 87 .
– Move belt height adjuster to lowest possible position.
– Apply removal wedge - 3409- at bottom edge of B-pillar trim (top) -2- and unclip trim from B-pillar -arrows A-.
– Pull B-pillar trim (top) out of mounting on body -arrow B-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.
– Thread belt -1- with latch plate through slide for belt height adjuster -3- and detach B-pillar trim.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting B-pillar trim.*

– Thread in belt with latch plate through slide for belt height adjuster.

Note

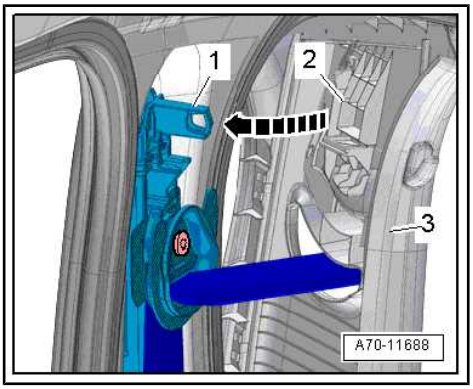
Make sure belt height adjuster is in bottom position.

– First insert B-pillar trim -3- upwards into mounting at roof.

• Mounting -2- of sliding element of B-pillar trim (top) must engage in retainer -1- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

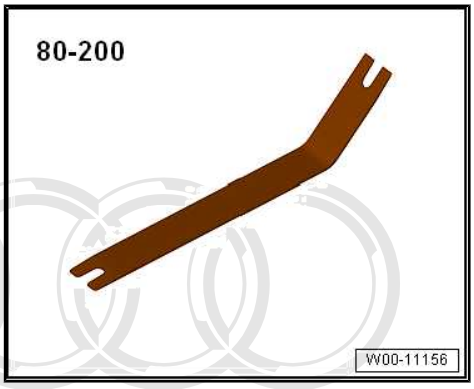
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim”, page 207



5.11.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 215 .

– Unclip sill panel trim (front) -3- at rear from B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 211 .

– Unclip sill panel trim (rear)-1- at front from B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 213 .

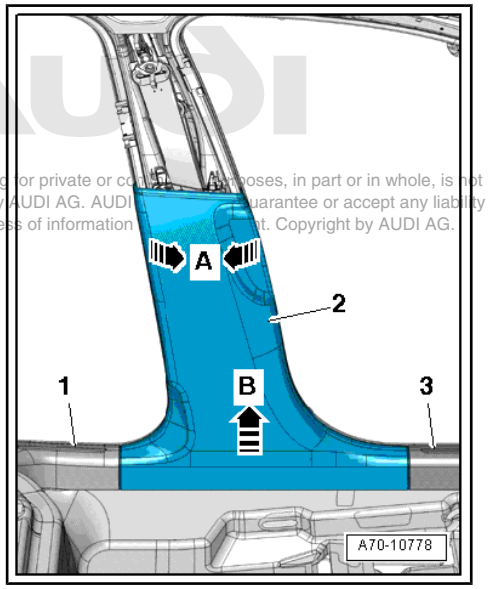
– Starting at top, use removal lever - 80-200- to unclip B-pillar trim (bottom) -2- from B-pillar -arrows A-.

– Pull B-pillar trim (bottom) off side member -arrow B- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim”, page 207

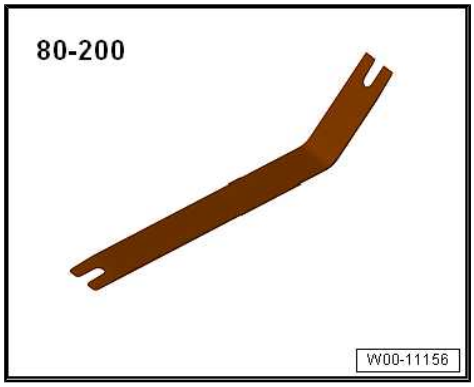


Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

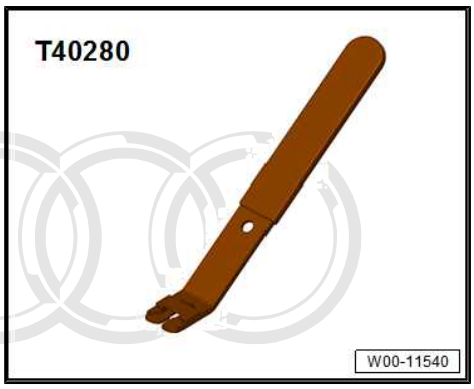
5.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



- Removal tool - T40280-



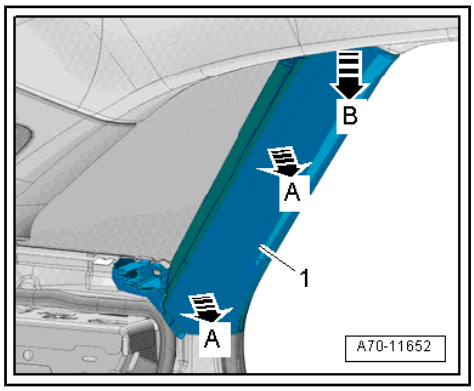
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

– Remove outer belt guide (rear) ⇒ page 86 .
– Unclip C-pillar trim -1- from C-pillar using removal lever -80-200- -arrows A-.
– Pull C-pillar trim (top) out of mounting on body -arrow B-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting C-pillar trim.*

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim", page 208

5.13 Removing and installing D-pillar trim

⇒ “5.13.1 Removing and installing cover for belt guide”, page 219

⇒ “5.13.2 Removing and installing D-pillar trim”, page 219

5.13.1 Removing and installing cover for belt guide

Removing

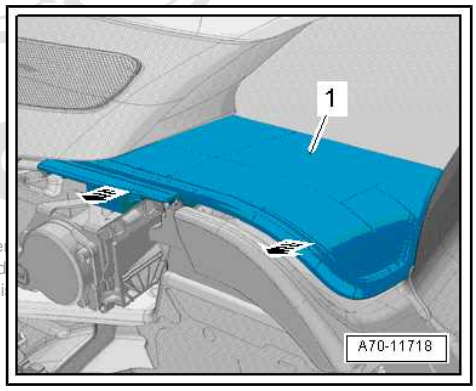
– Equipment version with side padding: Remove side padding ⇒ page 344 .

– Remove sill panel trim (rear) ⇒ page 213 .

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 232 .

– Detach cover -1- from C-pillar trim and C-pillar trim -arrows-.

– Disengage cover from belt guide and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d
with respect to the correctness of information in thi

Installing

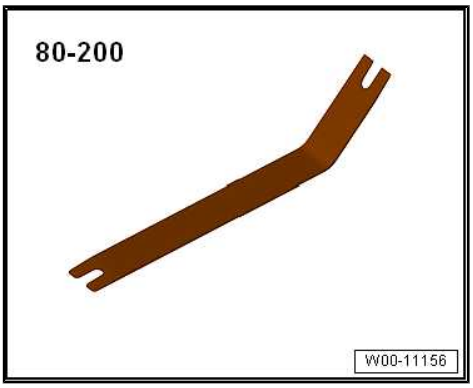
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim”, page 208

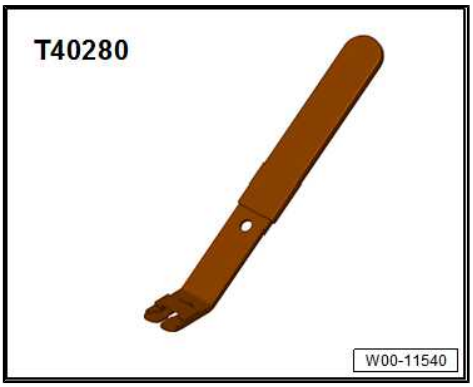
5.13.2 Removing and installing D-pillar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



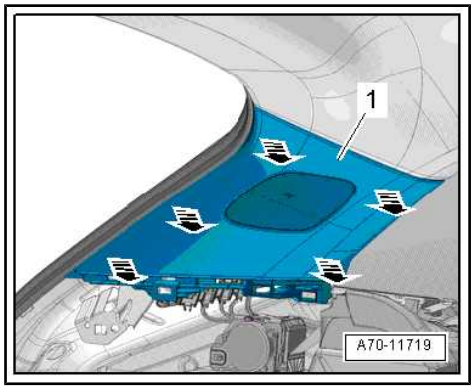
♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove belt guide cover ⇒ page 219 .

– Unclip D-pillar trim -1- -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim", page 209

5.14 Removing and installing foot rest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

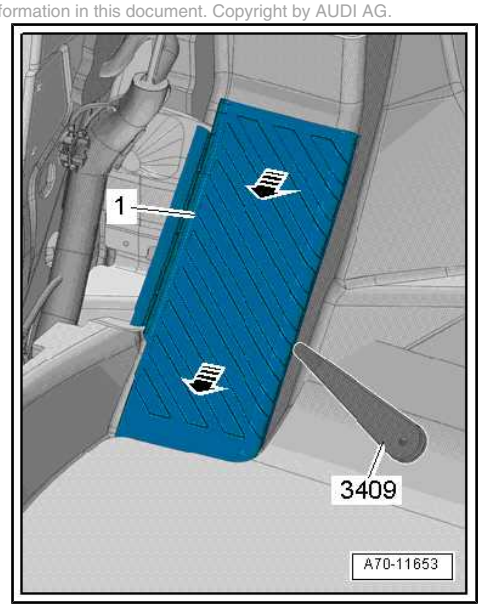


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove sill panel trim (front, driver side) ⇒ page 211 .

– Unclip foot rest -1- with removal wedge - 3409- -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering", page 210

5.15 Removing and installing floor covering

⇒ “5.15.1 Removing and installing steering column cover”, page 221

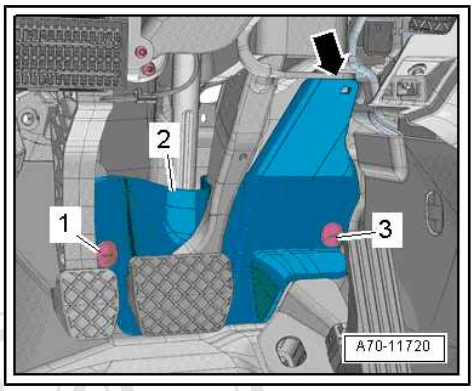
⇒ “5.15.2 Removing and installing floor covering”, page 221

5.15.1 Removing and installing steering column cover

Removing

– Remove pushbuttons -1- and -3- with a screwdriver.

– Unclip steering column cover -2- at top from air conditioning unit -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 210

5.15.2 Removing and installing floor covering

Removing

– Remove front seats ⇒ page 278 .

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 340 .

– Remove sill panel trim panels (front) ⇒ page 211 .

– Remove sill panel trim panels (rear) ⇒ page 213 .

– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 87 .

– Remove B-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ page 217 .

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 45 .

– Remove footwell trim panels ⇒ page 44 .

– Remove steering column cover ⇒ page 221 .

– Remove accelerator pedal module with accelerator position senders ⇒ Rep. gr. 20 ; Accelerator mechanism; Removing and installing accelerator pedal module with accelerator position senders -G79- / -G185- .

– Remove bracket for centre console and lower shift mechanism ⇒ page 51 .

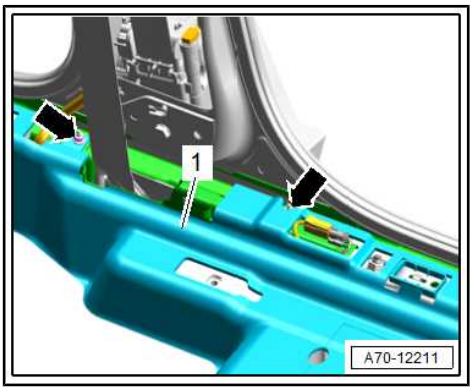
– Remove air duct (rear) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air ducts .

NAR version:

– Unscrew nuts -arrows- for reinforcement for floor covering.

– Disengage floor covering -1- (along with reinforcement) from side member.

– Repeat procedure on opposite side of vehicle.

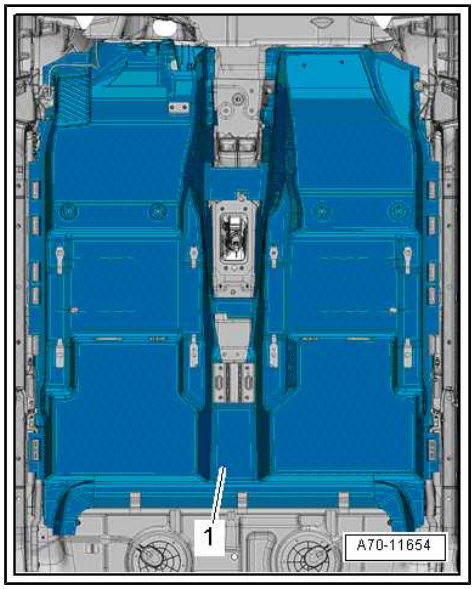


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

All vehicles (continued):

– Take out floor mats.

– Lift floor covering -1- at rear and pull towards rear.



Note

Make sure that floor covering does not tear at openings.

– Fold up floor covering and take it out through door opening.

Installing

– Fold up floor covering and place it in vehicle.

– Slide floor covering forwards and align until hole patterns coincide.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.7 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 210

5.16 Removing and installing rear shelf

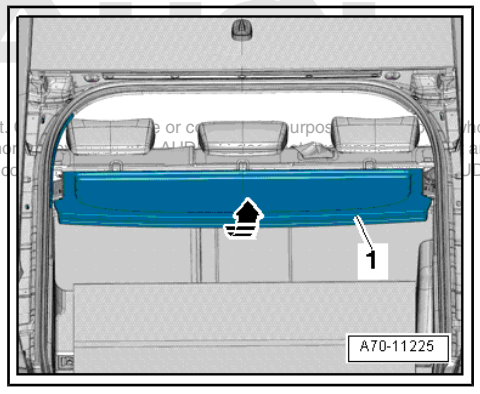
⇒ “5.16.1 Removing and installing front section of rear shelf”, page 222

⇒ “5.16.2 Removing and installing rear section of rear shelf”, page 222

5.16.1 Removing and installing front section of rear shelf

Removing

– Pull rear shelf -1- out towards rear -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

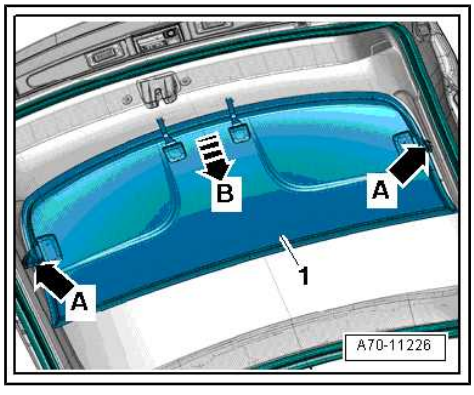
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 211

5.16.2 Removing and installing rear section of rear shelf

Removing

– Disengage rear shelf -1- from rear lid trim -arrows A-, pull out of rear lid trim -arrow B- and detach.



Installing

– Insert rear shelf in rear lid trim and engage in mountings (left and right) -arrows A-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 211

6 Luggage compartment trim panels

⇒ “6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels”, page 223

⇒ “6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 225

⇒ “6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 226

⇒ “6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 227

⇒ “6.5 Exploded view - rear lid trim (top)”, page 228

⇒ “6.6 Exploded view - lock carrier trim”, page 229

⇒ “6.7 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 229

⇒ “6.8 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)”, page 231

⇒ “6.9 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 232

⇒ “6.10 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor”, page 233

⇒ “6.11 Removing and installing fastening ring”, page 234

⇒ “6.12 Removing and installing bag hook”, page 234

⇒ “6.13 Removing and installing handle for luggage compartment floor (rear)”, page 234

⇒ “6.14 Removing and installing cover for warning triangle”, page 236

⇒ “6.15 Removing and installing tail light cover”, page 236

⇒ “6.16 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock”, page 236

⇒ “6.17 Removing and installing lock carrier trim”, page 236

6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 229

2 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 226

3 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 225

4 - Front section of rear shelf

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 211

5 - Rear lid trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 227

6 - Rear section of rear shelf

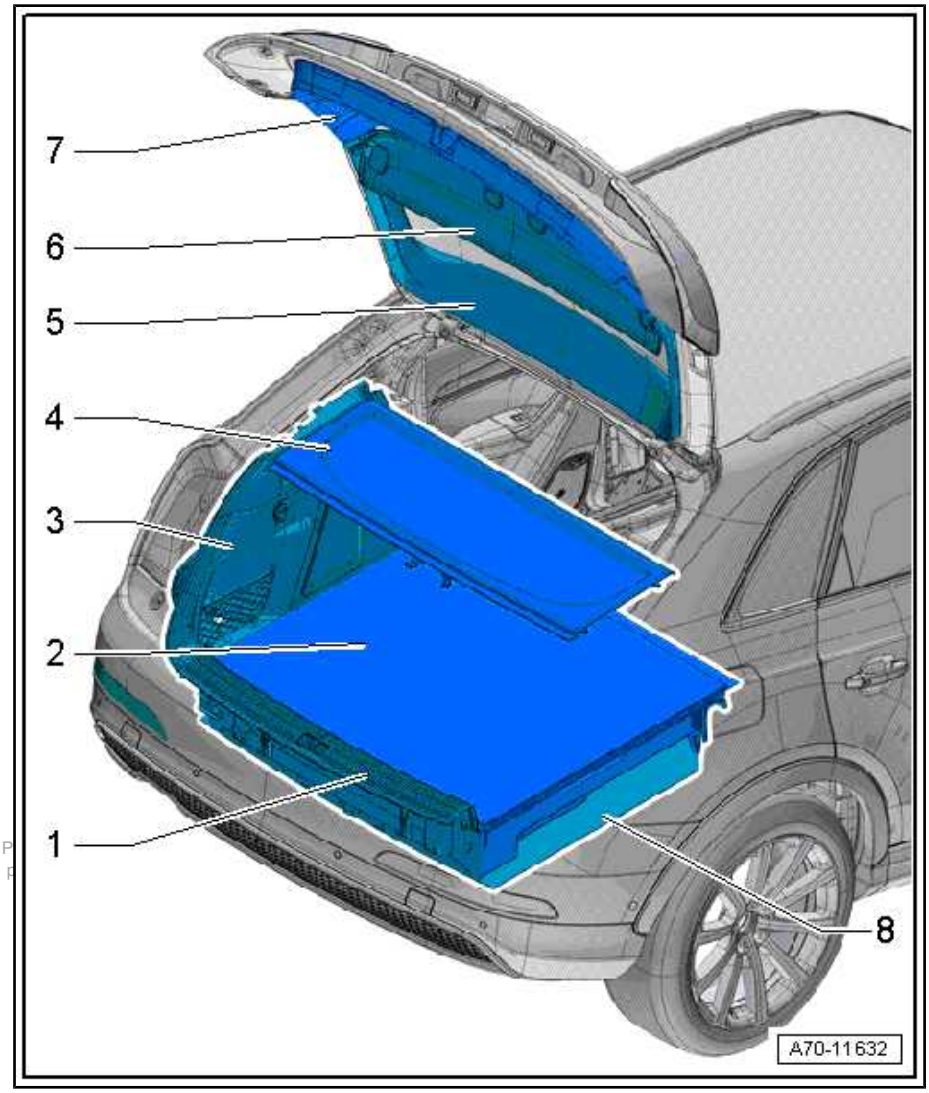
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 211

7 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

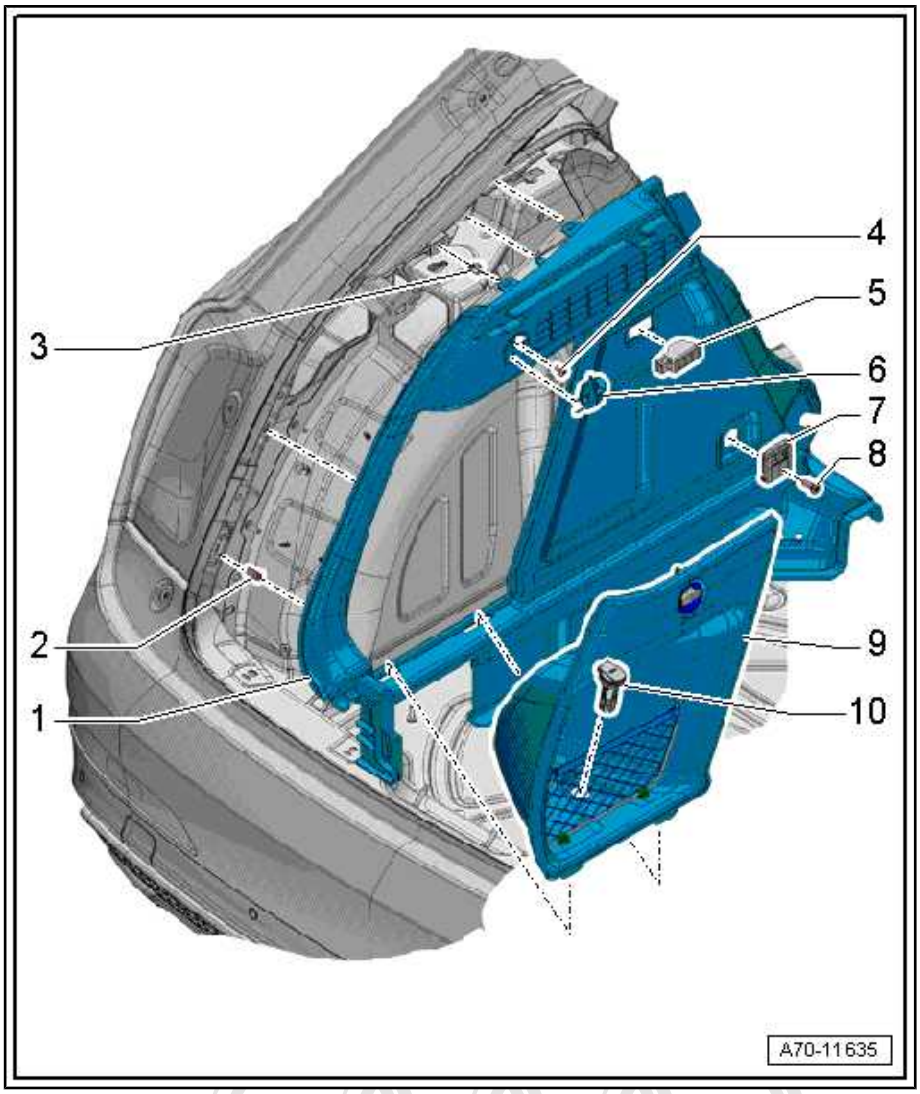
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 227

8 - Luggage compartment floor lining

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ page 234



6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim



1 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 232
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

2 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in mounting points and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

5 - Left luggage compartment light - W18-

- ❑ Right-side: right luggage compartment light - W35-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment

6 - Bag hook

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 234
- ❑ Insert in mounting and turn clockwise as far as stop

7 - Fastening ring

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 234

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

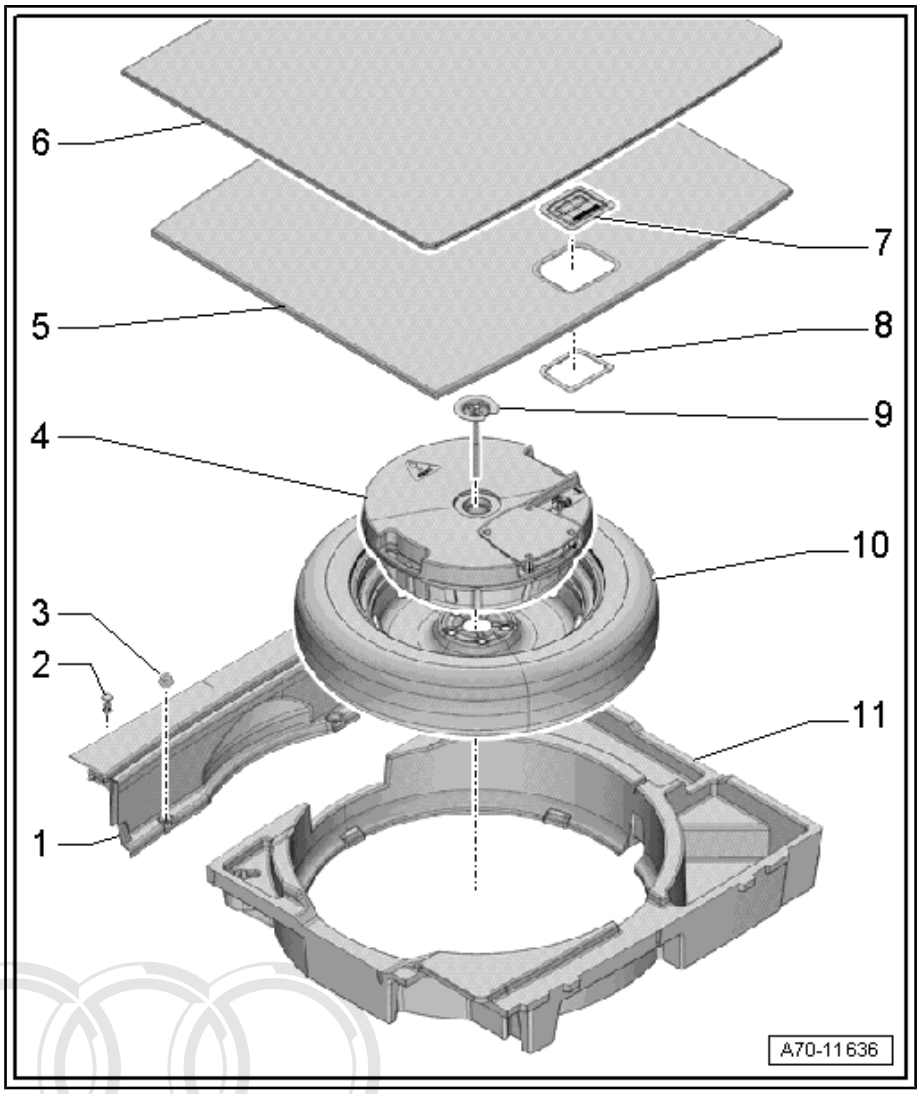
9 - Cover

- ❑ For luggage compartment side trim

10 - Socket - U-

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Cigarette lighter, socket; Exploded view - cigarette lighter, 12 V socket

6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor



1 - Luggage compartment floor (front)

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 233

2 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 3x

3 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

4 - Subwoofer - R211-

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Removing and installing subwoofer - R211-

5 - Luggage compartment floor (rear)

- ❑ Depending on equipment version

6 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- ❑ Depending on equipment version

7 - Handle

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 234

8 - Retaining frame

- ❑ For handle for luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Can only be pressed onto handle for luggage compartment floor in one position
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

9 - Spare wheel retainer

- ❑ With wing nut
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Owner's Manual

10 - Spare wheel

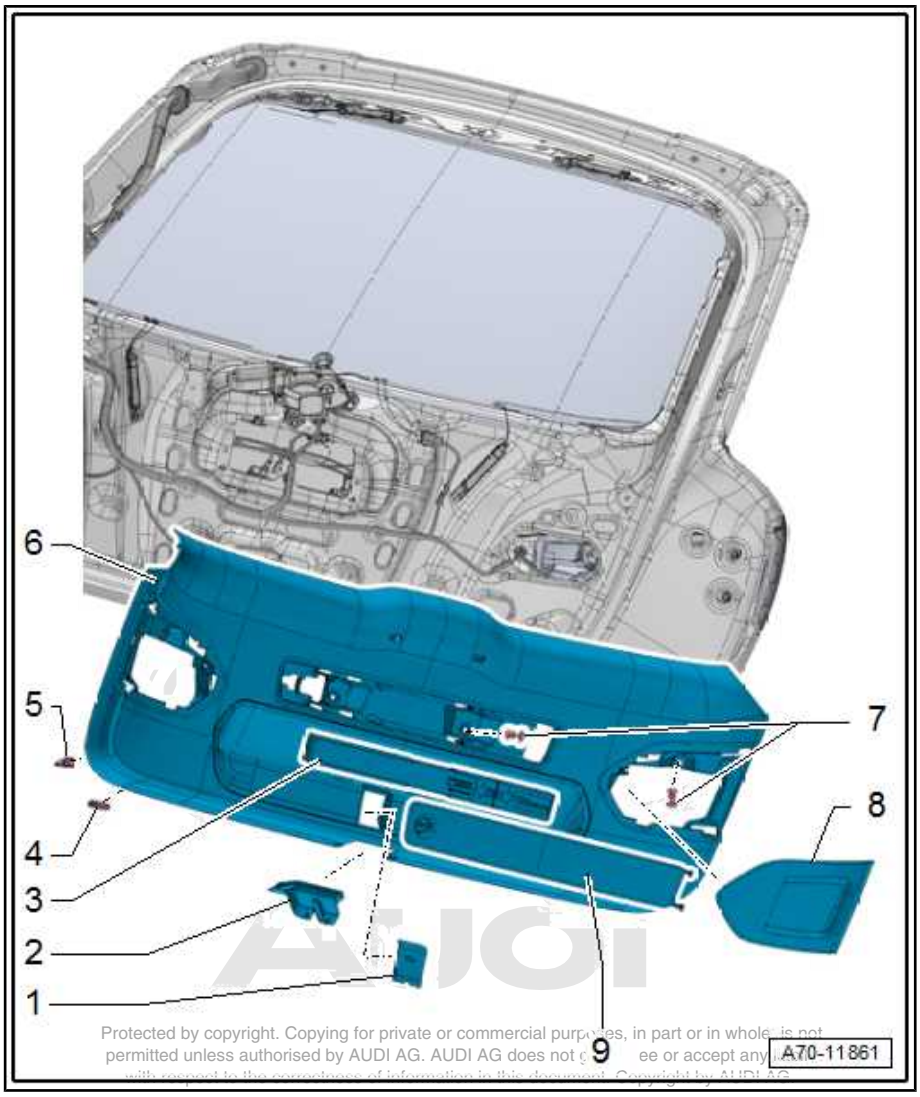
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

11 - Tool box

- ❑ Depending on equipment version

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Cover

- ❑ For manual release mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 230
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim

2 - Trim

- ❑ For rear lid lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 236
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

3 - Warning triangle

4 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Insert in trim

5 - Clip

- ❑ 10x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

6 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 229
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

7 - Fastener

- ❑ 4x

8 - Cover

- ❑ For tail light
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 236
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim

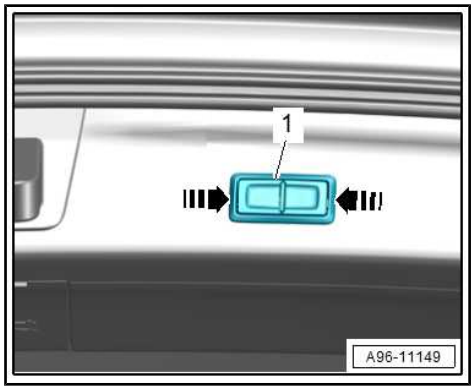
9 - Cover

- ❑ For warning triangle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 236
- ❑ Engage in rear lid trim

Rear lid closure button - E574-

– Remove button -E574- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in luggage compartment .

1 - Rear lid closure button - E574-



6.5 Exploded view - rear lid trim (top)

1 - Clip

- ❑ 9x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ 7x
- ❑ Insert in trim

3 - Rear lid trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 231
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

4 - Fastener

- ❑ 2x

5 - Mounting

- ❑ For rear section of rear shelf
- ❑ 2x



Protected by copyrig
permitted unless auth
with respect to the

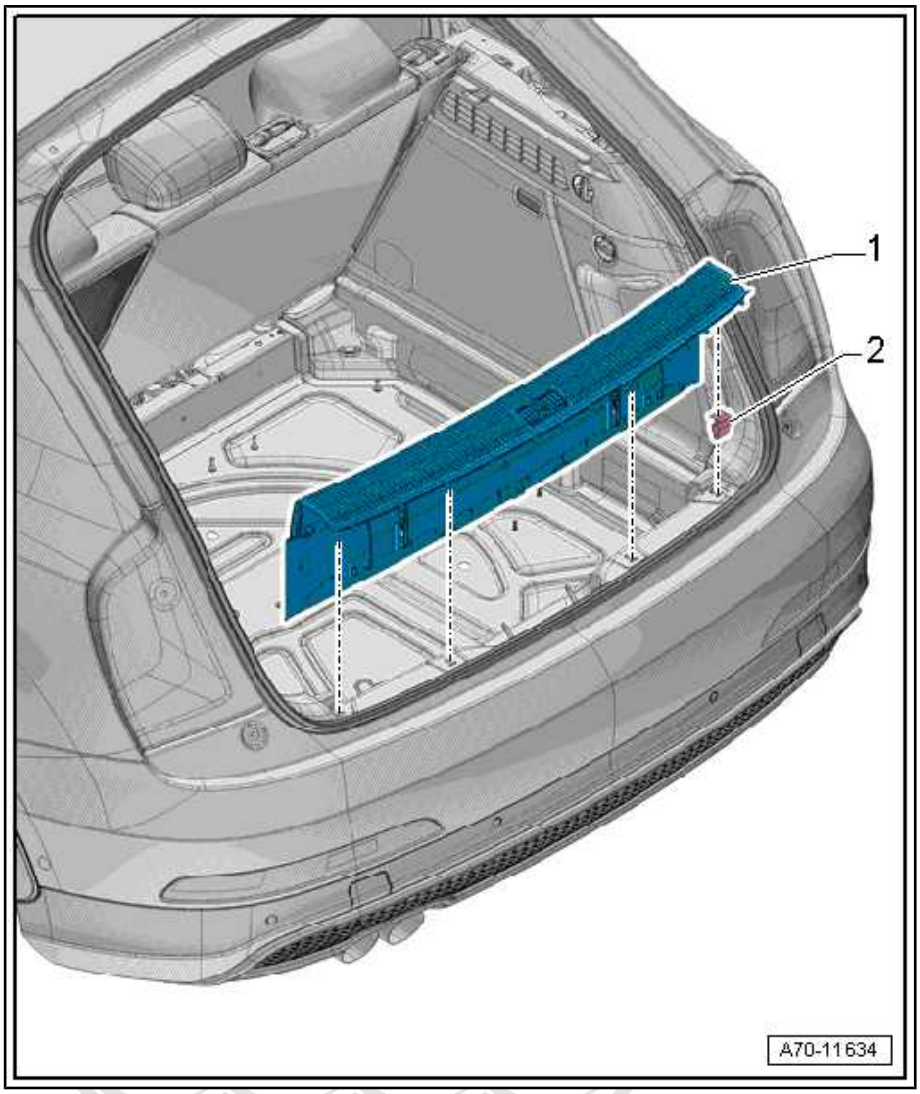
6.6 Exploded view - lock carrier trim

1 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ With rear lid closed sender 1 - G525- / rear lid closed sender 2 - G526-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 236
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

2 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



6.7 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

⇒ "6.7.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)", page 229

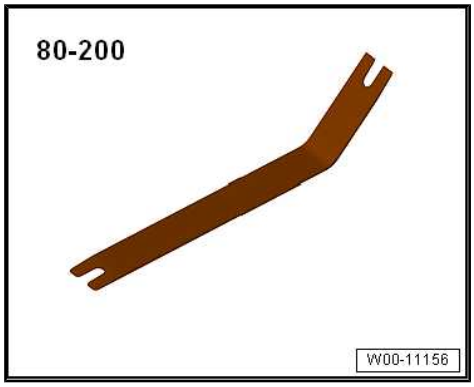
⇒ "6.7.2 Removing and installing cover for manual release mechanism", page 230

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

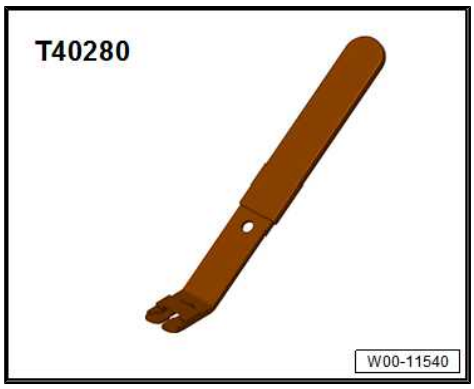
6.7.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-

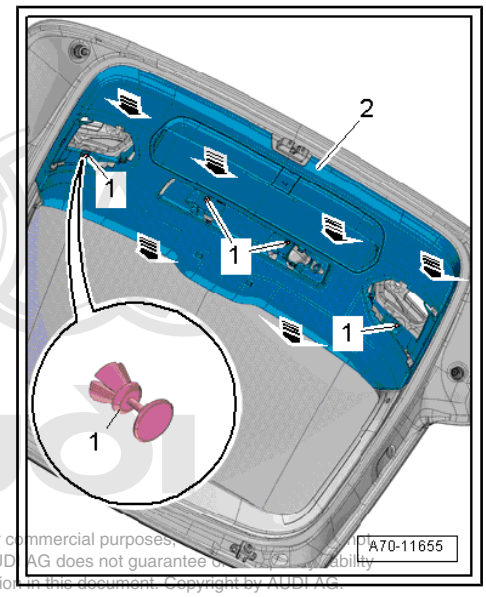


- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– If fitted, remove rear section of rear shelf ⇒ page 222 .
– Remove tail light cover ⇒ page 236 .
– Open cover for warning triangle and take out warning triangle ⇒ page 236 .
– Remove fasteners -1-.
– Release clips of rear lid trim (bottom) -2- all around using removal wedge - 80-200- -arrows-.
– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for rear lid closure button - E574- .
– Detach rear lid trim (bottom).



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

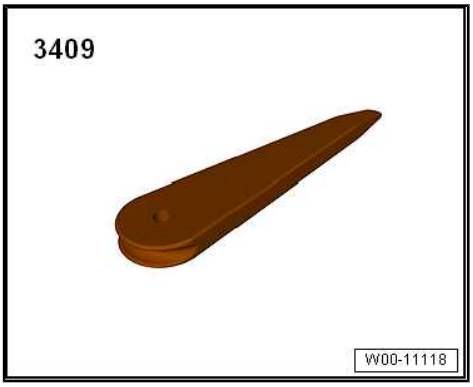
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)", page 227

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.7.2 Removing and installing cover for manual release mechanism

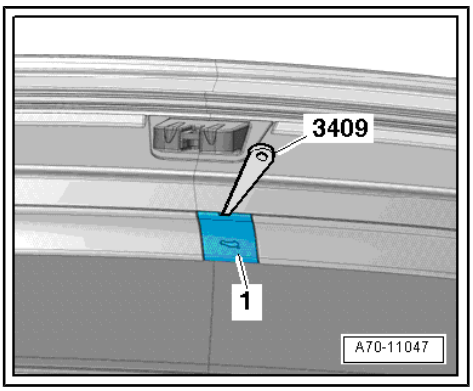
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Apply removal wedge - 3409- at opening and unclip cover for manual release mechanism -1- from rear lid trim (bottom).



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

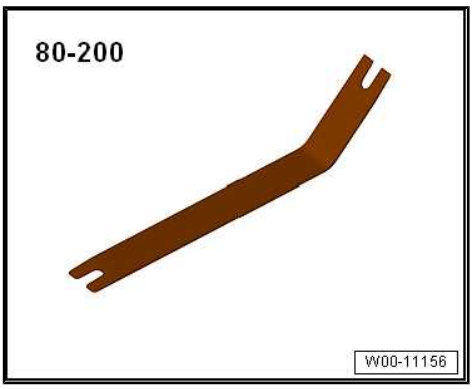
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)", page 227

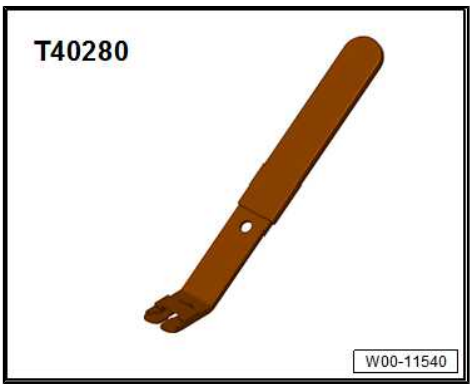
6.8 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

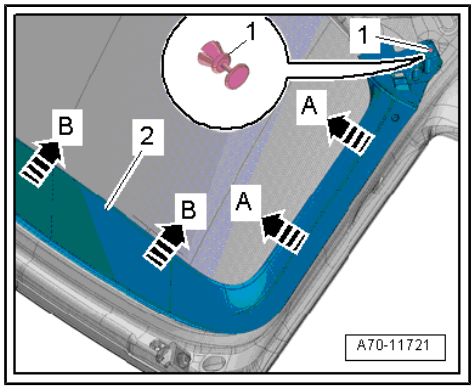
♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing



– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ page 229 .
– Remove fastener -1-.
– First unclip rear lid trim (top) -2- from rear lid from the side using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows A-.
– Then unclip rear lid trim (top) from rear lid using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows B- and detach.

Installing

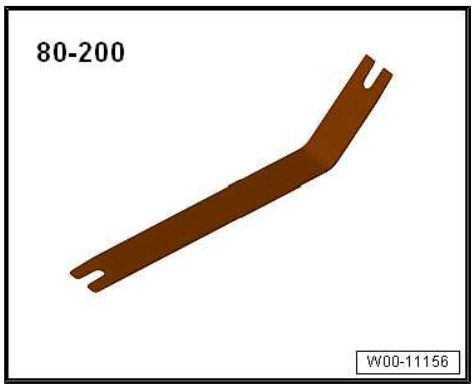
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)", page 227

6.9 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



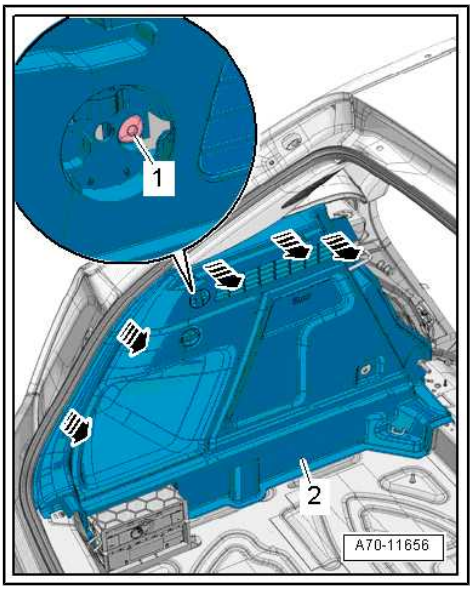
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– If fitted, remove luggage compartment cover.
– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 342 .
– Equipment version with side padding: Remove side padding ⇒ page 344 .
– Remove sill panel trim (rear) ⇒ page 213 .
– Remove luggage compartment floor (front) ⇒ page 233 .
– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ page 236 .
– Remove fastening ring ⇒ page 234 .
– Remove luggage compartment light -W18- / -W35- from luggage compartment side trim ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ;

Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment .

– Remove bag hook ⇒ page 234 .
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Remove cover for luggage compartment side trim.
– Pull off rear lid seal in vicinity of luggage compartment side trim.
– Lever luggage compartment side trim -2- off body at front and rear -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Carefully detach luggage compartment side trim from D-pillar trim -arrows-.
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim at catch for rear seat backrest and detach.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim", page 225

6.10 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor

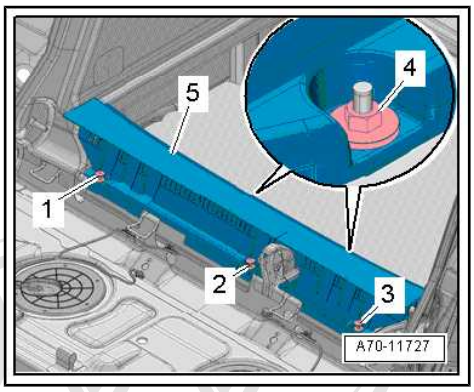
⇒ "6.10.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor", page 233

⇒ "6.10.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor lining", page 234

6.10.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor

Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 342 .
– Remove luggage compartment floor (rear).
– Take out mounting box for vehicle tool kit.
– Remove fasteners -1 ... 3-.
– Unscrew nut -4-.
– Detach luggage compartment floor (front) -5-.



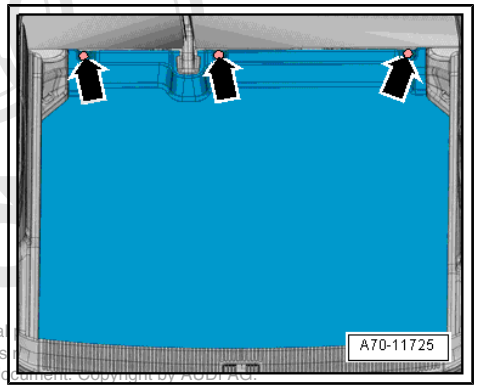
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor", page 226

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.10.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor lining



Removing

– Remove fasteners -arrows-.

– Disengage luggage compartment floor lining and take it out of vehicle.

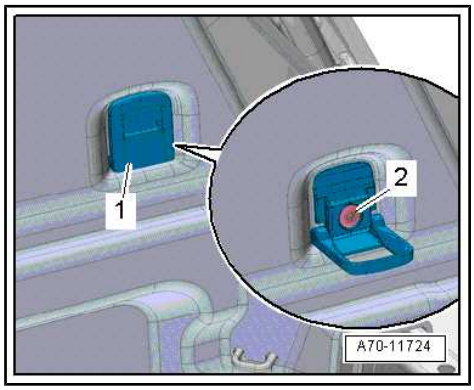
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 226

Copyright by AUDI AG. Duplication, copying, distribution and/or commercial use of this document is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.11 Removing and installing fastening ring



Removing

– Fold down fastening ring -1-.

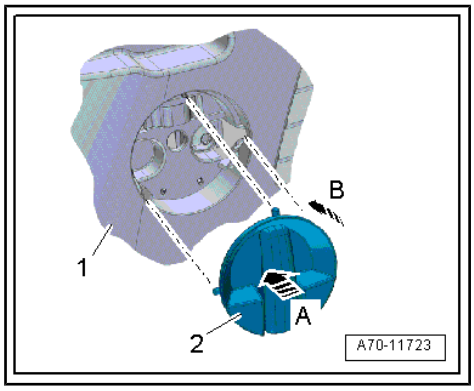
– Unscrew bolt -2- and detach mounting for fastening ring.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 225

6.12 Removing and installing bag hook



Removing

– Press bag hook -2- into mounting -1- for bag hook -arrow A-.

– Turn bag hook anti-clockwise as far as it will go -arrow B- and detach.

Installing

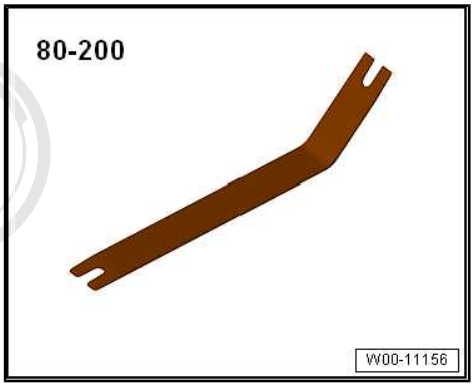
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 34

6.13 Removing and installing handle for luggage compartment floor (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part o
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

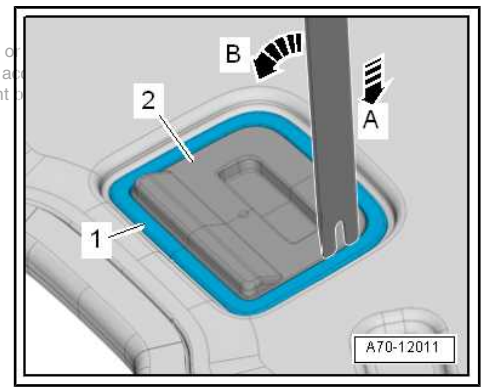
Removing

– Remove luggage compartment floor.

– Release retaining frame -1- on underside of luggage compartment floor.

– To do so, apply removal lever - 80-200- -arrow A- and release retaining frame -arrow B-.

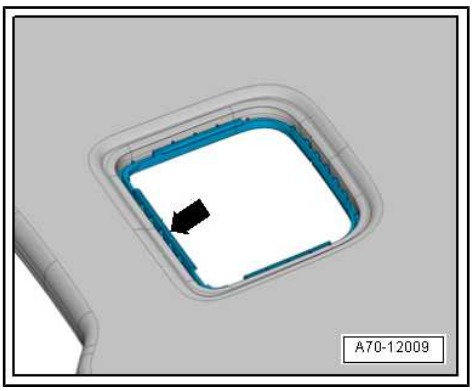
– Disengage retaining frame and detach handle -2- for luggage compartment floor.



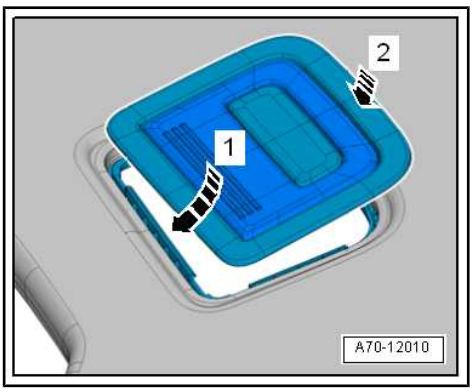
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert retaining frame -arrow- into opening in luggage compartment floor from underneath and hold it in position.



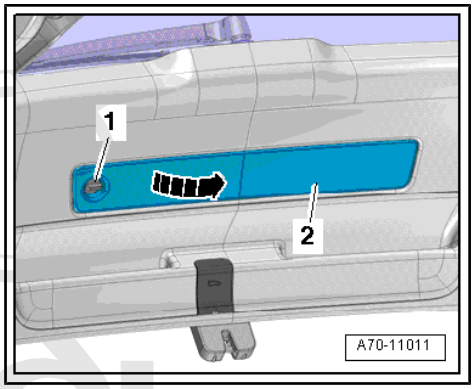
– Slide handle for luggage compartment floor into retaining frame towards rear of vehicle -arrow 1- and engage downwards -arrow 2-.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 226

6.14 Removing and installing cover for warning triangle



Removing

– Turn quick-release fastener -1- 90° anti-clockwise and swivel cover -2- for warning triangle in direction of -arrow-.

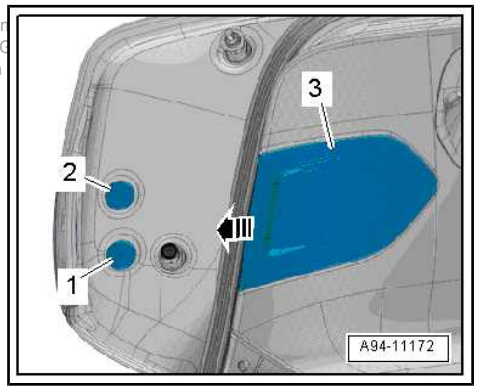
– Disengage cover at rear lid trim (bottom) and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 227

6.15 Removing and installing tail light cover



Removing

– Unclip tail light cover -3- from rear lid trim (bottom) in direction of -arrow- and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in

Note

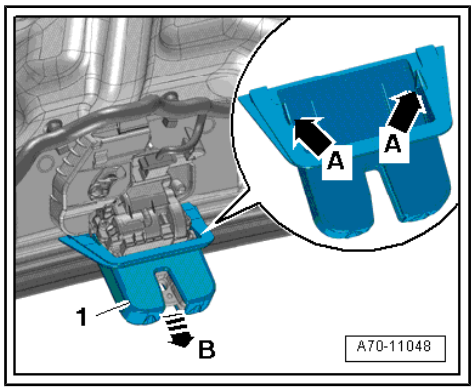
Ignore -items 1 and 2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 227

6.16 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock



Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ page 229 .

– Using a screwdriver, release retaining tabs -arrows A- and detach trim -1- from rear lid lock -arrow B-.

Installing

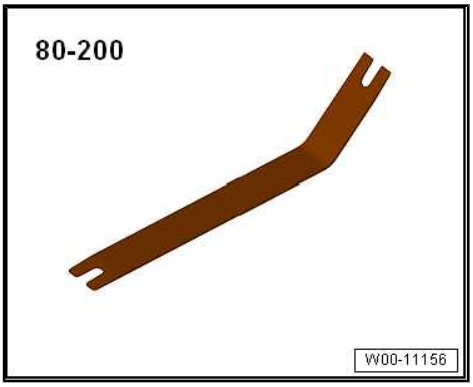
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 227

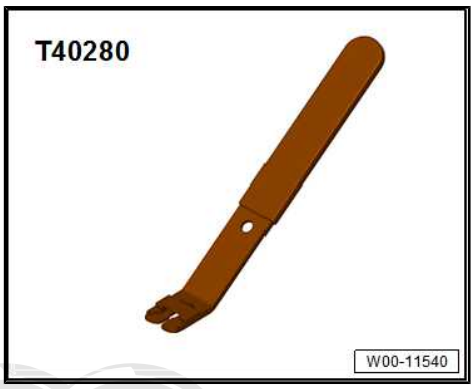
6.17 Removing and installing lock carrier trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-

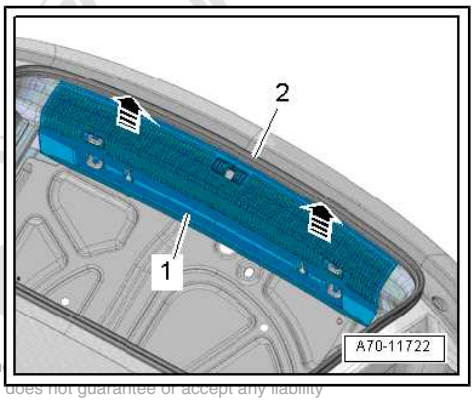


♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
– Take out mounting box for vehicle tool kit.
– Pull off rear lid seal -2- in area of lock carrier trim.
– Working vertically upwards, unclip lock carrier trim -1- in direction of -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Carefully lift off lock carrier trim and unplug electrical connector for rear lid closed sender -G525- / -G526- .



Note

Considerable force is required to unclip the trim from the lock carrier.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Lock carrier trim -1- must engage in eyelets, pins and luggage compartment side trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.6 Exploded view - lock carrier trim”, page 229

7 Roof trim panels

⇒ “7.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim”, page 238

⇒ “7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner”, page 239

⇒ “7.3 Removing and installing moulded headliner”, page 240

⇒ “7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body”, page 243

7.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim

1 - Grab handle

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 29

2 - Sun visor

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 29

3 - Interior light/reading light (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front)

4 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 239

5 - Moulded headliner

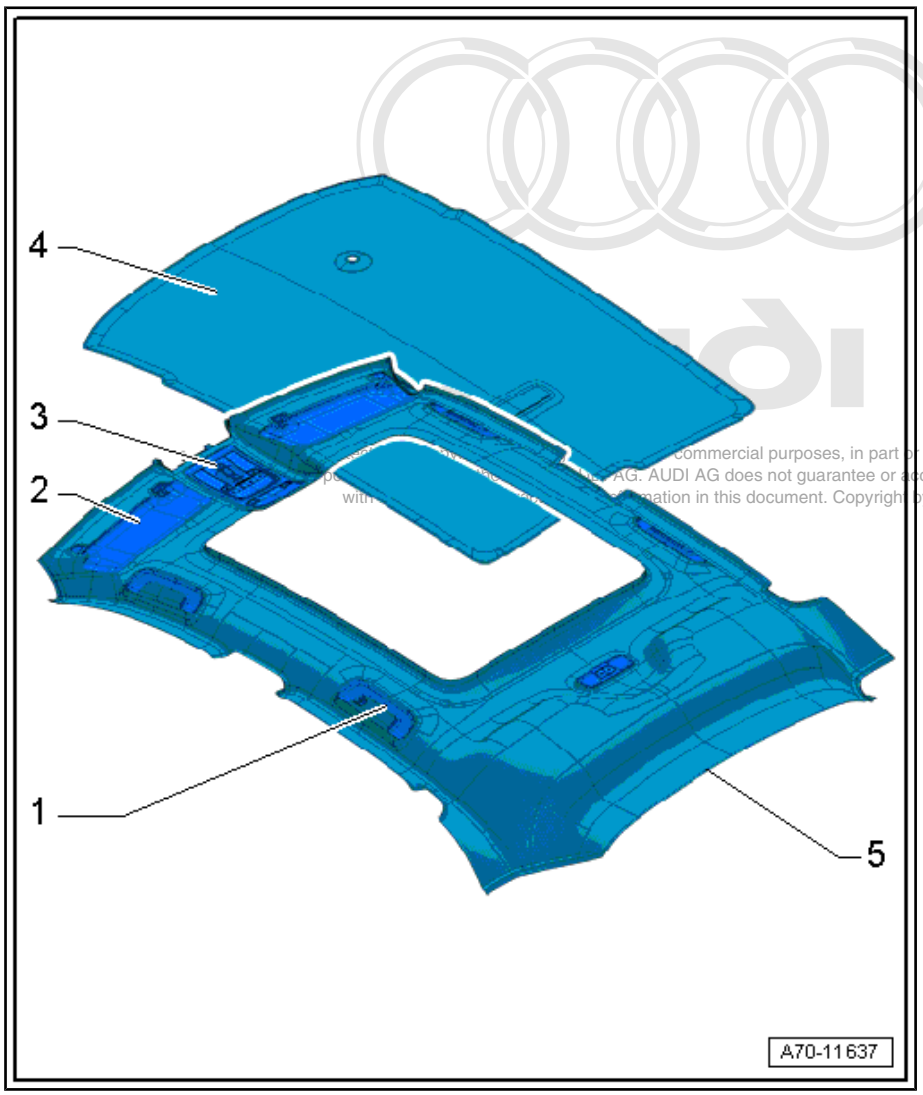
Equipment versions:

- ♦ Without sliding sunroof
- ♦ With sliding sunroof
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 239

Caution

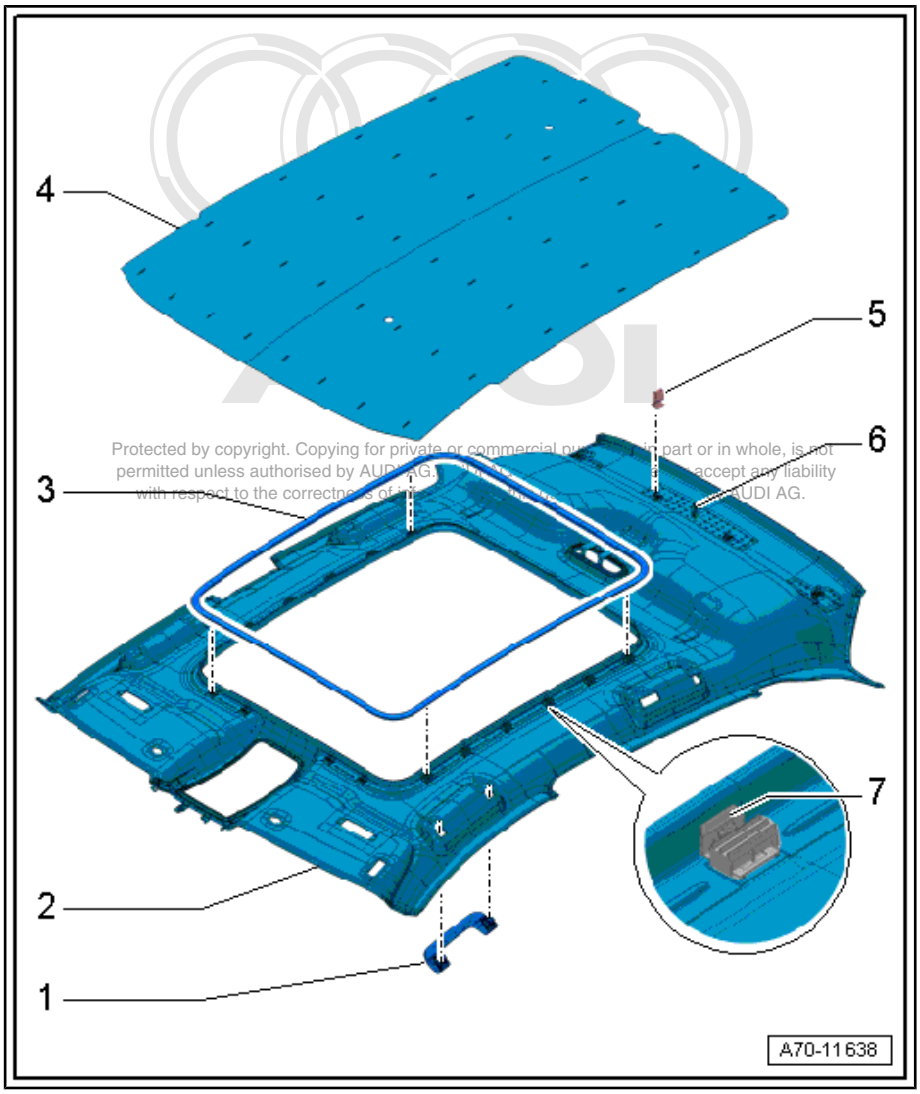
The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.

Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.



commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability mation in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

1 - Grab handle

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 32
- ❑ Press on expanding caps until they engage completely

2 - Moulded headliner

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Without sliding sunroof
- ♦ With sliding sunroof

Different versions. When renewing on equipment version with front camera for driver assist systems - R242- : Determine version ⇒ page 240 ; for assignment refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 240

> **Caution**
>
> *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
>
> *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

3 - Trim frame

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof only

4 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ For equipment version without sliding sunroof only
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 243

5 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

6 - Centring mechanism

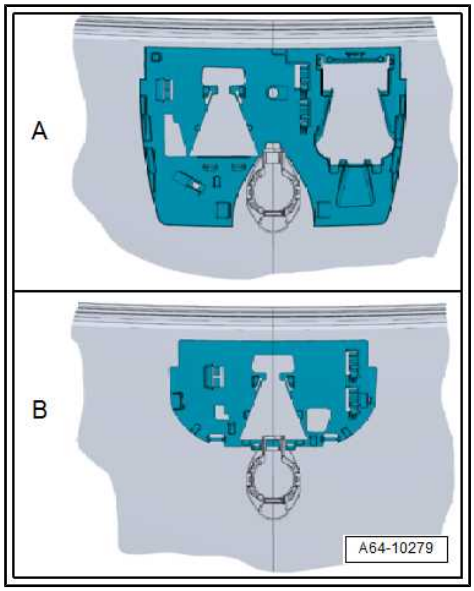
7 - Clip

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ 21x
- ❑ Releasing ⇒ page 242
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in trim frame and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

Assigning moulded headliner to front camera for driver assist systems - R242-

Before ordering a new moulded headliner, the correct version must be determined for vehicles equipped with front camera for driver assist systems - R242- :

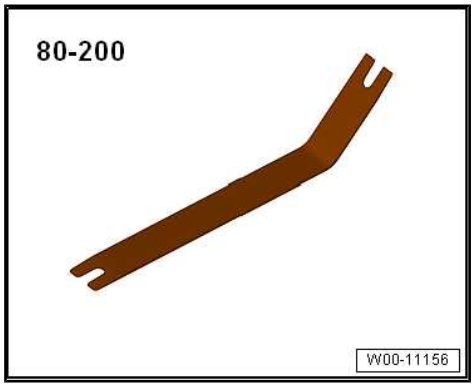
-A-	Retaining plate for front camera for driver assist systems - R242- , version 1 ⇒ Assign moulded headliner version 1
-B-	Retaining plate for front camera for driver assist systems - R242- , version 2 ⇒ Assign moulded headliner version 2



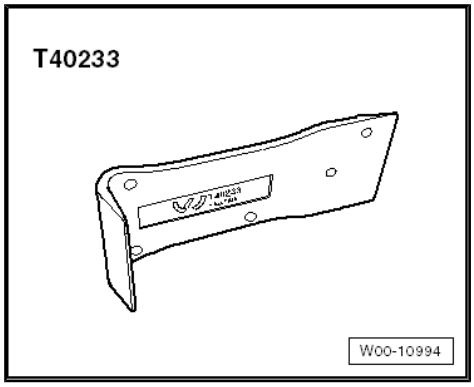
7.3 Removing and installing moulded headliner

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-

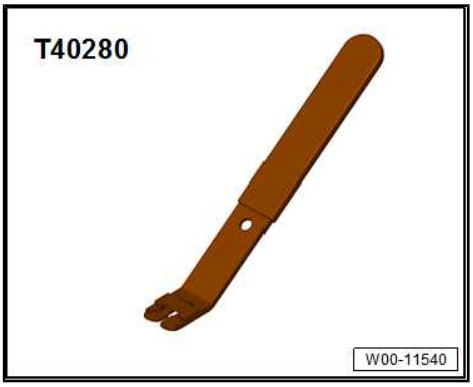


- Removal wedge - T40233-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

WARNING

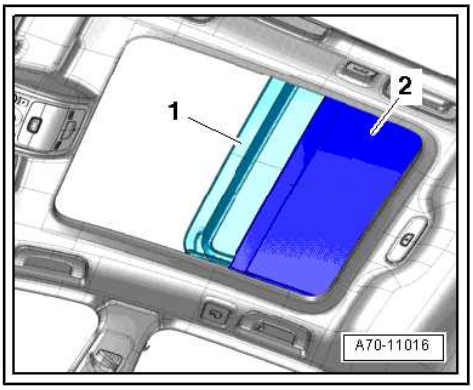
♦ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

– Remove front passenger seat ⇒ page 278 .
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 340 .
– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 342 .
– Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 214 .
– Remove B-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 215 .
– Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 217 .
– Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 219 .
– Remove interior light/reading light (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/ reading light (front) .
– Equipment version with lane departure warning: Remove covers for interior mirror ⇒ page 58 .
– Remove illuminated vanity mirror ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing illuminated vanity mirror -W20- / -W14- .
– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 31 .
– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 31 .
– Remove grab handles ⇒ page 32 .
– Move driver's seat as far forwards and down as it will go.
– Adjust backrest as far backwards and down as it will go.

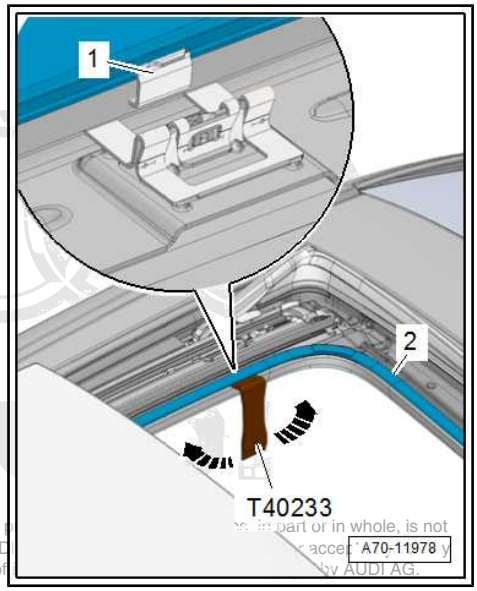
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

– Fully open sunroof -1-.
– Open sun blind -2- approx. $^{2}/_{3}$.



– Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.
– Insert
removal wedge - T40233- between trim frame -2- for sunroof opening and moulded headliner.
– Release trim frame from retainers -1- one after the other using removal wedge - T40233- as shown -arrows-.



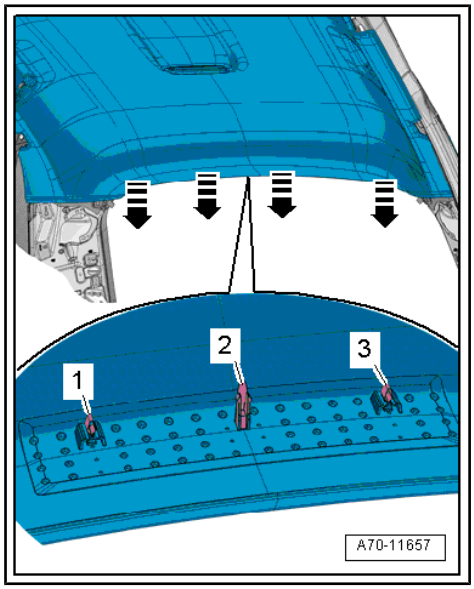
Protected by copyright. Copying for p
permitted unless authorised by AUD
with respect to the correctness of
part or in whole, is not
acce
by AUDI AG.

All vehicles (continued):

Caution

- *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

– Unclip moulded headliner (rear) from clips -1- and -3- on body -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Unclip moulded headliner (rear) at centring pin -2- from body; to do so, release retaining tabs with a screwdriver.

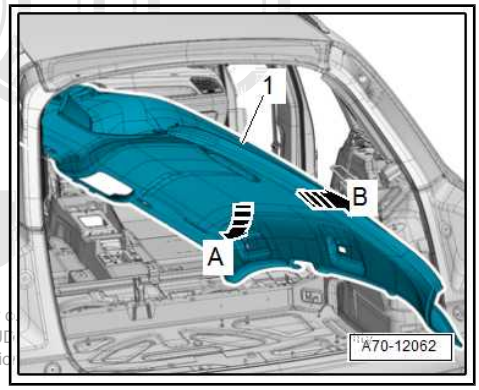


Note

A second mechanic is required to unfasten the last connections and take out the moulded headliner.

– Lower moulded headliner -1- on right side of vehicle -arrow A-.

– Carefully pull moulded headliner out through rear lid opening -arrow B-.



Installing

– Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.

– Install centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 31.

– Press clips at rear of moulded headliner into mounting points in body until they engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner", page 239

7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body

Special tools and workshop equipment required

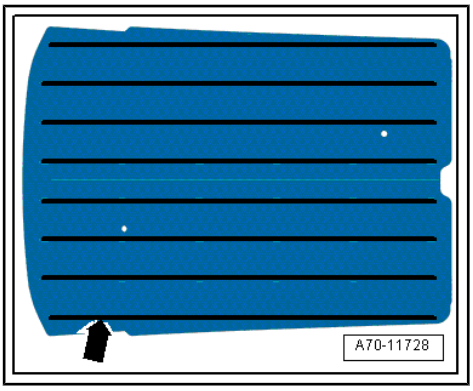
- Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 240 .

– Apply adhesive beads -arrow- to roof reinforcement as shown in illustration.

- Thickness of adhesive beads: approx. 8 mm
- Apply adhesive beads according to markings on roof reinforcement.



– Position roof reinforcement -2- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -1-.

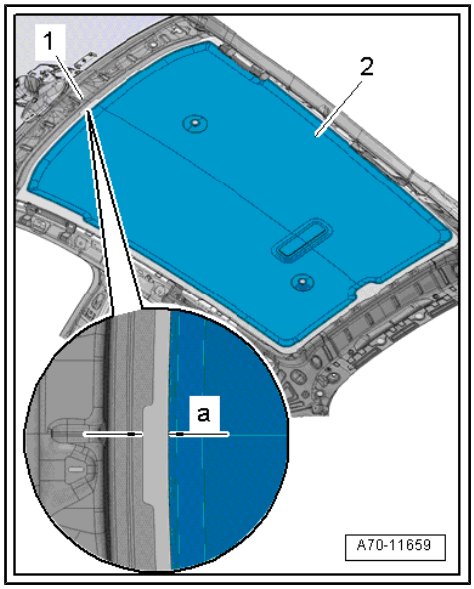
• Dimension -a- = 20 mm

– Press roof reinforcement onto surface of roof.

– Wipe off any surplus adhesive.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner”, page 239



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

72 – Seat frames

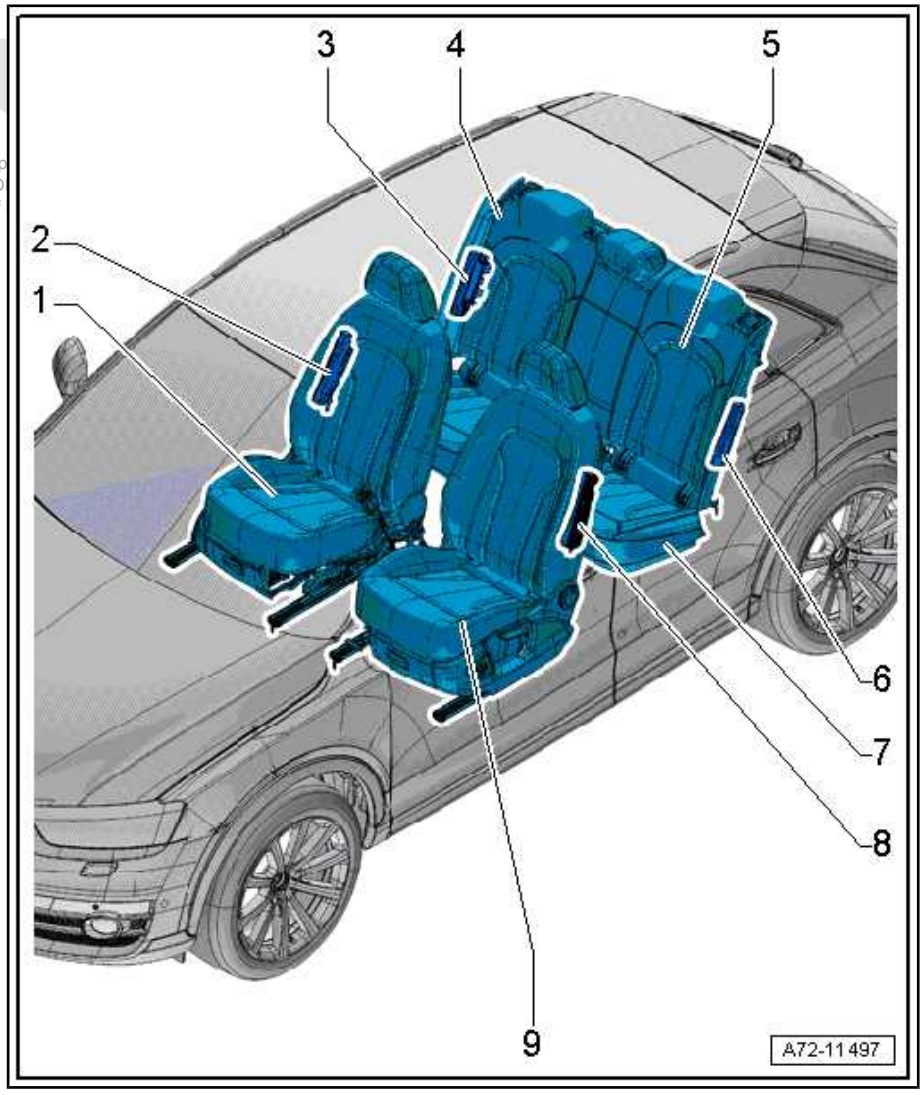
1 Overview - seat versions

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions”, page 245

⇒ “1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand”, page 246

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions

Protected by copyright. Copying for p
permitted unless authorised by AUD
with respect to the correctness of



1 - Front passenger seat

Standard seat/sports seat (with manual adjustment)
Equipment versions:

- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Lumbar support
- ♦ Drawer for standard seat
- ♦ Storage compartment for sports seat
- ♦ Footwell light
- ♦ Child seat anchor
- ♦ Seat rake adjustment for sports seat only
- ♦ Seat depth adjustment for sports seat only
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 252

Folding seat (with manual adjustment)
Equipment versions:

- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Drawer
- ♦ Child seat anchor
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 254

Standard seat/sports seat (with electric adjustment)
Equipment versions:

- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Storage compartment
- ♦ Footwell light
- ♦ Child seat anchor
- ♦ Seat depth adjustment for sports seat only
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 255

2 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ With side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 123

3 - Side airbag (rear)

- ❑ With rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 124

4 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)

Equipment version:
- With/without load-through hatch
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 337

5 - 1/3 section of rear seat backrest (left-side)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 337

6 - Side airbag (rear)
- ❑ With rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 124

7 - Rear seat bench
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 333

8 - Side airbag (front)
- ❑ With side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 123

9 - Driver seat

Standard seat/sports seat (with manual adjustment)
Equipment versions:
- Seat/backrest heating
- Lumbar support
- Drawer for standard seat
- Storage compartment for sports seat
- Footwell light
- Seat rake adjustment for sports seat only
- Seat depth adjustment for sports seat only
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 252

Standard seat/sports seat (with electric adjustment)
Equipment versions:
- Seat/backrest heating
- Storage compartment
- Footwell light
- Seat depth adjustment for sports seat only
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 255

1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand

Special tools and workshop equipment required
- Engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG with respect to the correctness of information in G

♦ Seat repair stand - VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Attaching front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-

- Front seat removed from vehicle ⇒ page 278

– Attach seat repair stand - VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095- .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- .

2 Front seats

⇒ “2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components”, page 248

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - front seat”, page 252

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest”, page 257

⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - head restraint”, page 262

⇒ “2.5 Exploded view - seat pan”, page 263

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing front seat”, page 278

⇒ “2.7 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter”, page 284

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 288

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing seat rake adjuster”, page 291

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit”, page 297

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 301

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 308

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 308

⇒ “2.14 Dismantling and assembling seat pan”, page 310

⇒ “2.15 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism”, page 329

⇒ “2.16 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 ”, page 330

⇒ “2.17 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 ”, page 330

⇒ “2.18 Removing and installing heated front seats control unit J774 ”, page 332

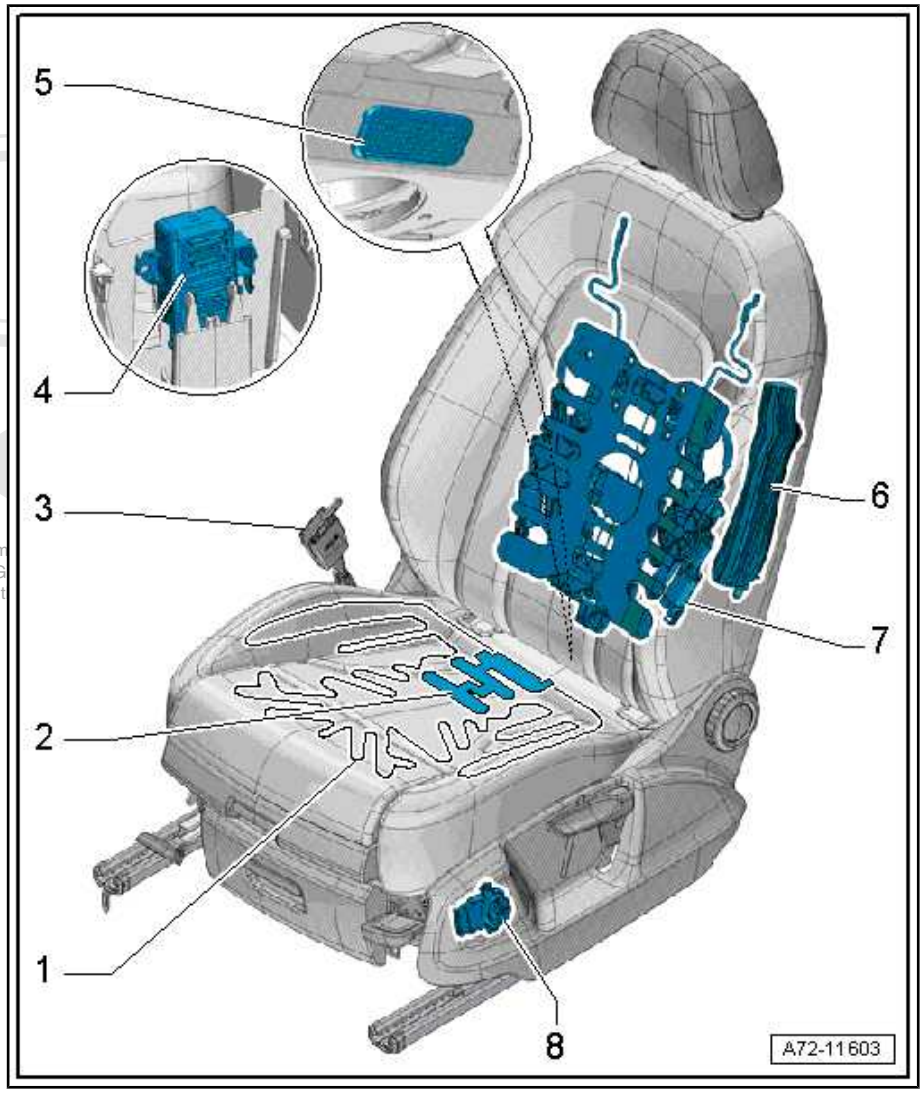
Audi
Reproduction and distribution of this document, or any part thereof, in whole, is not permitted without written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components

⇒ “2.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, front seat with manual adjustment”, page 248

⇒ “2.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, front seat with electric adjustment”, page 250

2.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, front seat with manual adjustment



1 - Heated seat cushion for front left seat - Z45- / heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front right seat - Z46- / heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing heating element ⇒ page 367

2 - Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

- ❑ Equipment version (passenger side only)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 149

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in t

3 - Driver side belt switch - E24-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91

4 - Heated front seats control unit - J774-

- ❑ Only for vehicles with front seat heating and manual air conditioner
- ❑ Fitting location: on bracket for centre console behind insert for centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 332
- ❑ Press in until it engages audibly

5 - Rear left footwell light - W45-

- ❑ Right side: rear right footwell light - W46-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear footwell light -W45- / -W46-

6 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 123

7 - Lumbar support

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125- / driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-

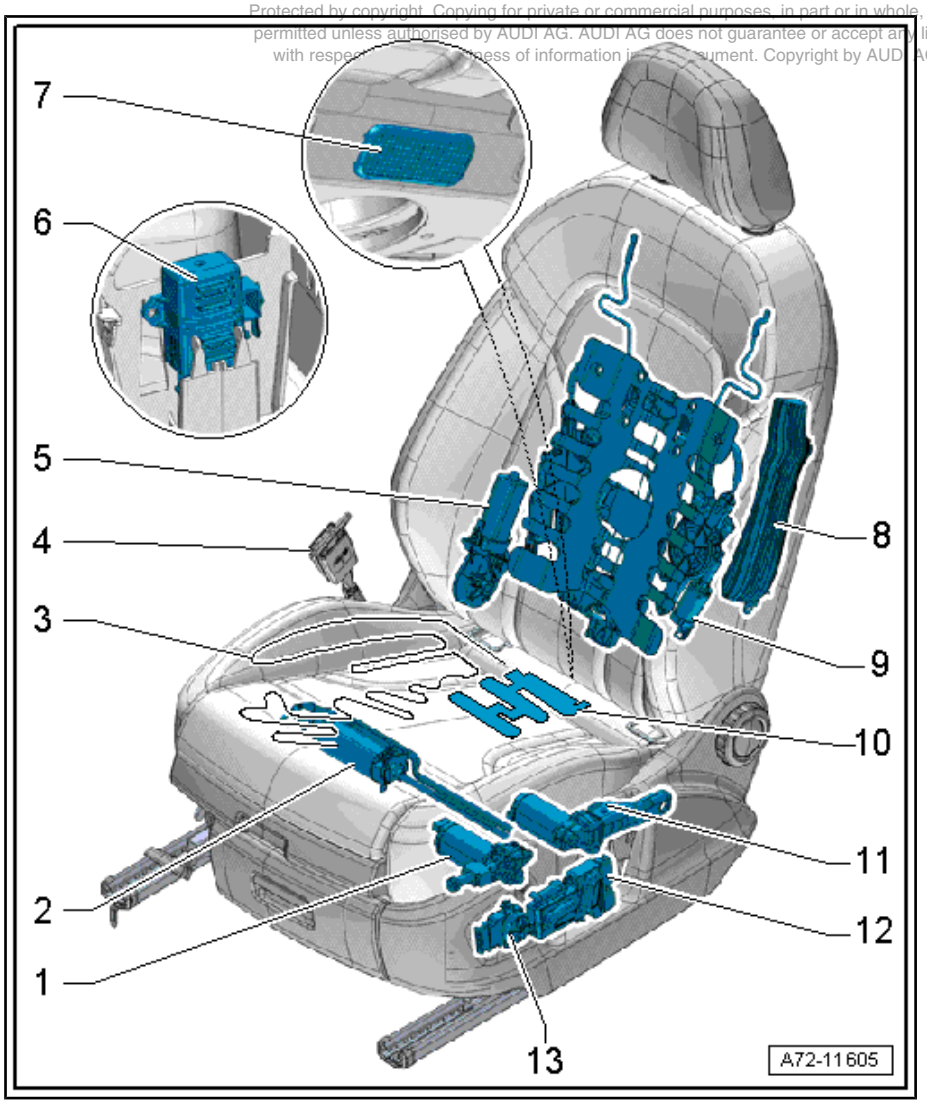
- Exploded view ⇒ page 260

8 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 270

2.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, front seat with electric adjustment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 274

2 - Driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
- Integrated into lower seat pan frame; if defective, renew lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 327

3 - Heated seat cushion for front left seat - Z45- / heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

- Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front right seat - Z46- / heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- Depending on equipment version
- Removing and installing heating element ⇒ page 368 , ⇒ page 370

4 - Driver side belt switch - E24-

- Passenger side: front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 91

5 - Driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 261

6 - Heated front seats control unit - J774-

- Only for vehicles with front seat heating and manual air conditioner
- Fitting location: on bracket for centre console behind insert for centre console
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 332
- Press in until it engages audibly

7 - Rear left footwell light - W45-

- ❑ Right side: rear right footwell light - W46-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear footwell light -W45- / -W46-

8 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 123

9 - Lumbar support

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. Administration does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125- / driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 260

10 - Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

- ❑ Equipment version (passenger side only)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 149

11 - Driver seat height adjustment motor - V245-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 272

12 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270

13 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270

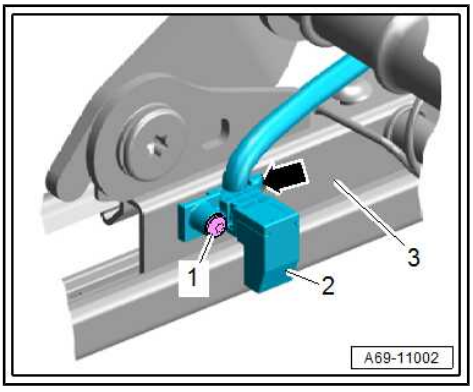
Seat position sensor - NAR version

♦ Fitting location: front seat, seat rail (tunnel side)

1 - Bolt

2 - Driver side seat position sensor - G553- / front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-

3 - Seat frame



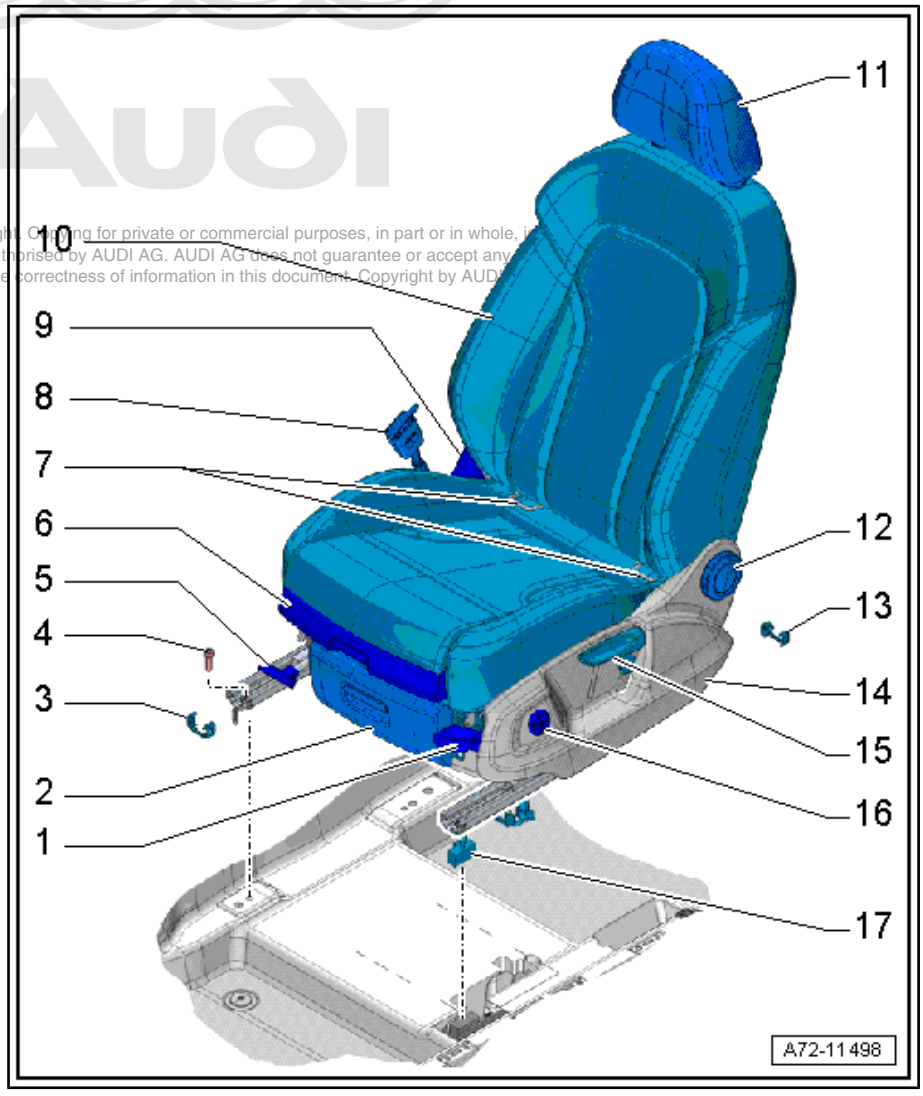
2.2 Exploded view - front seat

⇒ “2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment”, page 252

⇒ “2.2.2 Exploded view - front seat, folding front passenger's seat”, page 254

⇒ “2.2.3 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment”, page 255

2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Seat rake adjuster

- ❑ For sports seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 273
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 292

2 - Drawer/storage compartment

- ❑ Exploded view of drawer ⇒ page 275
- ❑ Removing and installing drawer ⇒ page 319
- ❑ Exploded view of storage compartment ⇒ page 276
- ❑ Removing and installing storage compartment ⇒ page 319

3 - Cover (front)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 311
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 50 Nm

5 - Seat longitudinal adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing handle ⇒ page 312

6 - Seat depth adjuster

- ❑ For sports seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 277
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 320

7 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ For front passenger's seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 93
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 13

8 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91

9 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 318

10 - Standard seat/sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Lumbar support
- ♦ Footwell light

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 278

11 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308

12 - Adjuster knob

- ❑ For backrest adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297

13 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 311
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

14 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 312

15 - Seat height adjustment unit

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 271
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288

16 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

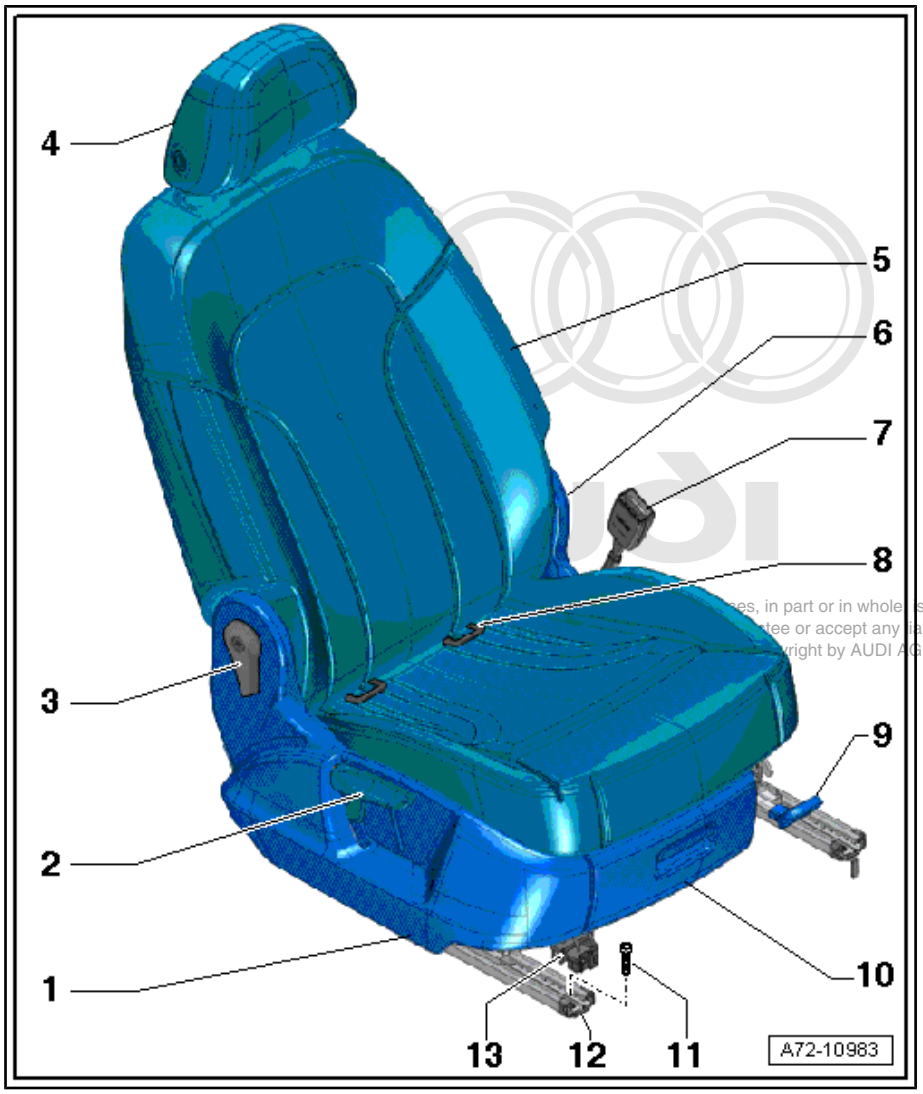
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 330
- ❑ Removing and installing lumbar support ⇒ page 330

17 - Electrical connector

- ❑ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ❑ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ page 310
- ❑ Connector point and connector assignment ⇒ page 284

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.2 Exploded view - front seat, folding front passenger's seat



1 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 266
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 314

2 - Seat height adjustment unit

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 271
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288
- ❑ Slide handle on and press on as far as stop

3 - Release lever

- ❑ For backrest
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 266
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 329
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

4 - Head restraint

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 262
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308

5 - Front folding seat

- ❑ Passenger side only
- ❑ On the folding front passenger's seat, the upper and lower seat pan frame should not be separated
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 278

6 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 266
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 318

7 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 77
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91

8 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 93
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96
- ❑ Checks to be performed following an accident ⇒ page 13

9 - Seat longitudinal adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing handle ⇒ page 312
- ❑ Slide handle on and press on as far as stop

10 - Drawer

- ❑ Depending on equipment version

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 275
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 319

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 50 Nm

12 - Cover

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 311
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

13 - Electrical connector

- ❑ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ❑ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ page 310
- ❑ Connector point and connector assignment ⇒ page 284

2.2.3 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment

1 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 276
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 319

2 - Cover (front)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 311
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

3 - Bolt

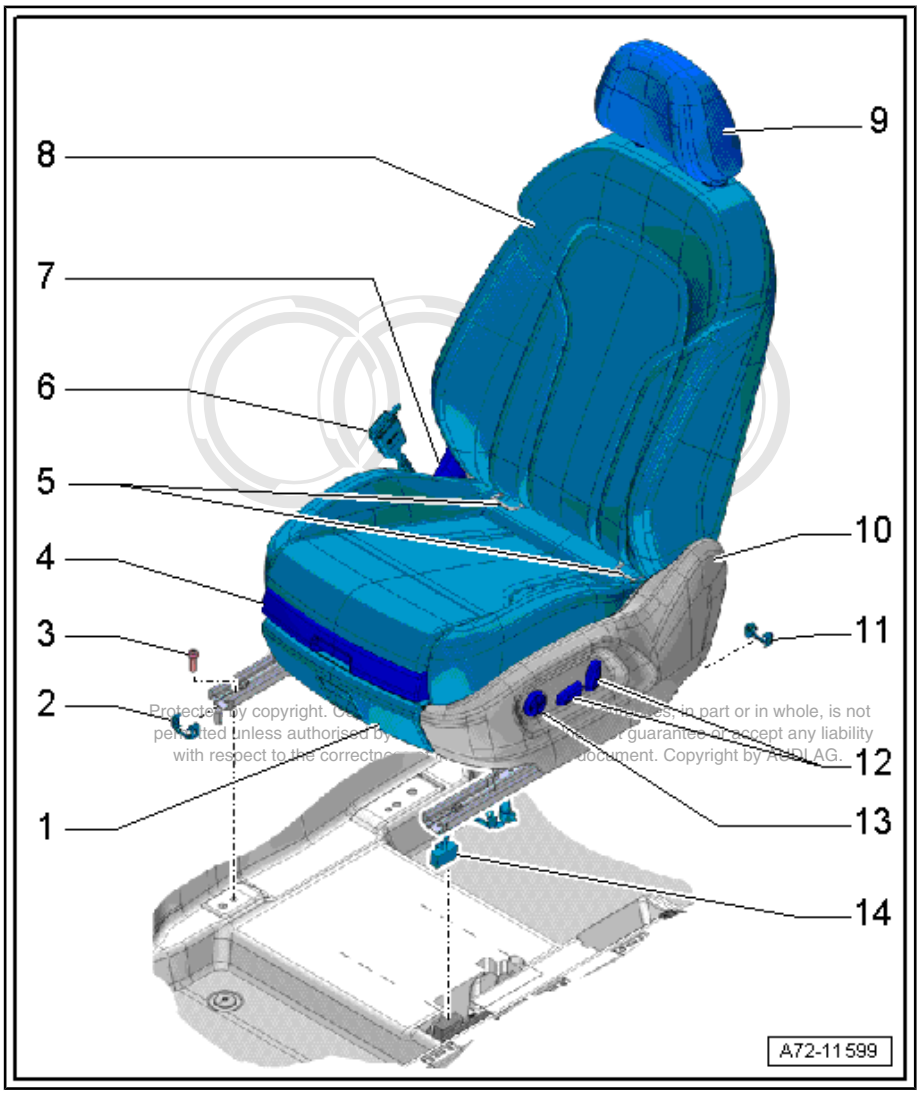
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 50 Nm

4 - Seat depth adjuster

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ For sports seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 277
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 320

5 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ For front passenger's seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 93
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 13



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91

7 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 318

8 - Standard seat/sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ♦ Seat/backrest heating
- ♦ Footwell light
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 278

9 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308

10 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 316

11 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 311
- ❑ Slide onto seat rail until it engages audibly

12 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 317

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 330
- ❑ Removing and installing lumbar support ⇒ page 330

14 - Electrical connector

- ❑ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ❑ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ page 310

2.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest

⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat”, page 257

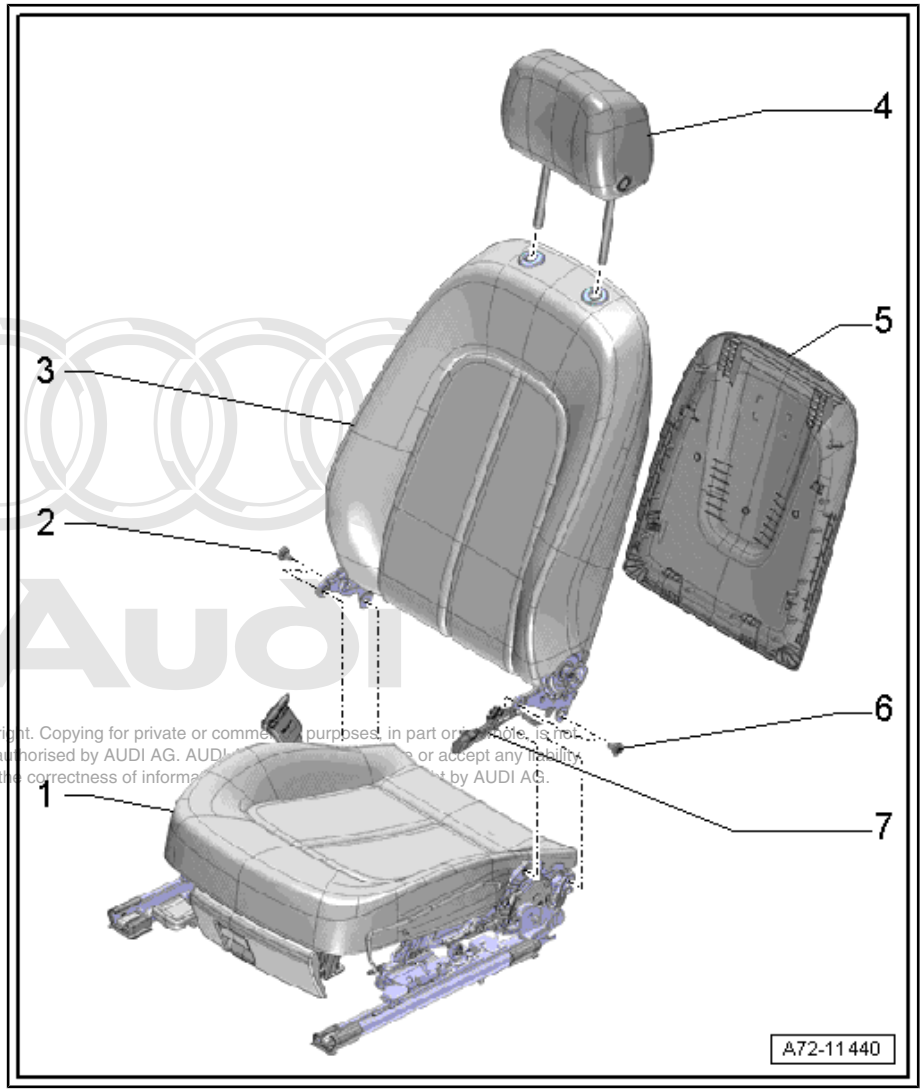
⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest, folding front passenger's seat”, page 258

⇒ “2.3.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, spring mat”, page 259

⇒ “2.3.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support”, page 260

⇒ “2.3.5 Exploded view - front backrest adjustment motor”, page 261

2.3.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat



1 - Seat pan

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 33 Nm

3 - Backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 302

4 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308

5 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Equipment version with luggage net; luggage net cannot be separated from backrest cover panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 301
- ❑ Hook in at outer backrest frame (top) and press on until it engages audibly

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 33 Nm

7 - Electrical wiring harness

- ❑ From side airbag to connector point
- ❑ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wiring harnesses, e.g. for backrest heating, lumbar support

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information contained in this document by AUDI AG.

2.3.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest, folding front passenger's seat

1 - Wiring harness

- ❑ Continuous from side airbag to connector point
- ❑ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wiring harnesses, e.g. seat heating

2 - Bolts

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 33 Nm

3 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308
- ❑ Must be properly locked in head restraint guides

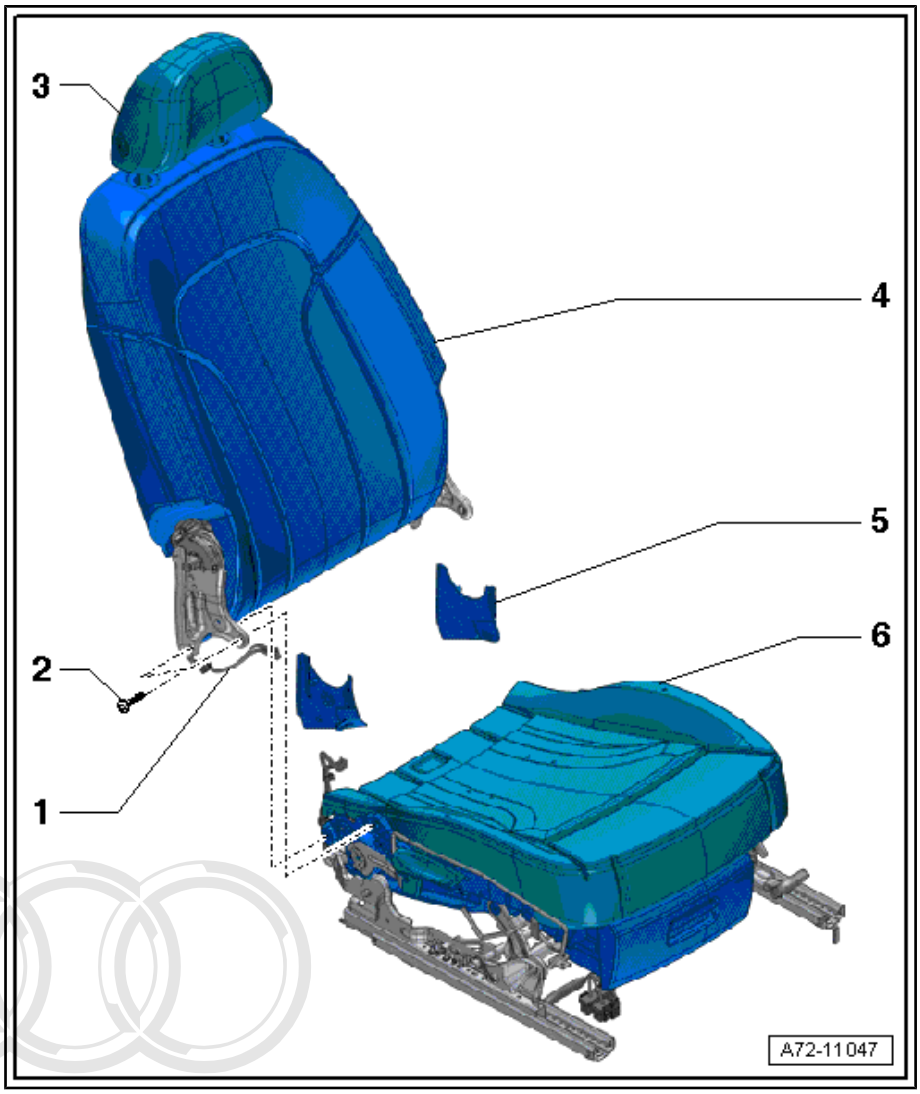
4 - Backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 304

5 - Backrest cover panel (side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 302

6 - Seat pan



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, spring mat

1 - Spring mat

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 306
- ❑ Can be removed and installed with or without extension springs

2 - Extension spring (bottom)

- ❑ Not available as separate part

3 - Extension spring (centre)

- ❑ Not available as separate part

4 - Extension spring (centre)

- ❑ Not available as separate part

5 - Extension spring (top)

- ❑ Not available as separate part

6 - Outer backrest frame

7 - Extension spring (top)

- ❑ Not available as separate part

8 - Extension spring (centre)

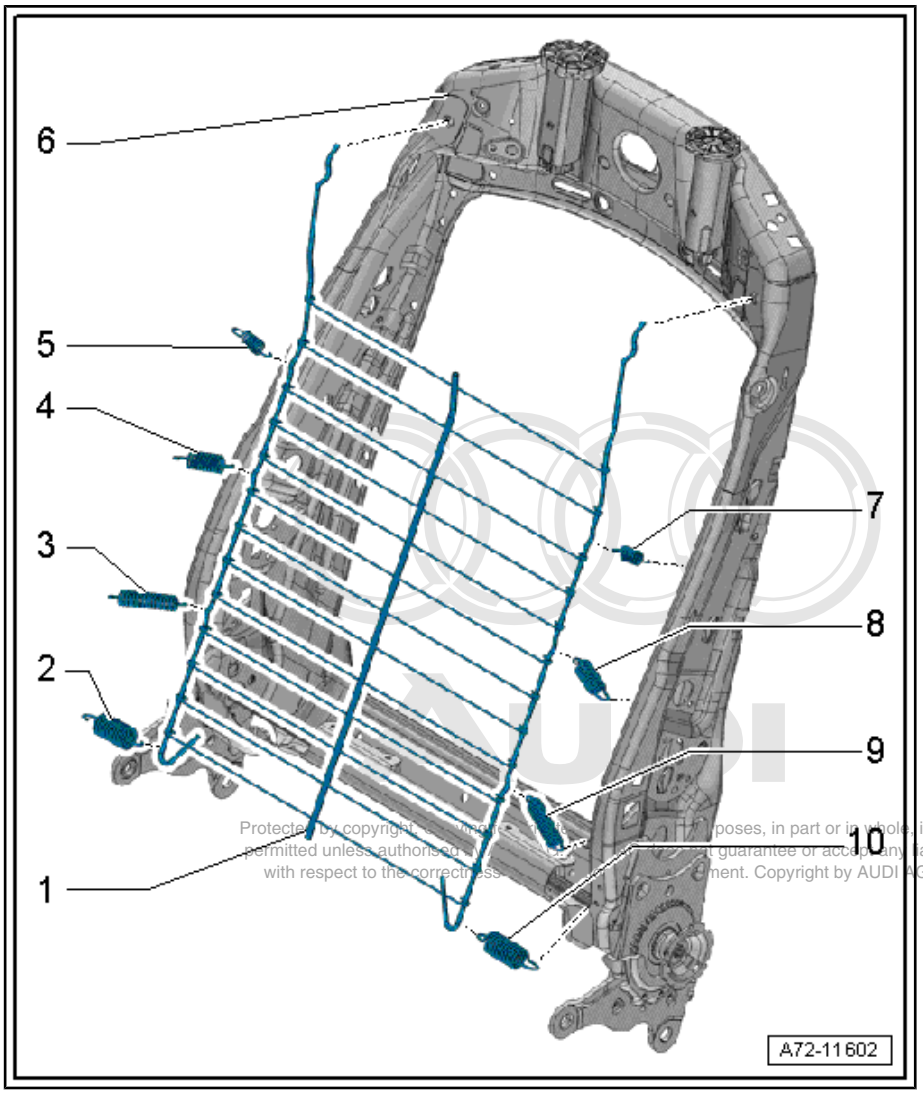
- ❑ Not available as separate part

9 - Extension spring (centre)

- ❑ Not available as separate part

10 - Extension spring (bottom)

- ❑ Not available as separate part



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support

1 - Not available as a separate replacement part

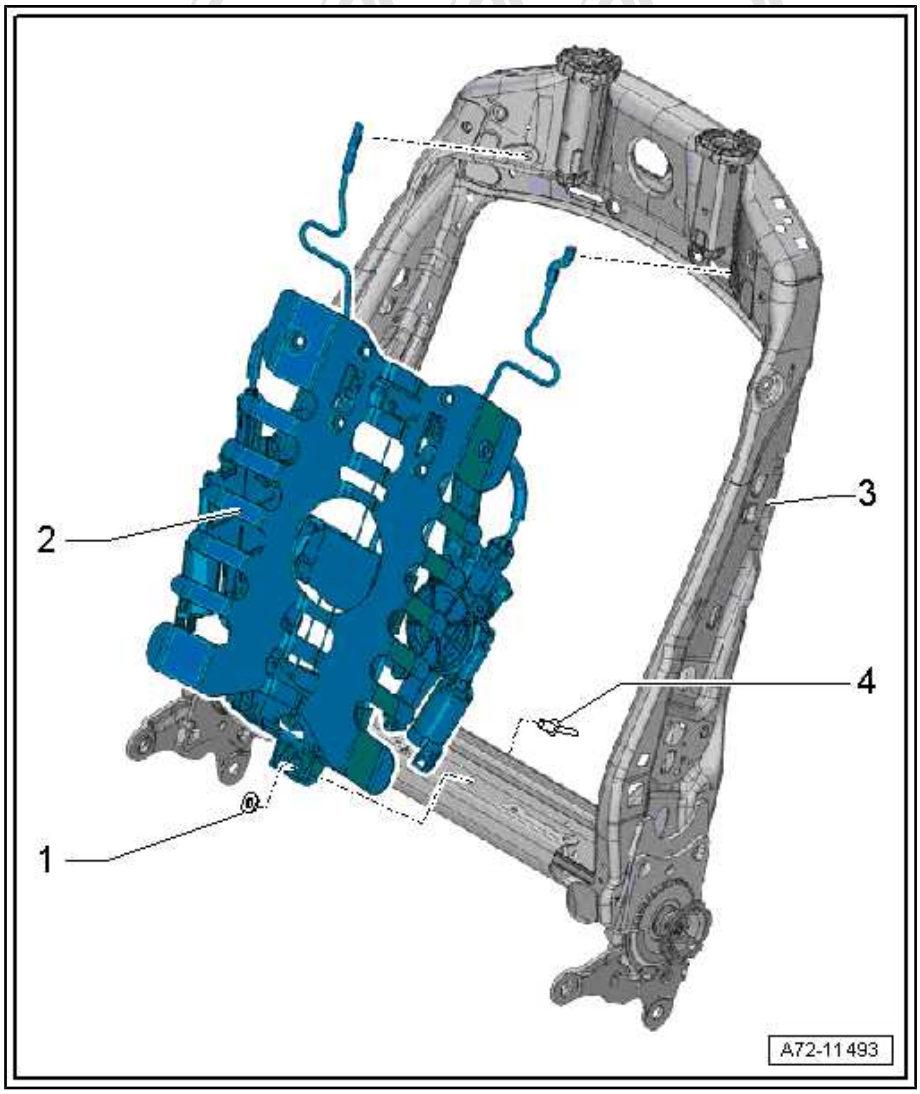
- ❑ Washer (moulded into lumbar support)

2 - Lumbar support

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125- / driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 330

3 - Outer backrest frame

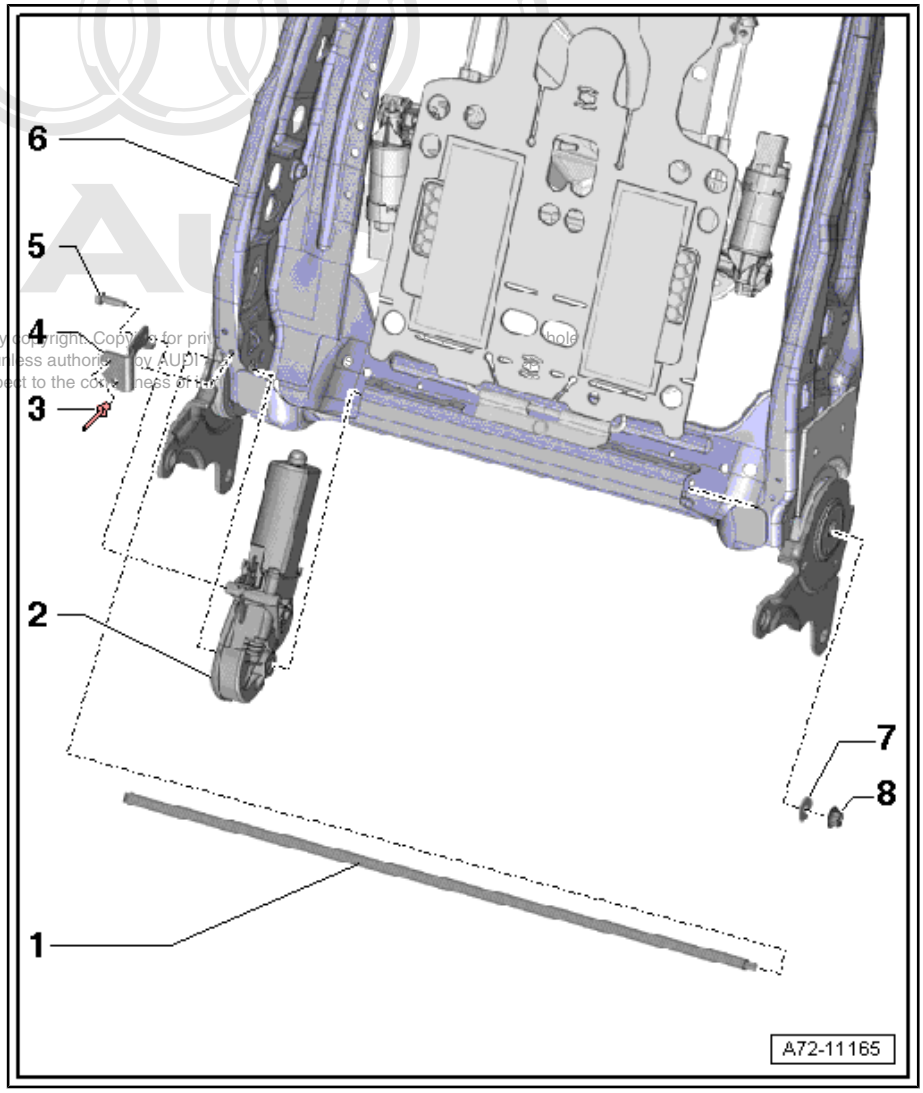
4 - Rivet



2.3.5 Exploded view - front backrest adjustment motor

Note

For greater clarity the backrest padding and cover are not shown in the illustration.



1 - Adjusting shaft

- ❑ Clean threaded section for nut -item 8- using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Before fitting nut, apply locking fluid to threaded section of adjusting shaft; for locking fluid refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297

3 - Rivet

- ❑ 2x

4 - Bracket

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 3.7 Nm

6 - Outer backrest frame

7 - Washer

8 - Nut

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 6 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Exploded view - head restraint

1 - Head restraint guide (right-side)

- ❑ Without release button
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308

2 - Cover

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Attached to backrest cover

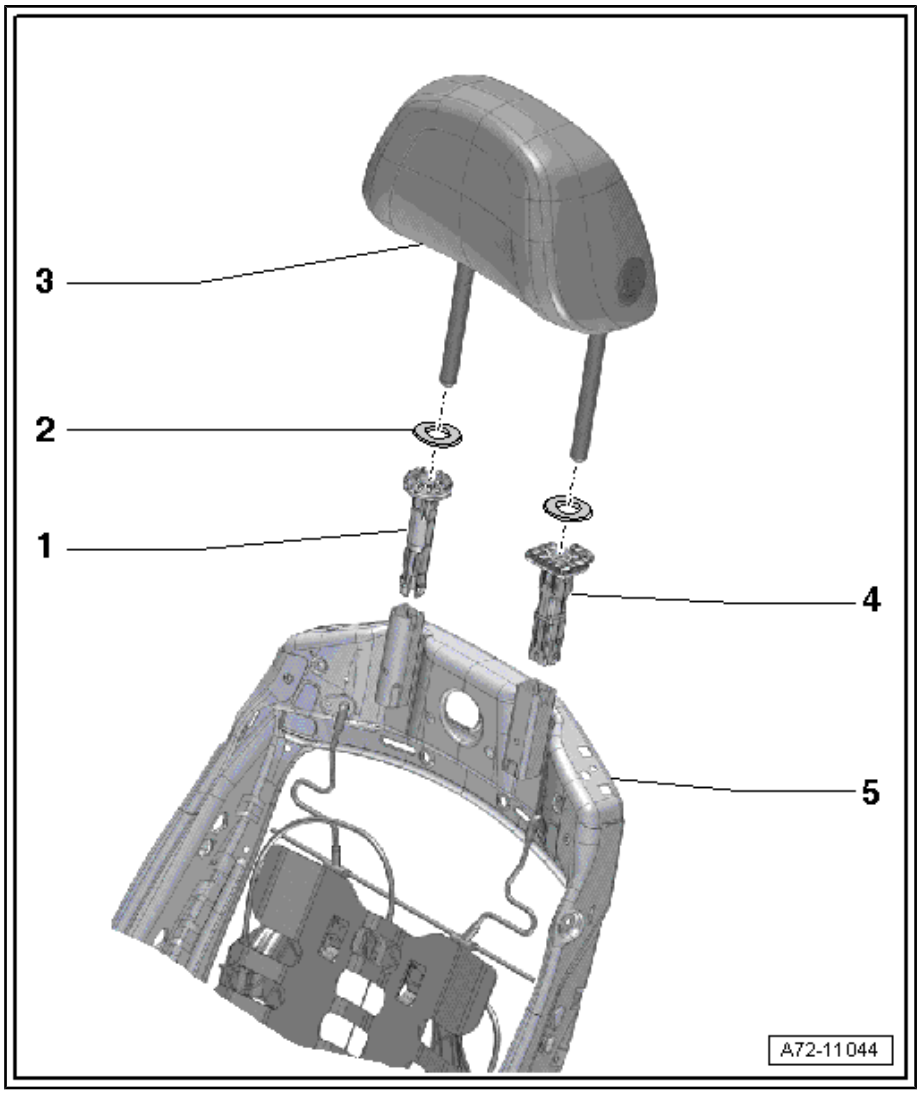
3 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308
- ❑ Must be properly locked in head restraint guides

4 - Head restraint guide (left-side)

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308

5 - Outer backrest frame



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5 Exploded view - seat pan

⇒ “2.5.1 Exploded view - seat pan, modular wire routing”, page 263

⇒ “2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with manual adjustment”, page 265

⇒ “2.5.3 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on folding front passenger's seat”, page 266

⇒ “2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with electric adjustment”, page 268

⇒ “2.5.5 Exploded view - seat pan, lumbar support adjustment switches”, page 269

⇒ “2.5.6 Exploded view - seat pan, operating unit for electric seat adjustment”, page 270

⇒ “2.5.7 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster”, page 271

⇒ “2.5.8 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjustment motor”, page 272

⇒ “2.5.9 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster”, page 273

⇒ “2.5.10 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjustment motor”, page 274

⇒ “2.5.11 Exploded view - seat pan, drawer”, page 275

⇒ “2.5.12 Exploded view - seat pan, storage compartment”, page 276

⇒ “2.5.13 Exploded view - seat pan, seat depth adjuster”, page 277

⇒ “2.5.14 Exploded view - seat pan, front seat with electric adjustment”, page 278

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.1 Exploded view - seat pan, modular wire routing

1 - Upper shell for corrugated tube

- ❑ Must be flush with cable retainer
- ❑ Must be flush with lower shell of corrugated tube

2 - Wiring harness

- ❑ Do not twist inserted wires

3 - Cable retainer (rear)

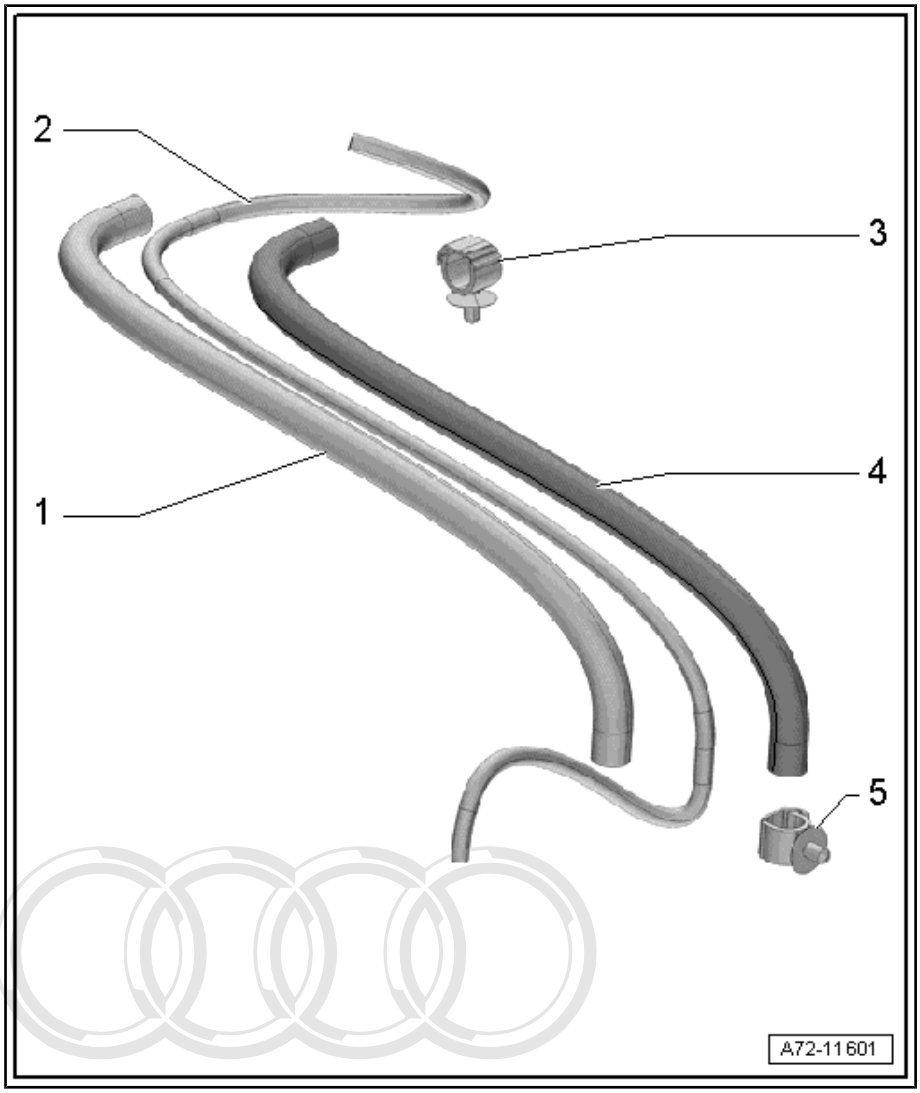
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location when installing
- ❑ Clip into lower seat pan frame

4 - Lower shell for corrugated tube

- ❑ Must be flush with cable retainer
- ❑ Must be flush with upper shell of corrugated tube

5 - Cable retainer (front)

- ❑ Re-attach at the same location when installing
- ❑ Clip into side member



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with manual adjustment

1 - Seat side trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 312

2 - Front seat

3 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 318

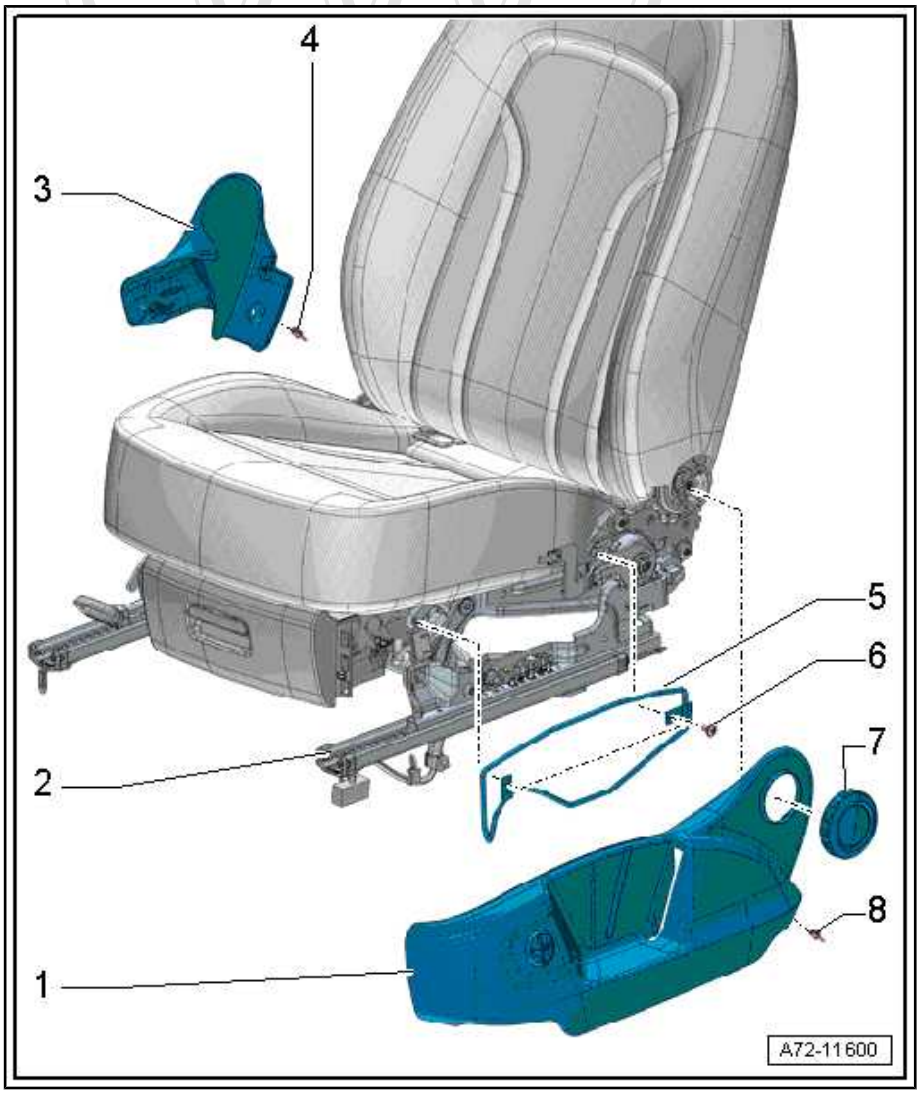
4 - Spreader rivet

5 - Bracket
- ❑ For seat side trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.14.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat with manual adjustment”, page 312

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Adjuster knob
- ❑ For backrest adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

8 - Spreader rivet



2.5.3 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on folding front passenger's seat

Seat side trim (sill/tunnel side)



1 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ❑ Can be renewed with seat installed
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 314
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely at bracket

2 - Fastener

3 - Cap

- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

4 - Release lever

- ❑ For backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 329
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

5 - Fastener

6 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Can only be renewed after removing seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 318

7 - Front folding seat

- ❑ Front passenger seat only

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

9 - Seat height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 288
- ❑ Slide handle on and press on as far as stop

Bracket for seat side trim (sill side)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

1 - Front seat

2 - Bolt

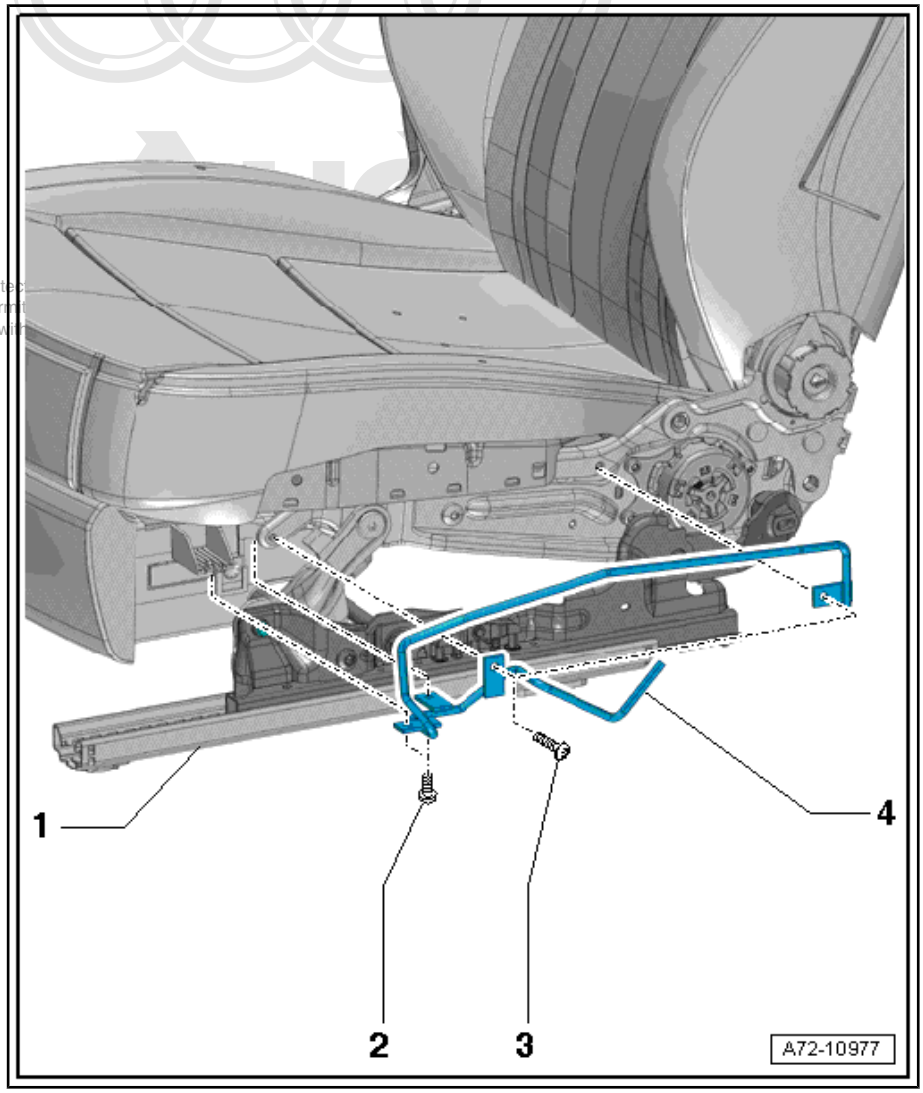
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Bracket

- ❑ For seat side trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.14.5 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - folding front passenger's seat”, page 314



2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with electric adjustment

1 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 8 Nm

2 - Front seat

3 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 318

4 - Spreader rivet

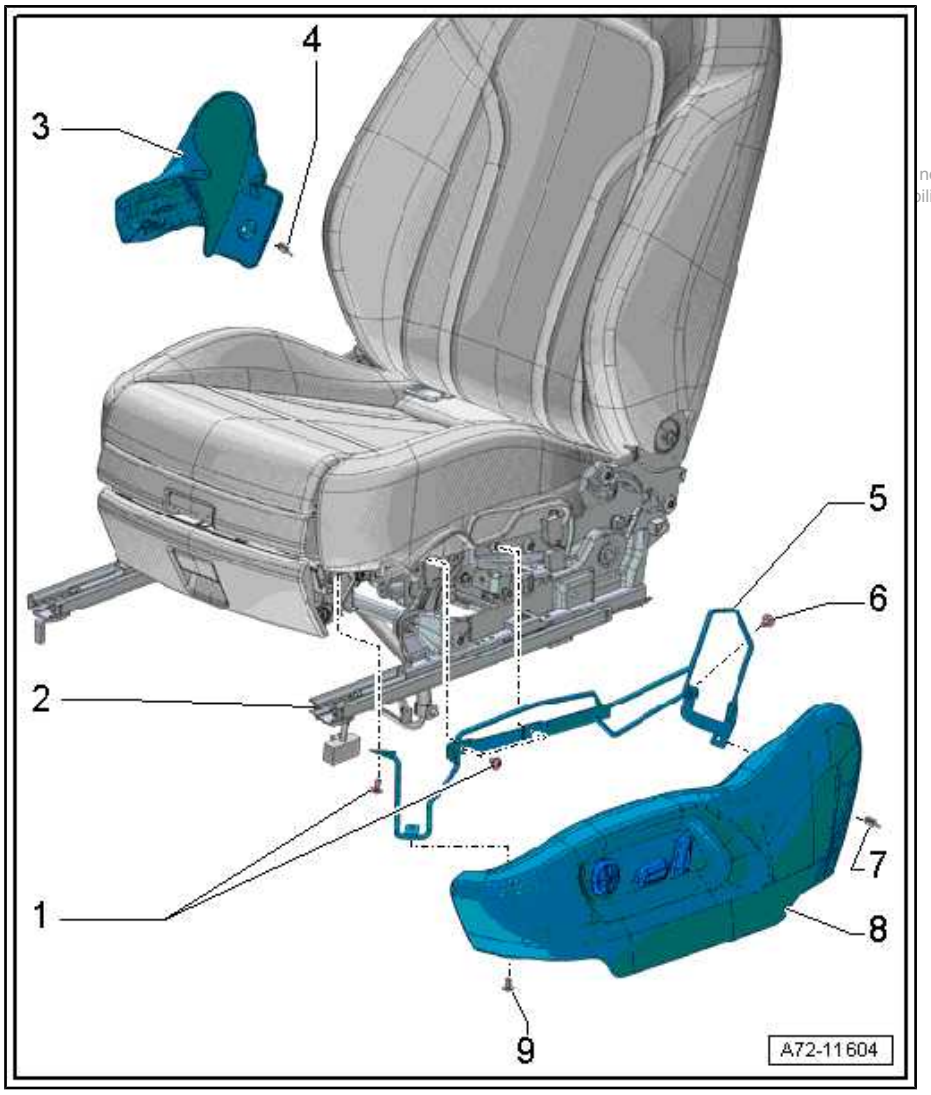
5 - Bracket for seat side trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.14.6 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat with electric adjustment”, page 316

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Spreader rivet

8 - Seat side trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 316
- ❑ Engage at bracket and storage compartment

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm



2.5.5 Exploded view - seat pan, lumbar support adjustment switches

1 - Seat side trim (sill side)

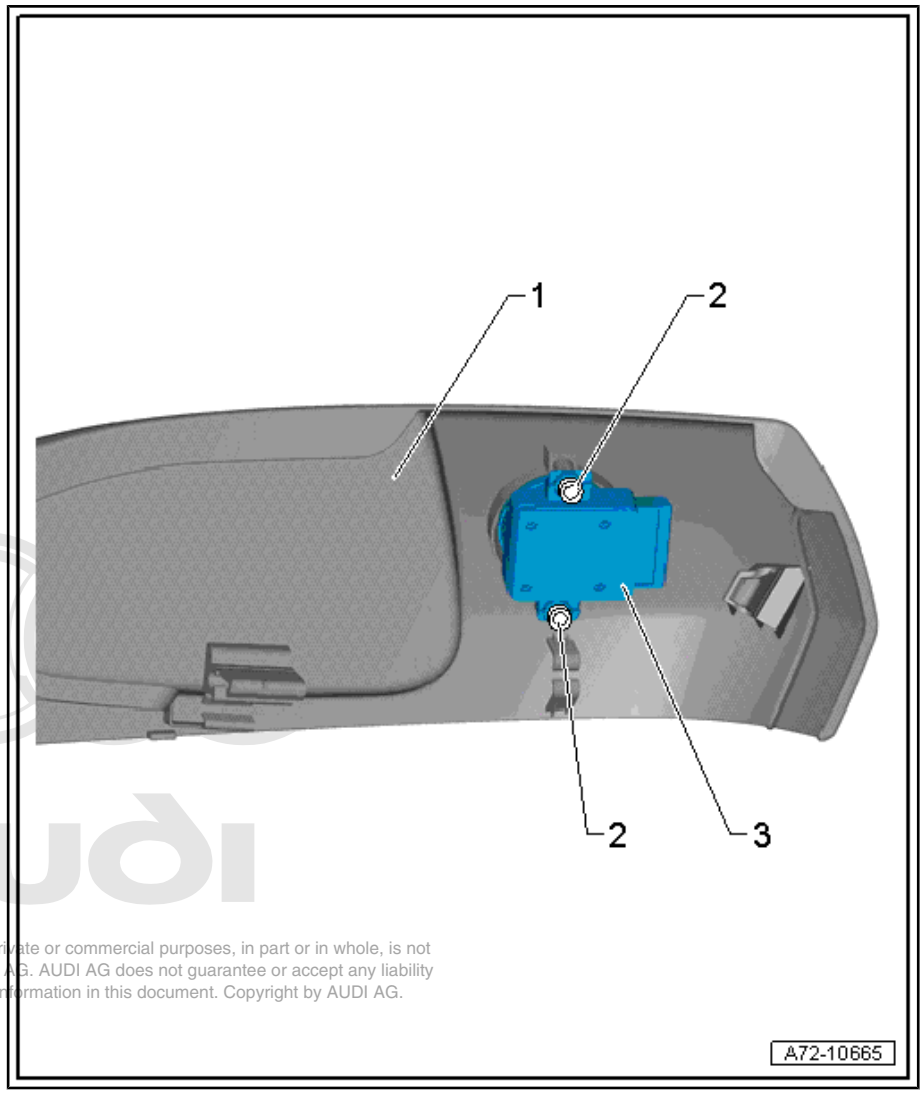
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 316

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.3 Nm

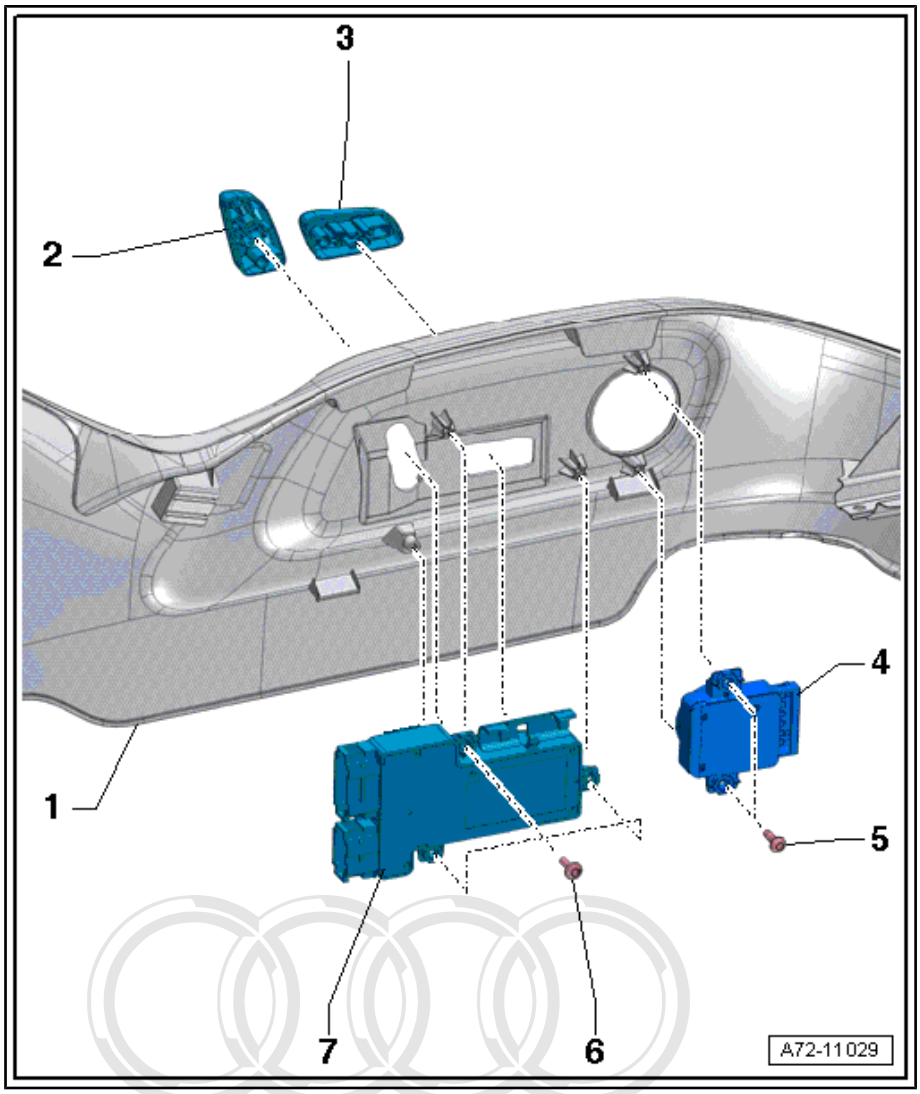
3 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 330



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.6 Exploded view - seat pan, operating unit for electric seat adjustment



1 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 316

2 - Actuator

- ❑ For backrest adjustment
- ❑ Clipped on
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.14.7 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit E470 / E471 ”, page 317
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

3 - Actuator

- ❑ For seat adjustment
- ❑ Clipped on
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.14.7 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit E470 / E471 ”, page 317
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

4 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 330

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.3 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 1.3 Nm

7 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-

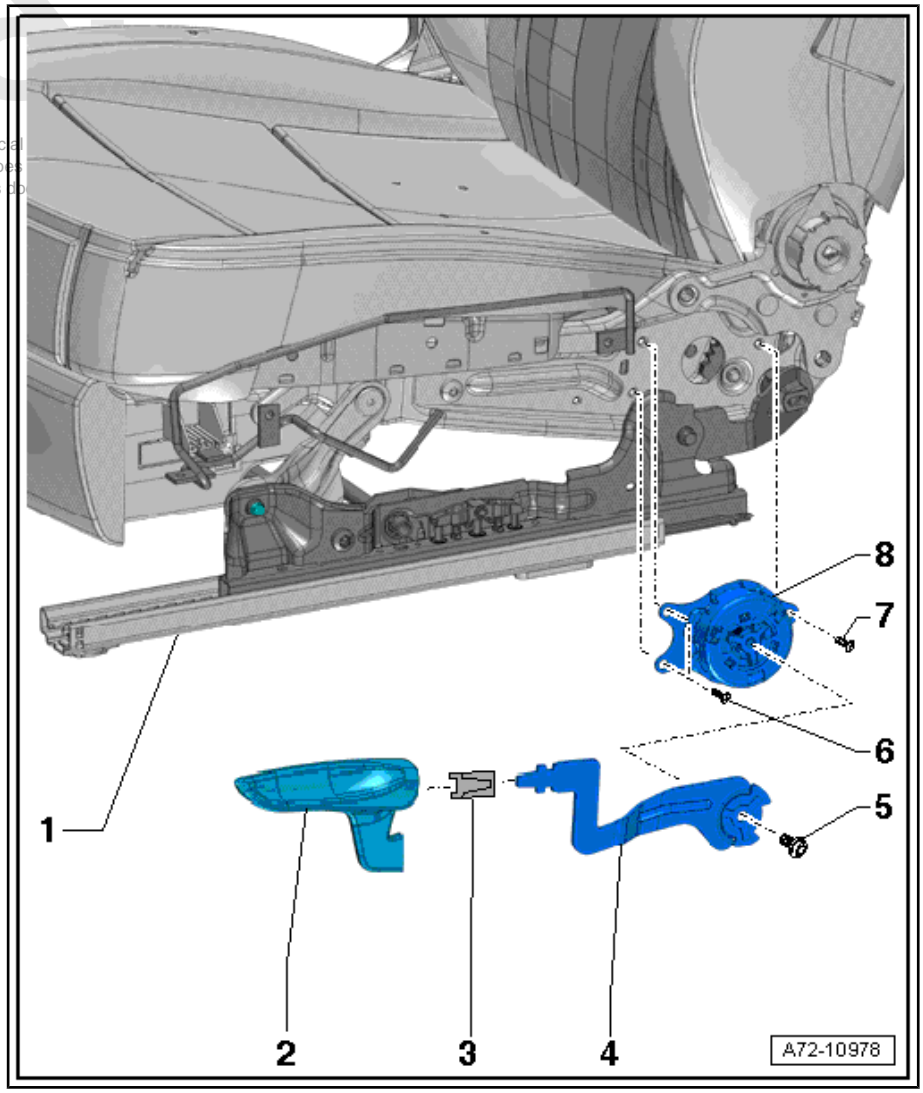
- ❑ With:

- ♦ Driver seat backrest adjustment switch - E96-
- ♦ Driver seat rake adjustment switch - E222-
- ♦ Driver seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E363-
- ♦ Driver seat height adjustment switch - E364-
  - ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471- with:
- ♦ Front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E64-
- ♦ Front passenger seat backrest adjustment switch - E98-
- ♦ Front passenger seat rake adjustment button - E334-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Front passenger seat height adjustment switch - E365-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 317

2.5.7 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster



1 - Front seat
- ❑ With manual adjustment

2 - Seat height adjuster
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 288
- ❑ Slide handle on and press on as far as stop

3 - Retaining clip
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 289

4 - Lever
- ❑ For seat height adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 288

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 19.5 Nm

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 6 Nm

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 6 Nm

8 - Seat height adjustment unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.5.8 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjustment motor

1 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Observe notes when removing and installing ⇒ page 289
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 18 Nm

2 - Not installed

3 - Seat pan

4 - Bolt

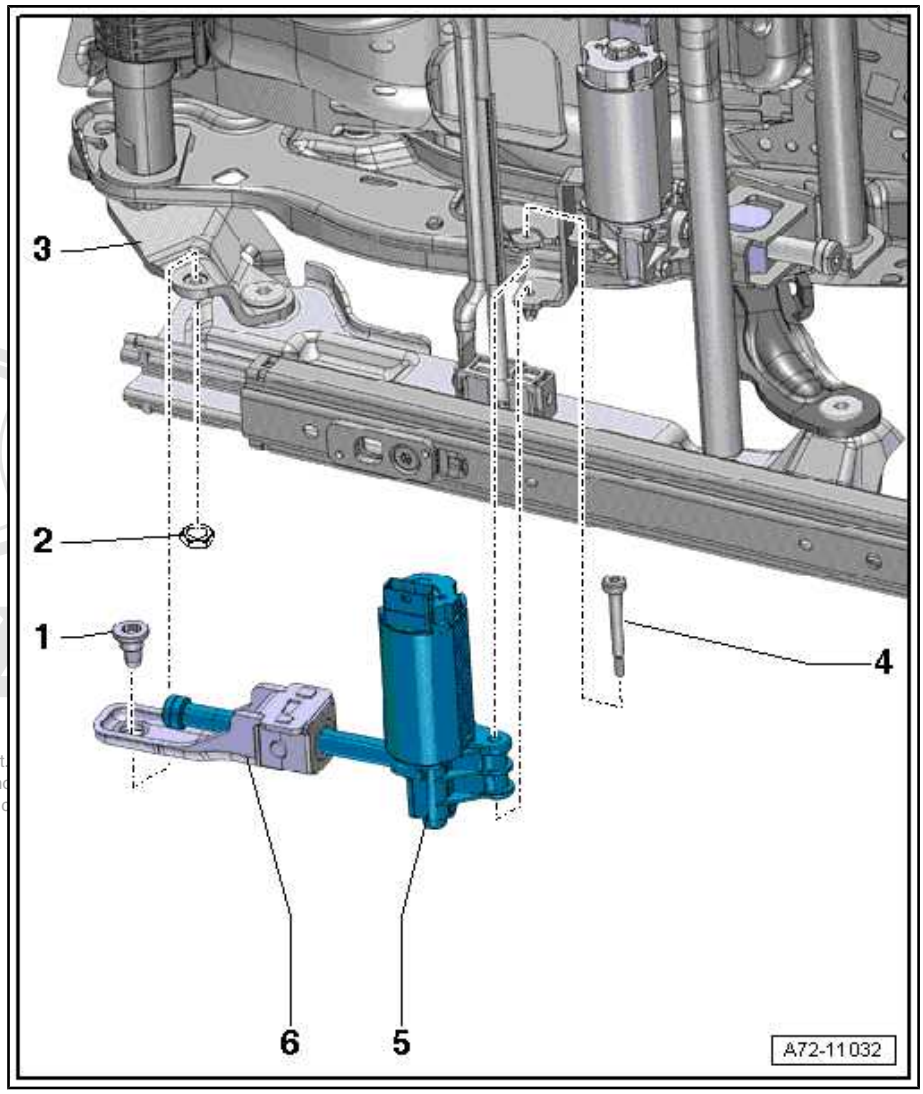
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Driver seat height adjustment motor - V245-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 289

6 - Spindle guide

- ❑ Part of seat height adjustment motor



2.5.9 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster

1 - Handle

- ❑ For seat rake adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

2 - Clip

- ❑ Always renew seat rake adjustment handle after removing
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 292

3 - Bolt

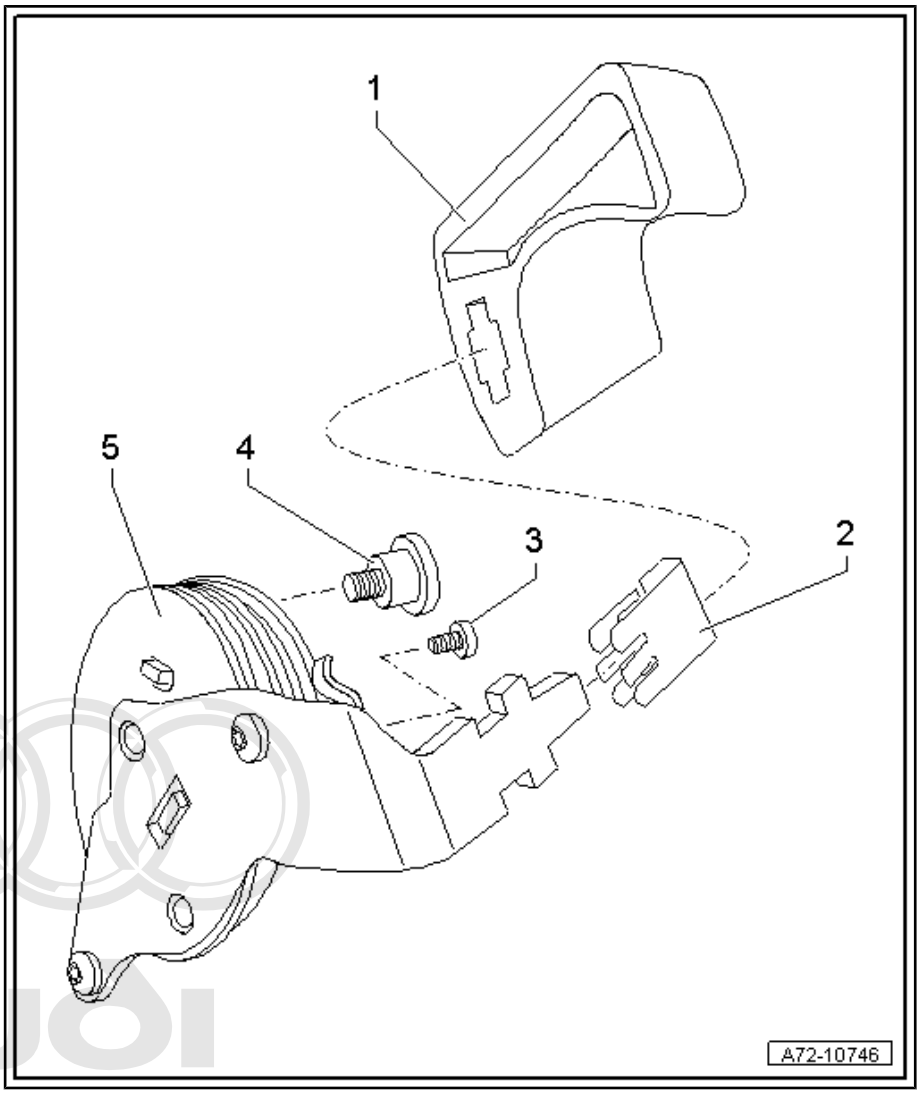
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

4 - Pivot stud

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for pivot stud using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 6 Nm

5 - Seat rake adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 292



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.10 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjustment motor

1 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 8 Nm

2 - Seat pan

3 - Spindle nut

- ❑ Part of seat rake adjustment motor
- ❑ Inserted in mounting at seat pan

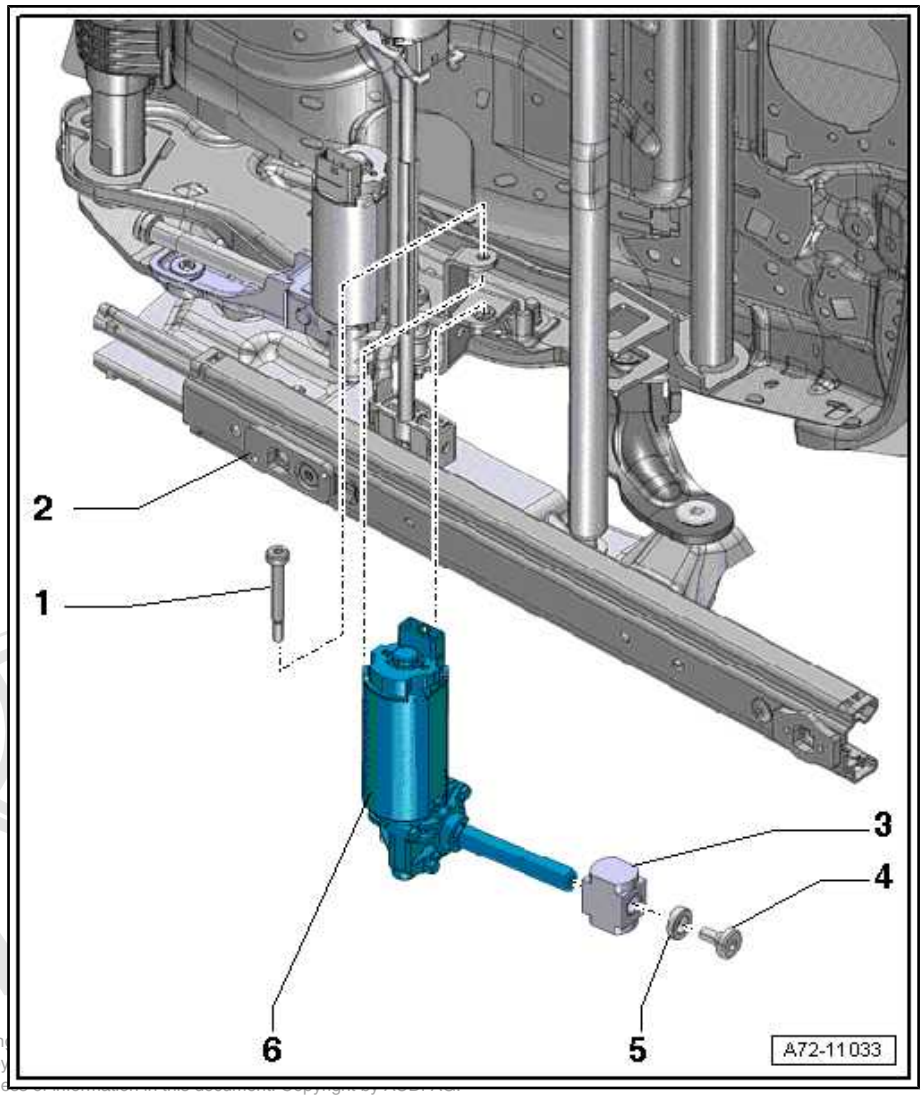
4 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Washer

6 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-

- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 294



Protected by copyright. Copyin
permitted unless authorised by
with respect to the correctn

2.5.11 Exploded view - seat pan, drawer

1 - Retaining tab

2 - Drawer

3 - Bolt

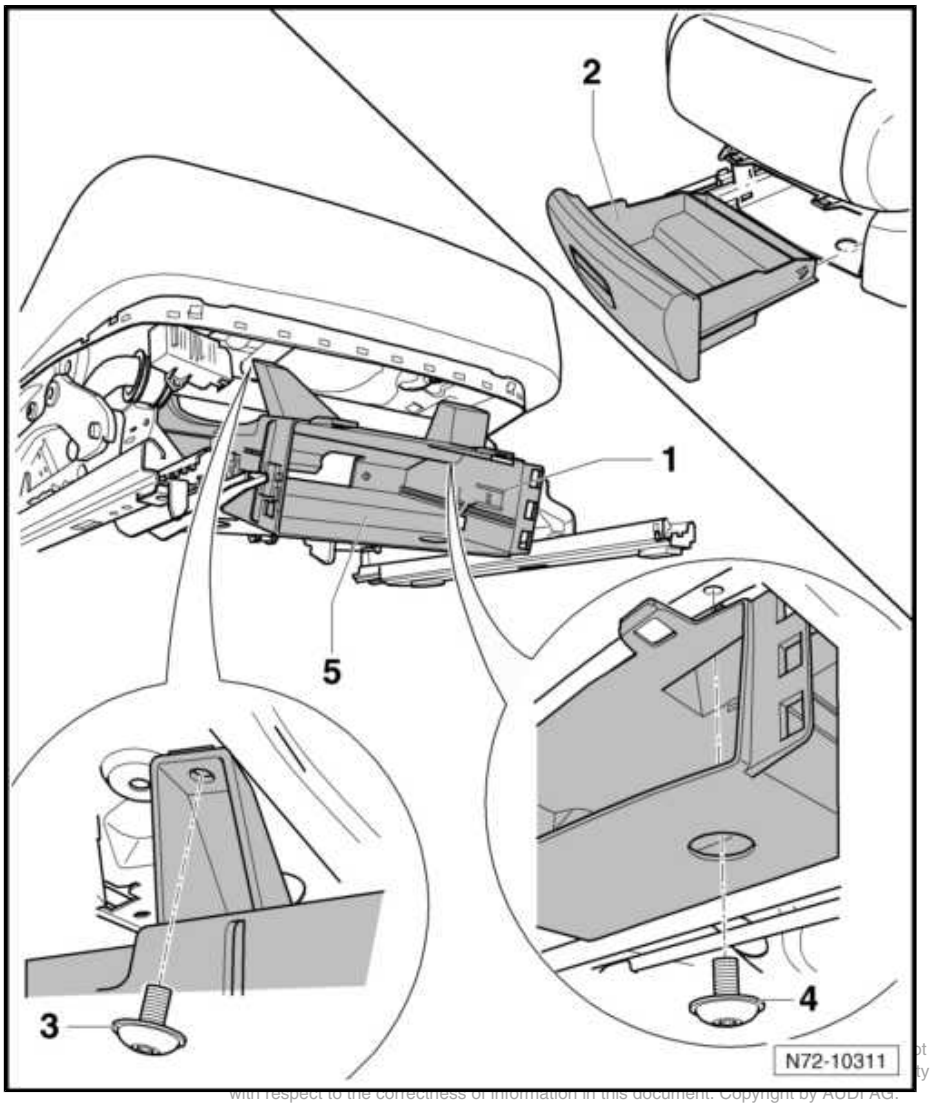
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

5 - Mounting

- ❑ For drawer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 319



with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.12 Exploded view - seat pan, storage compartment

1 - Front seat

2 - Seat side trim (sill side)

3 - Speed nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Inserted in seat pan
- ❑ Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

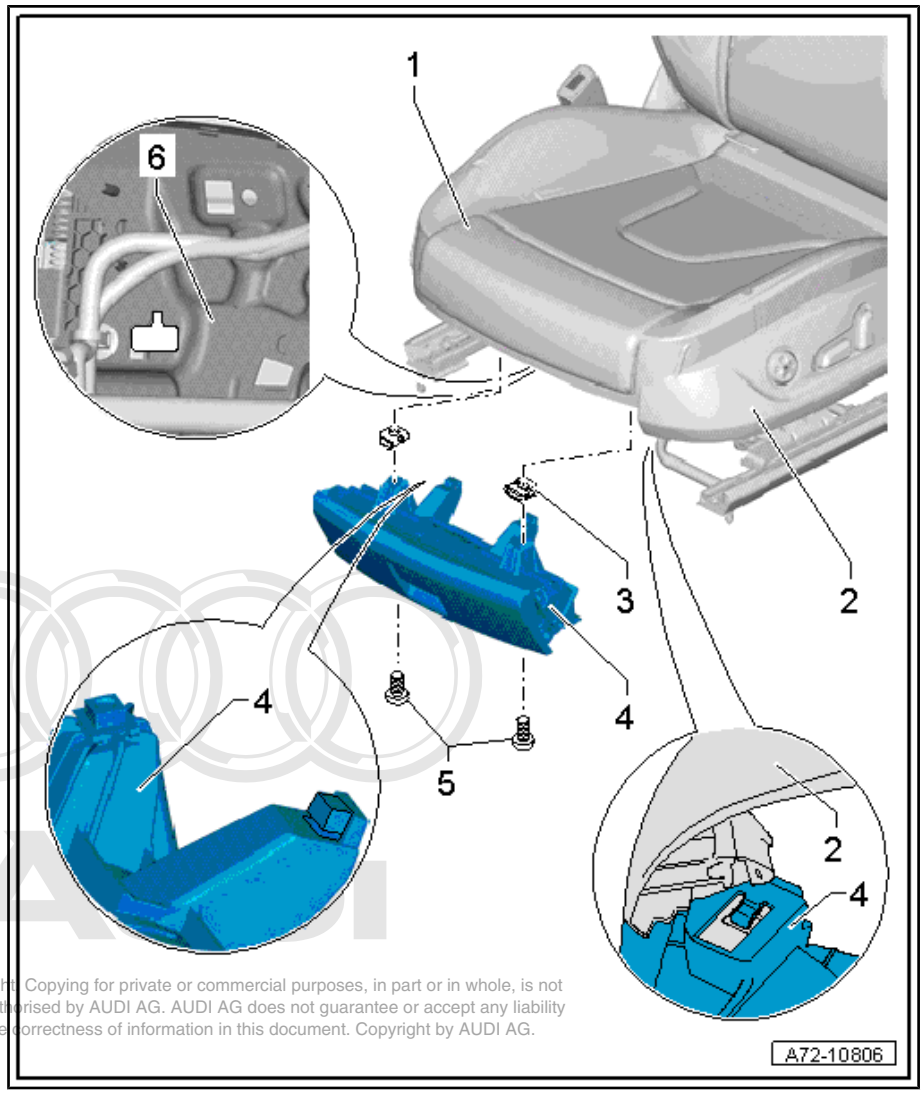
4 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 319
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled and is only available as a complete replacement unit
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Bolt

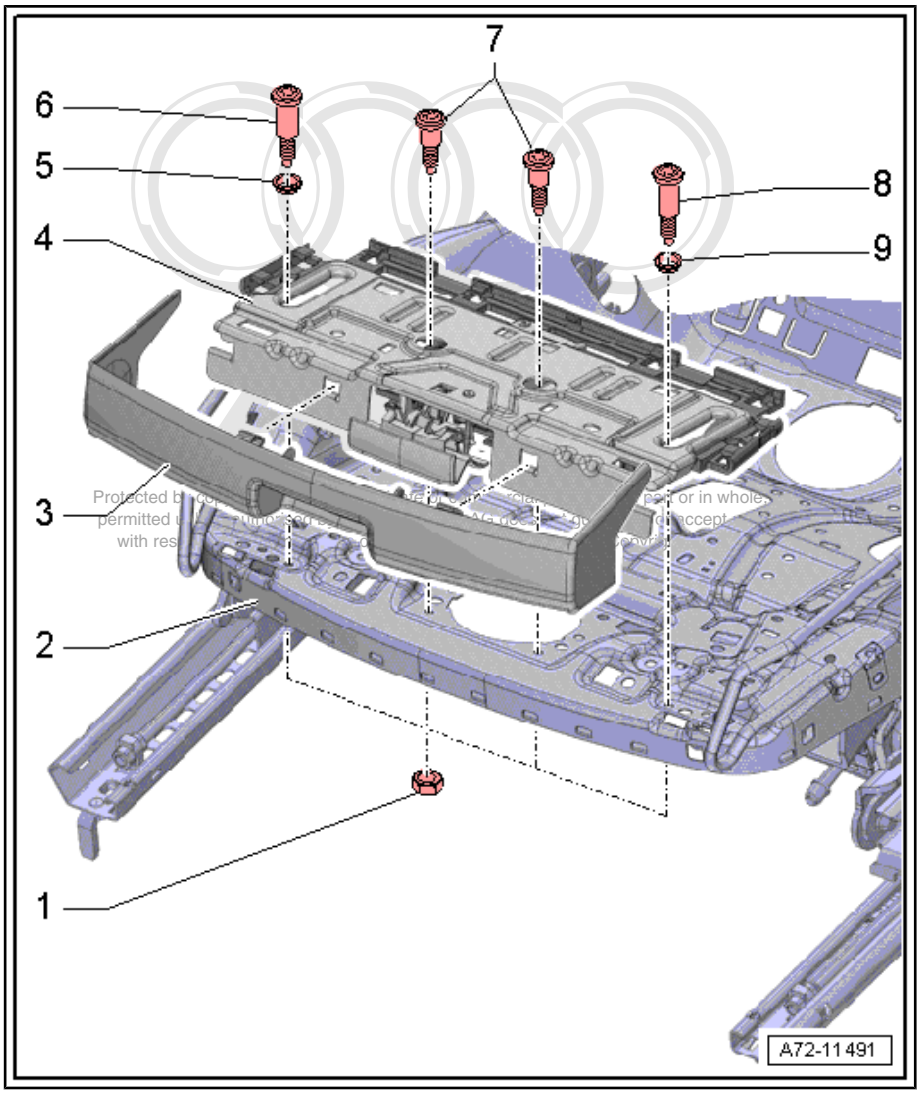
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

6 - Upper seat pan frame



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.13 Exploded view - seat pan, seat depth adjuster



1 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Renew

2 - Sports seat

- ❑ With seat depth adjustment

3 - Trim

- ❑ For seat depth adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.14.11 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster”, page 320
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

4 - Seat depth adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 320

5 - Bush

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 4 Nm

7 - Bolts

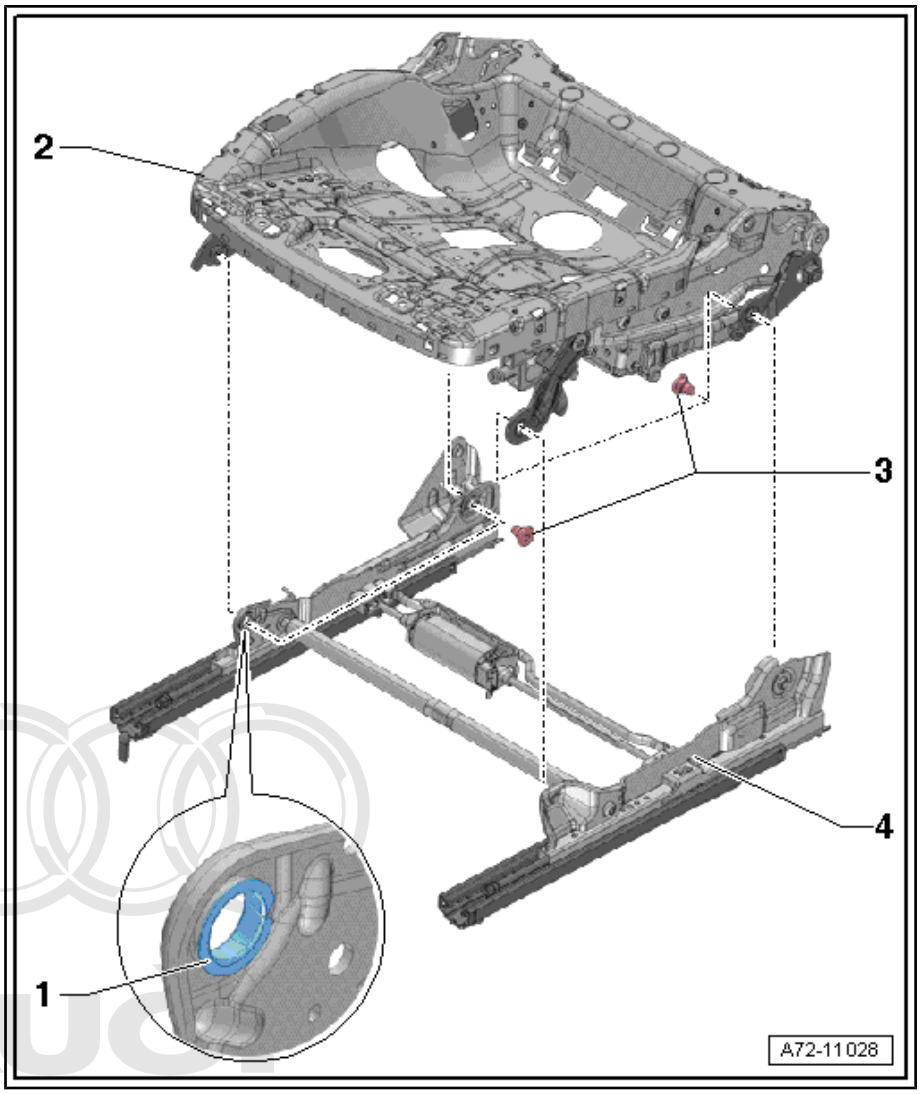
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 4 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 4 Nm

9 - Bush

2.5.14 Exploded view - seat pan, front seat with electric adjustment



1 - Bush

- ❑ Inserted in all pivot points
- ❑ Cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops
- ❑ Component must be renewed if bush is damaged

2 - Upper seat pan frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 325
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ When renewing, fit electrical and electronic components and wiring removed earlier in new upper frame

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 22 Nm

4 - Lower seat pan frame

- ❑ Driver side: with driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 327
- ❑ When renewing, fit belt buckle in new lower frame

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6 Removing and installing front seat

⇒ “2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat with manual/electric adjustment”, page 278

⇒ “2.6.2 Removing front seat with electric adjustment if seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective”, page 281

2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat with manual/electric adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Protector - VAS 871001-

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Move head restraint to lowest possible position.

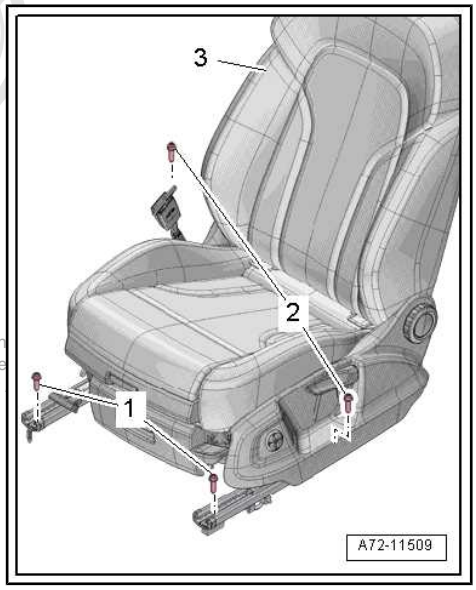
– Move front seat -3- as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Remove bolts -2- from rear of seat rail.

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

– Remove bolts -1- from front of seat rail.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
ed unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acce
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

WARNING

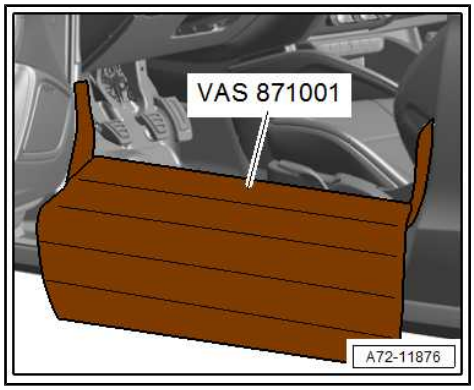
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug electrical connectors at connector point in floor ⇒ page 284 .

– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 286 .

– Before lifting out front seat, attach protector - VAS 871001- as shown in illustration to protect sill panel trim.

– Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.



Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

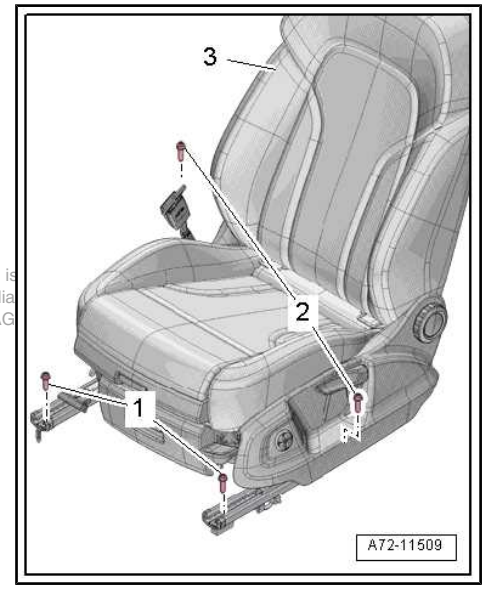
– Install front seat before detaching airbag adapter - VAS 6282- ⇒ page 286 .

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Plug in electrical connectors at connector point connections in floor ⇒ page 284 .

– Align front seat -3- in vehicle and tighten bolts -1- at front of seat rail.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Copyright by AUDI AG. This document, or parts thereof, may not be used for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Fit and tighten bolts -2- at rear of seat rail.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.2.3 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with electric adjustment", page 255

2.6.2 Removing front seat with electric adjustment if seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Protector - VAS 871001-

Checking seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31-

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

Note

To avoid unnecessary repair costs, check the electrical/electronic components and wiring before removing the front seat any further.

– Perform the following checks:

- Check fuse ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Check voltage at connector point and perform Fault Finding if necessary ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Check voltage at seat longitudinal adjustment motor ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– If fuse is defective, it must be renewed ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– Repair or renew wire if there is no voltage at connector point ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– If seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective, lower seat pan frame must be renewed ⇒ page 327 .

Removing if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- is defective

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Unplug electrical connectors at connector point in floor ⇒ page 284 .

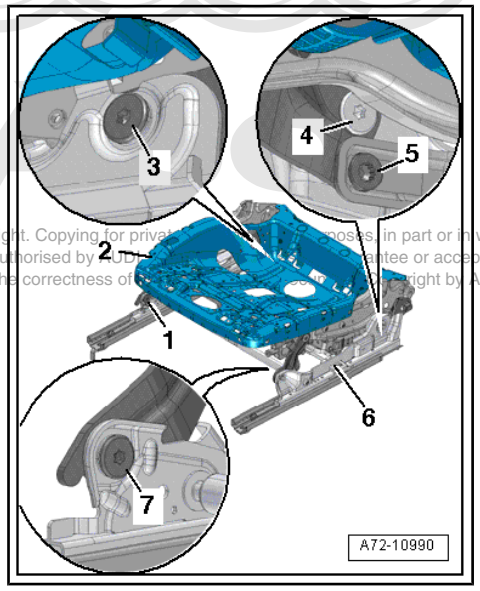
– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 286 .
– Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.
– Remove bracket for modular wire routing at lower seat pan frame.
– Unplug electrical connector for belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 91 .
– Unclip electrical wiring from lower seat pan frame and move to one side.

Caution

Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

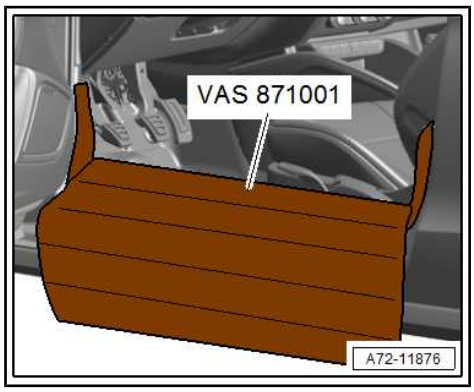
- ***A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

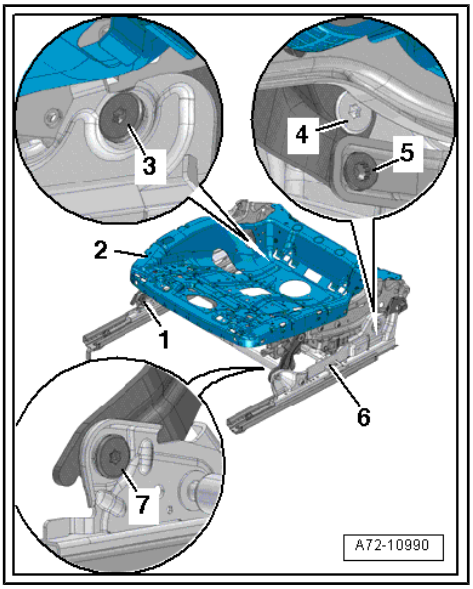


– Remove bolt -5-.
– Remove bolts -1, 3, 4 and 7-.

– Before lifting out front seat, attach protector - VAS 871001- as shown in illustration to protect sill panel trim.



– With the help of a second mechanic, lift upper seat pan frame -2- off lower frame -6- and remove from vehicle.



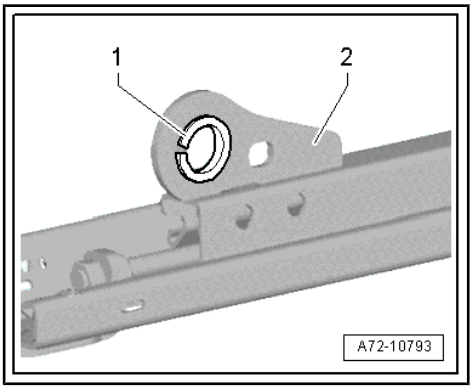
Note

For greater clarity, the seat pan is shown without the padding, cover and backrest.

Caution

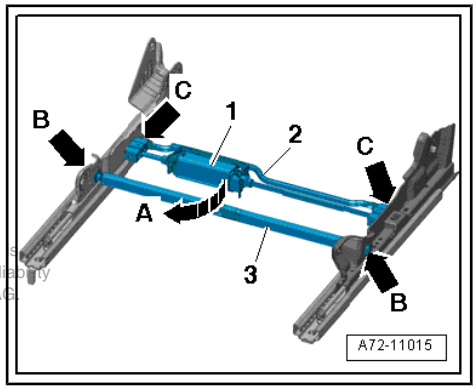
Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- ***The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.***
- ***The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.***

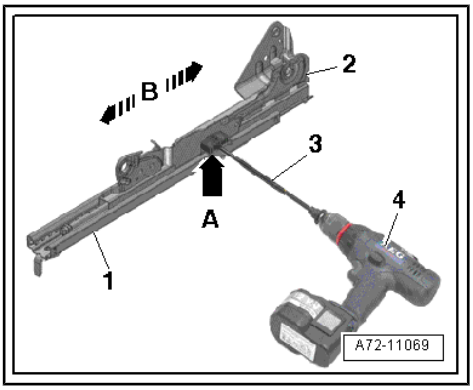


– Unscrew accessible bolts for seat rails at console.
– Remove defective seat longitudinal adjustment motor -1- at bracket -arrow A-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows B- and detach cross piece -3- for seat rails.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows C- and remove bracket -2- for seat longitudinal adjustment motor.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Clamp drive shaft -3- of seat longitudinal adjustment motor in a battery-operated screwdriver -4- or drill.
– Insert drive shaft in drive spindle -arrow A- and move seat rail (top) -2- forwards or backwards -arrows B- until bolt for seat rail (bottom) -1- is accessible.
– Unscrew bolt and detach seat rail.
– Repeat procedure on opposite seat rail.
– Renew lower seat pan frame with seat longitudinal adjustment motor ⇒ page 327 .



2.7 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter

⇒ "2.7.1 Unplugging and plugging in connectors at connector point", page 284

⇒ "2.7.2 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter", page 286

2.7.1 Unplugging and plugging in connectors at connector point

Pin assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

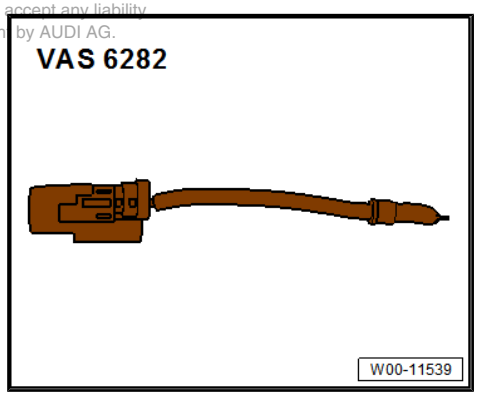
Note

The connector point is located in the vehicle floor at the side member under the front section of the seat.

Reproduction by any means, including for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Airbag adapter - VAS 6282-



Unplugging

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

– Move head restraint to lowest possible position.
– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

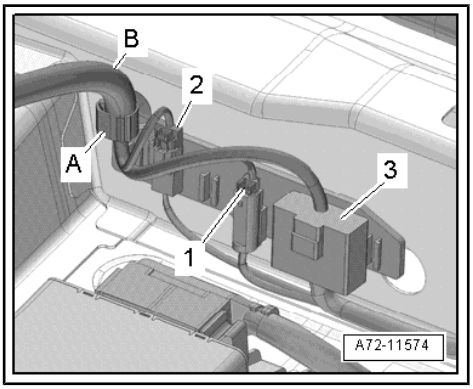
– Fold up cut-out in floor covering.

1 - Side airbag

2 - Belt buckle

3 - Power supply for seat adjustment

– Using a screwdriver, open cable retainer -A- for modular wire routing and detach corrugated tube -B-.



Note

The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment. The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connector -1- for side airbag.

– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS - at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 286 .

– Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connector -2- for belt buckle.

– Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connector -3- for voltage supply for seat adjustment.

Plugging in

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Plug in electrical connectors in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

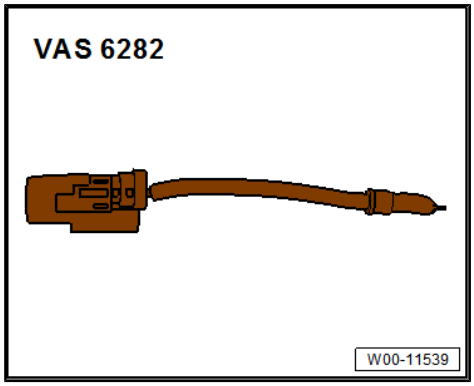
Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

2.7.2 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Airbag adapter - VAS 6282-



Unplugging airbag connector

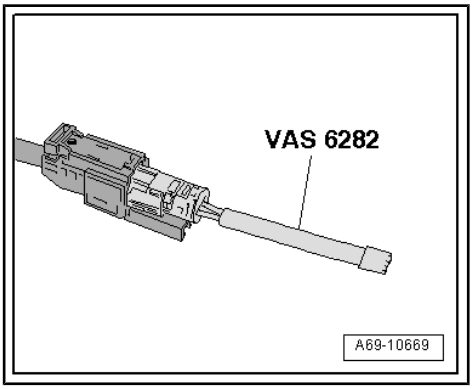
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 284 .

– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connection for side airbag.



Caution

Leave airbag adapter - VAS 6282- connected to seat until seat has been re-installed.

Note

Make sure airbag adapter engages properly.

Plugging in airbag connector

Plug in airbag connectors in reverse order; note the following:

tected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
mitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

⇒ “2.8.1 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 288

⇒ “2.8.2 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor V245 / V246 ”, page 289

⇒ “2.8.3 Removing defective seat height adjustment motor V245 / V246 ”, page 290

2.8.1 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

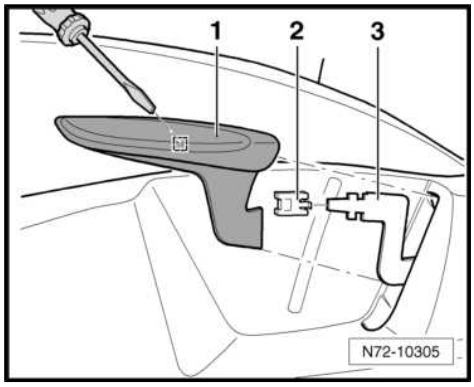
Move front seat to top position if possible. This reduces the spring force when removing and installing the seat height adjustment unit.

Seat height adjuster:

– Pull seat height adjuster -1- upwards as far as possible and hold in this position.

– Carefully pull seat height adjuster slightly off front seat.

– On inside of seat height adjuster, use a small screwdriver to press spring of retaining clip -2- outwards and detach adjuster from lever -3-.



Seat height adjustment unit:

– Move front seat as far forwards as it will go and to highest position; then lower it by one stroke of the lever.

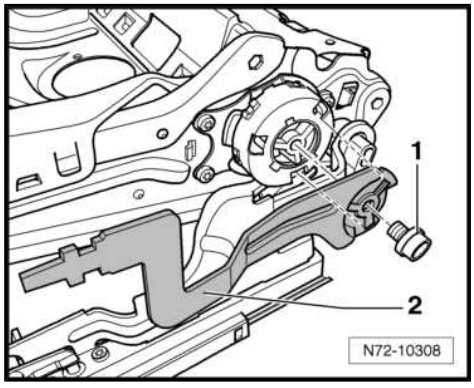
– Remove seat side trim (sill side):

♦ Standard seat/sports seat ⇒ page 312

♦ Folding seat ⇒ page 314

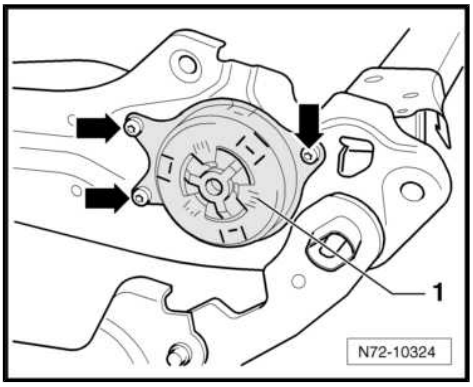
– Remove bolt -1-.

– Detach lever -2- from seat height adjustment unit.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Unfasten seat height adjustment unit -1- from seat pan frame and detach.



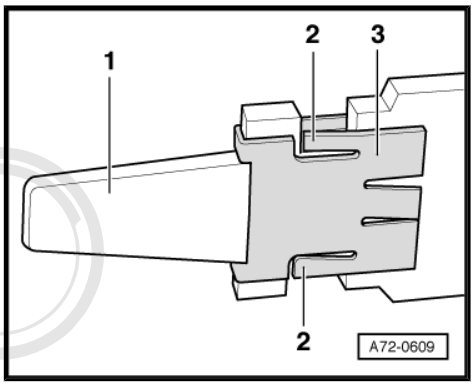
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– When inserting the seat height adjustment unit in the seat pan frame, a second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the front seat downwards slightly.

– Note installation position of retaining clip:

• Spring tabs -2- of retaining clip -3- must be located on outside of lever -1-.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.7 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster", page 271

2.8.2 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246-

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– If possible, move front seat to topmost position in order to minimise pre-tension of torsion bar.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2- at seat height adjustment motor.

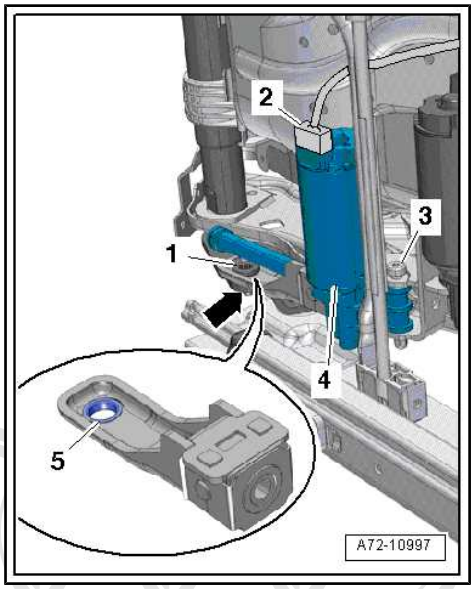
Caution

Risk of (irreparable) damage to threaded hole in seat pan -arrow-.

- *Bolted connection for spindle guide to seat pan must be free of strain when fitting/removing bolt.*

Risk of damage to bush -5- in pivot point (bolted connection between spindle guide and seat pan).

- *The bush cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bush is damaged.*



– Unscrew bolt -1- at spindle guide of seat height adjustment motor.
– Unscrew bolt -3- and detach seat height adjustment motor -4- from bracket.

Installing

– A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when positioning bolt -1-.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.8 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjustment motor", page 272

2.8.3 Removing defective seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246-

Note

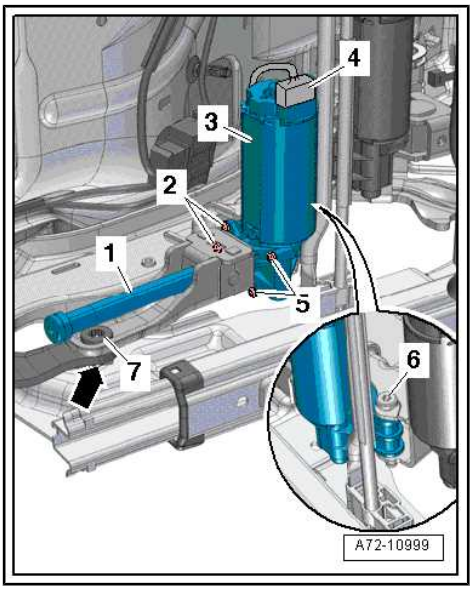
To avoid unnecessary repair costs, check the electrical/electronic components and wiring before removing the seat height adjustment motor ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

Removing if seat height adjustment motor is defective

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .
– Unplug electrical connector -4- at seat height adjustment motor.
– A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when unscrewing bolt -6-.
– Unscrew bolts -2, 5- and detach seat height adjustment motor -3-.
– Turn spindle -1- back until bolt -7- is accessible.
– Unscrew bolt -7- for spindle guide and detach spindle guide.
– Renew seat height adjustment motor ⇒ page 289 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.9 Removing and installing seat rake adjuster

⇒ "2.9.1 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment handle", page 291
⇒ "2.9.2 Removing and installing seat rake adjuster", page 292
⇒ "2.9.3 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor V243 / V244 ", page 294
⇒ "2.9.4 Removing defective seat rake adjustment motor V243 / V244 ", page 296

2.9.1 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment handle

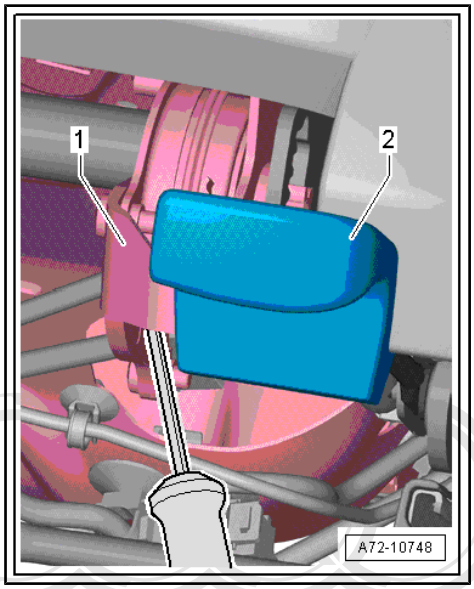
Note

Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.

Removing

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 312 .

– Working from rear, lever handle -2- off seat rake adjuster -1-; to do so, press down spring tabs of clip with a screwdriver.

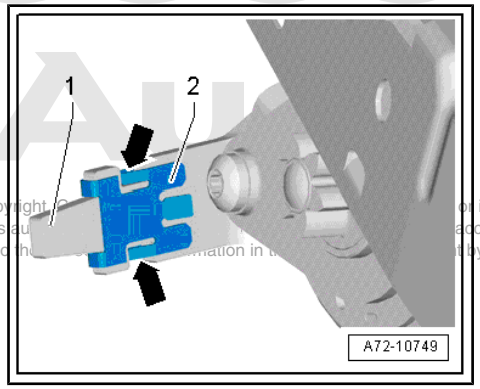


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure seat rake adjustment handle engages properly with clip.

• Spring tabs -arrows- of clip -2- must be located on inside of lever -1-.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.9 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster", page 273

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

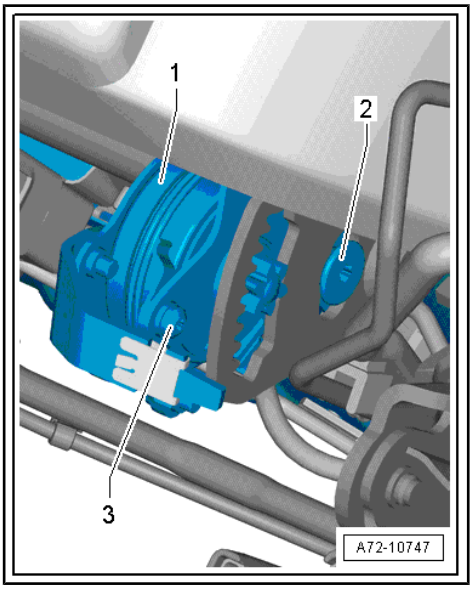
2.9.2 Removing and installing seat rake adjuster

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 312 .
– Remove seat rake adjustment handle ⇒ page 291 .
– Remove pivot stud -2- and bolt -3-.
– Detach seat rake adjuster -1-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.9 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster", page 273

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.9.3 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244-

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

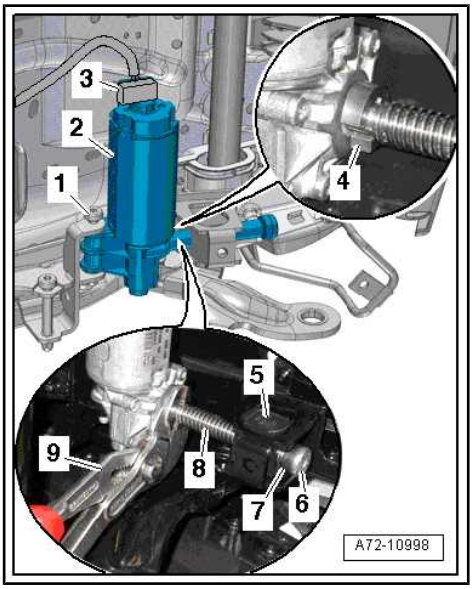
– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector -3- at seat rake adjustment motor.
– Use a screwdriver to remove stop ring -4- at spindle.
– Hold spindle -8- with pliers -9- at location shown to prevent it from turning and unscrew bolt -6-.
– Unscrew bolt -1- and detach seat rake adjustment motor -2- from retainer.
– Press lower and upper seat pan frames apart, swivel seat rake adjustment motor with spindle forwards and remove motor from spindle nut -5-.



Installing

– Screw spindle -8- as far as possible into spindle nut -5-.
– Screw bolt -6- into spindle by hand.

Note

The bolt -6- can only be tightened to the specified torque when the seat is in the vehicle and is connected to the vehicle electrical system.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

• Seat installed in vehicle and connected to vehicle electrical system.

– Move seat downwards via seat rake adjuster and at the same time tighten bolt -6-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.10 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjustment motor", page 274

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.9.4 Removing defective seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244-

Note

To avoid unnecessary repair costs, check the electrical/electronic components and wiring before removing the seat rake adjustment motor ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

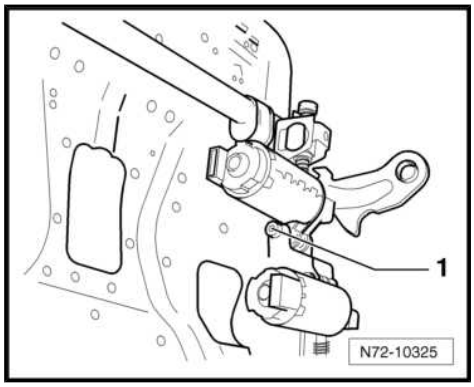
Removing if seat rake adjustment motor is defective

WARNING

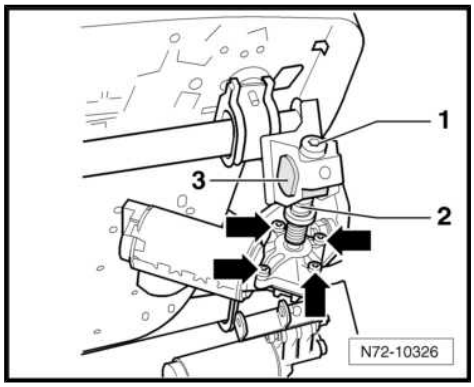
- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .
– Unplug electrical connector at seat rake adjustment motor.
– Unscrew bolt -1- and detach seat rake adjustment motor from retainer.



– Hold spindle -2- with pliers to prevent it from turning and unscrew bolt -1-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach seat rake adjustment motor.
– Unscrew spindle from spindle nut -3- and detach.
– Renew seat rake adjustment motor ⇒ page 294 .



2.10 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit

⇒ “2.10.1 Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob”, page 297

⇒ “2.10.2 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor V45 / V46 ”, page 297

2.10.1 Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob

Note

Only the backrest adjuster knob can be removed and installed.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Assembly tool - 3399-



Removing

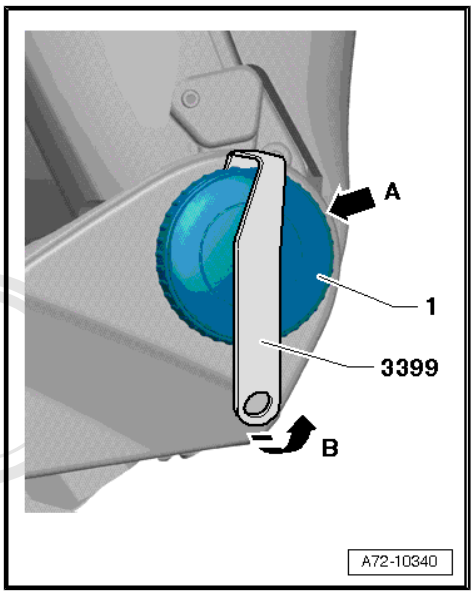
– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Turn backrest adjuster knob -1- until detent is visible from rear -arrow A-. Use torch if necessary.

– Hook assembly tool - 3399- into detent and prise off adjuster knob -arrow B-.

– Turn backrest adjuster knob a further 120 ° and repeat procedure.

– Detach backrest adjuster knob.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

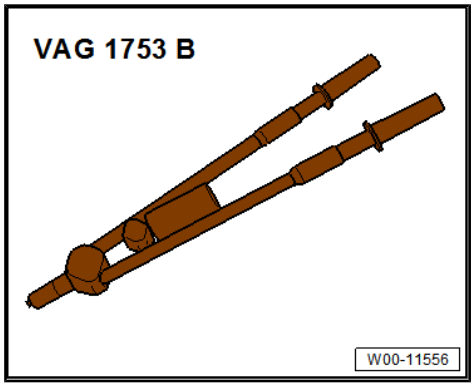
⇒ “2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with manual adjustment”, page 265

2.10.2 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor -V45- / -V46-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



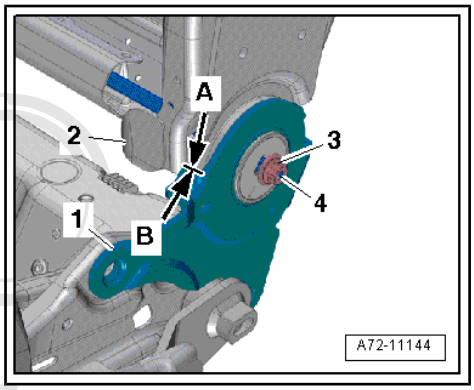
- Drill
- Safety goggles
- Locking fluid; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 318 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 316 .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 301 .
– Mark angular position of backrest fittings (left and right) on front seat as follows:
– Use a water-proof felt-tip pen to make mark -arrow B- on outer backrest frame -2- directly at front edge -arrow A- of fitting -1-.
– Unscrew nut -3- from adjuster shaft -4-.

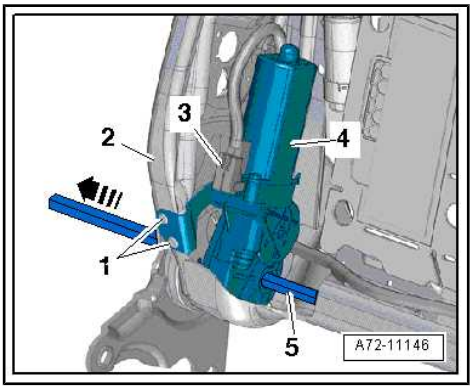


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Detach padding from outer backrest frame in area of backrest fitting ⇒ page 360 .

– Pull adjuster shaft -5- out of outer backrest frame -2- -arrow-.

– Unplug electrical connector -3- at backrest adjustment motor.



Note

As protection against metal swarf, place plastic film between seat cover and outer backrest frame.

WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- *Wear safety goggles!*

– Drill out rivets -1- and detach backrest adjustment motor -4- with bracket.

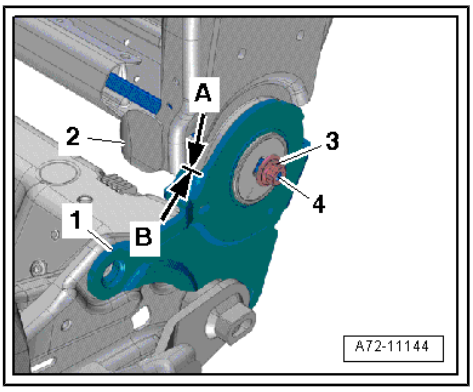
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

– Check position of outer backrest frame -2- and fitting -1- on left and right side of backrest.

• The outer backrest frame must be in the position marked before removal (on left and right side) -arrows A and B-.

– If the outer backrest frame is not in the position marked before removal (on left and right side), make adjustments as required.



– Fit backrest adjustment motor -3- with bracket.

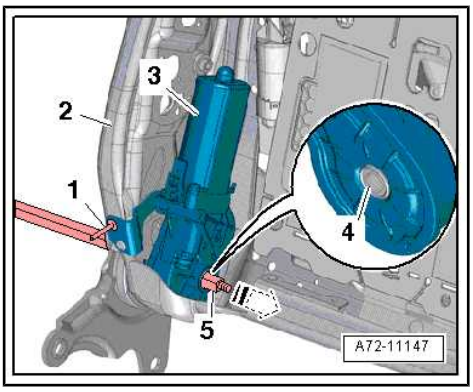
• It must still be possible to move the backrest adjustment motor.

– First slide adjuster shaft through fitting (tunnel side) as far as mounting -4- in backrest adjustment motor.

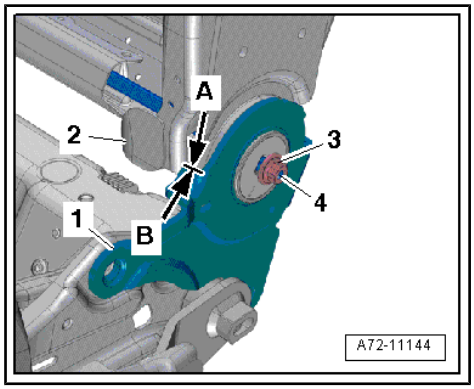
– Check that profiles of inserted adjuster shaft and mounting in backrest adjustment motor are in line.

– If profiles of adjuster shaft and mounting in backrest adjustment motor are not in line, apply an external 12 V power supply to backrest adjustment motor -3- and rotate mounting until profiles of adjuster shaft and mounting are in line.

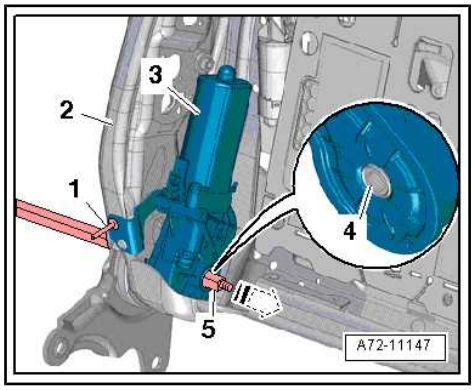
– Push adjuster shaft -5- through mounting in backrest adjustment motor as far as stop (sill side) -arrow-.



– Fit new nut -3- on adjuster shaft -4- and tighten.



– Rivet -1- bracket with motor to outer backrest frame -2-.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3.5 Exploded view - front backrest adjustment motor", page 261

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.11 Removing and installing front seat backrest

⇒ “2.11.1 Removing and installing backrest cover panel”, page 301

⇒ “2.11.2 Removing and installing backrest cover panel (side)”, page 302

⇒ “2.11.3 Removing and installing front seat backrest - standard seat/sports seat”, page 302

⇒ “2.11.4 Removing and installing front seat backrest - folding front passenger's seat”, page 304

⇒ “2.11.5 Removing and installing spring mat”, page 306

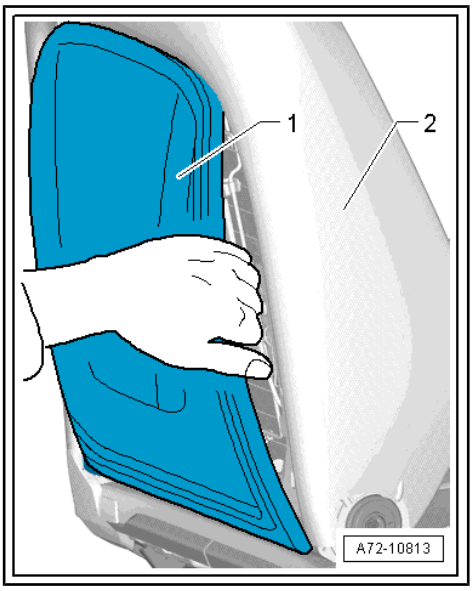
2.11.1 Removing and installing backrest cover panel

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury from burr on backrest cover panel.

- *Wear protective gloves.*



– Reach behind right side of backrest cover panel -1- (as shown in illustration) and pull cover panel off outer backrest frame towards right side.

Note

If it is difficult to detach, release side retaining hooks with removal lever - 80-200- .

– Repeat procedure on opposite side.

– Pull off backrest cover panel further and bend it until retaining hooks (top) have disengaged from outer backrest frame.

– Lift backrest cover panel off backrest -2-.

Copyright by AUDI AG. The reproduction of this document, or any part thereof in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

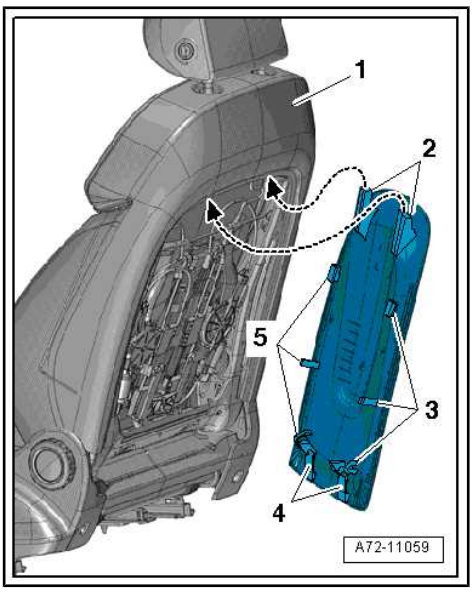
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert retaining hooks -2- of backrest cover panel in outer backrest frame (top) -1-.

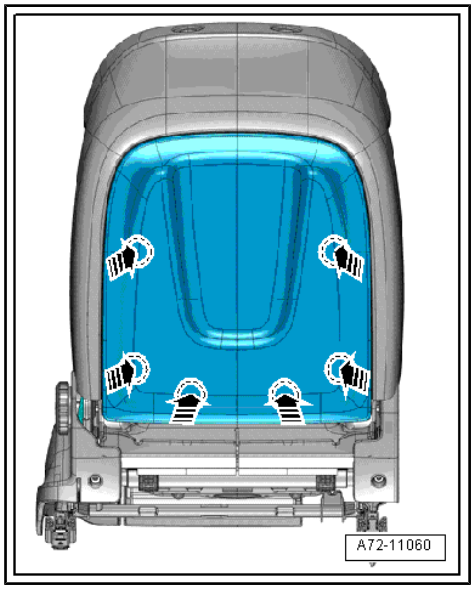
– Swivel backrest cover panel down and engage side retaining tabs -3- and -5- and retaining hooks (bottom) -4-.

– Make sure that side retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame and that retaining hooks (bottom) are properly fitted over outer backrest frame.



– Press backrest cover panel forcefully towards backrest in areas marked by -arrows- until retaining tabs and hooks engage audibly.
– Check whether backrest cover panel is properly engaged.
• It should not be possible to pull backrest cover panel (bottom) off.

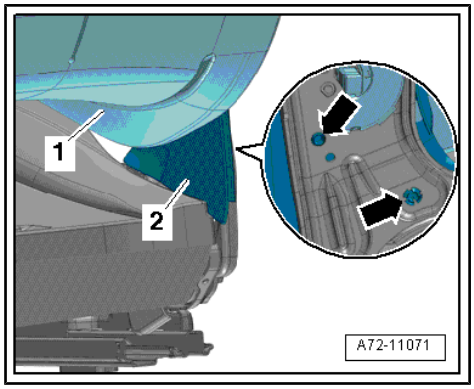
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat”, page 257



2.11.2 Removing and installing backrest cover panel (side)

Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and up as possible.
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 314 .
– Fold backrest down and press backrest padding -1- slightly to side.
– Disengage retaining pins -arrows- at outer backrest frame and pull out backrest cover panel (side) towards rear.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest, folding front passenger's seat”, page 258

2.11.3 Removing and installing front seat backrest - standard seat/sports seat

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 318 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove seat side trim (sill side):

♦ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ page 312

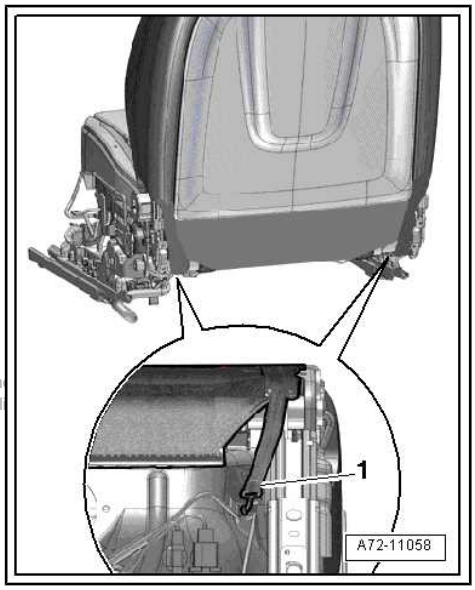
♦ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 316

– Unplug electrical connectors of wiring harnesses to seat backrest and move clear disconnected wiring harnesses ⇒ page 310 .

Note

There is a continuous wiring harness between the connector point and the side airbag.

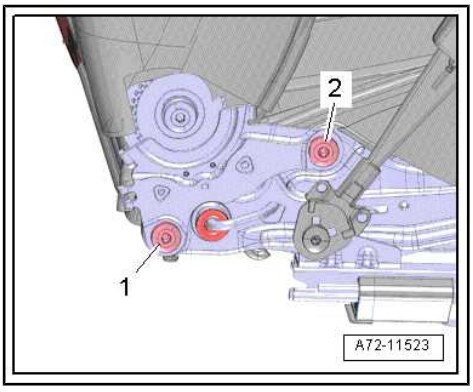
– Disengage rubber strap -1- at bottom left and right of seat pan.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is n
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liabili
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- on left and right of backrest fitting.

– Detach backrest from seat pan. To do so, carefully pull electrical wiring harness for side airbag and, depending on equipment version, all other wiring harnesses going to backrest out of seat pan.



Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .***

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat", page 257

2.11.4 Removing and installing front seat backrest - folding front passenger's seat

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

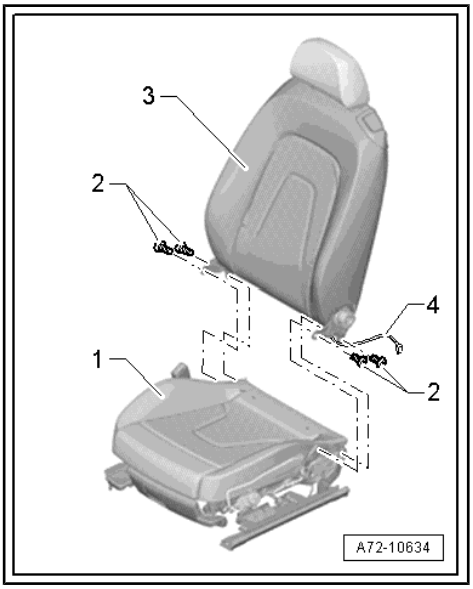
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 318 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 314 .
– Unplug connectors of wiring harnesses to seat backrest and move clear disconnected wiring harnesses ⇒ page 310 .

Note

There is a continuous wiring harness between the connector point and the side airbag.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of the translation. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Fold backrest -3- down and unscrew bolts -2-.
– Carefully pull wiring harness for side airbag -4- and any other wiring harnesses leading to backrest (depending on equipment version) out of seat pan.
– Detach backrest from seat pan -1-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.3.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest, folding front passenger's seat", page 258

2.11.5 Removing and installing spring mat

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

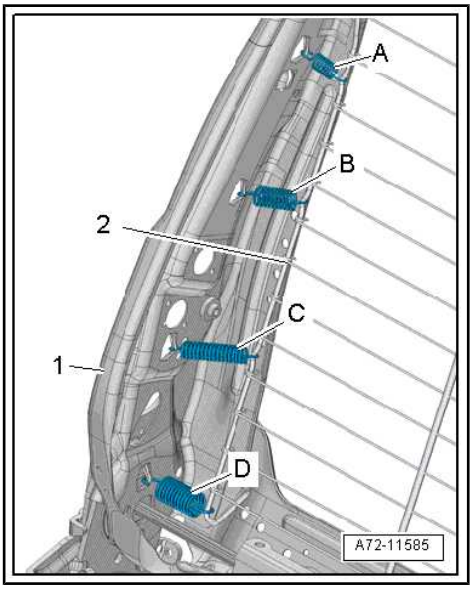
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .

– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 360 .

– Disengage extension springs -A ... D- at outer backrest frame -1-.



Note

You can also leave the extension springs -A ... D- attached to the outer backrest frame -1- and disengage the spring mat -2- directly at the extension springs.

– Swivel spring mat -2- forwards.

– Pull spring mat out of openings in outer backrest frame.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Attach tension springs as shown in illustration.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness, completeness or currency of the data.

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, spring mat", page 259

2.12 Removing and installing head restraint

Note

The head restraints can be removed with the front seats in position.

Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and down as possible and tilt backrest to approx. 45°.

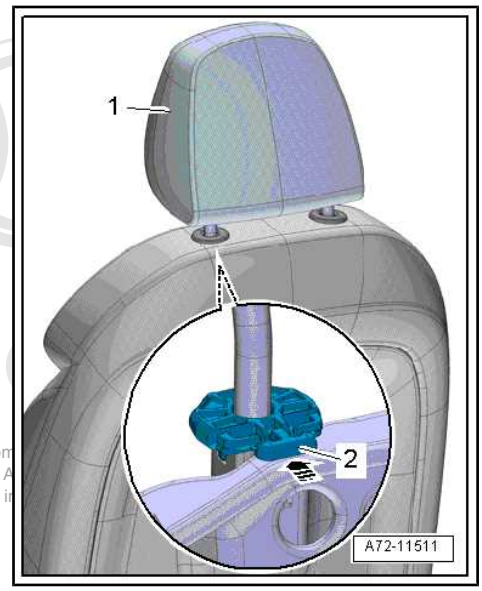
Note

The pressure point for release (release button) is located on the outer left of the driver's seat and on the inner left of the front passenger's seat (as seen in direction of travel).

– Locate pressure point of release button -2- underneath seat cover.

• The release button is located approx. 35 mm beneath the top edge of the backrest.

– Press release button -arrow- and at the same time pull out head restraint -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
the correctness, completeness or timeliness of information in

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.4 Exploded view - head restraint", page 262

2.13 Removing and installing head restraint guide

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components* ⇒ page 3 *.*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

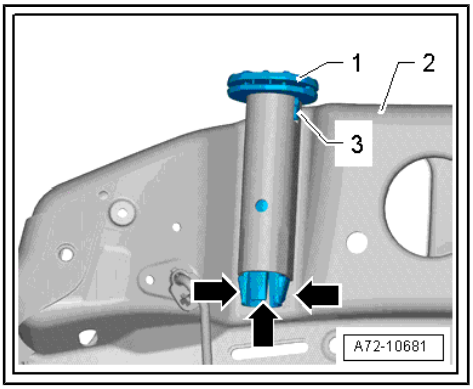
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .

– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 360 .

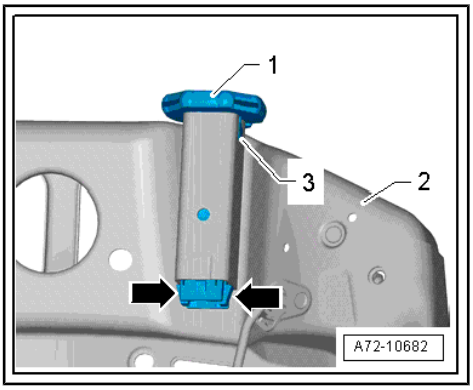
Head restraint guide (right-side):

– Press retaining tabs inwards -arrows- and at the same time pull head restraint guide -1- out of outer backrest frame -2-.



Head restraint guide (left-side):

– Press retaining tabs inwards -arrows- and at the same time pull head restraint guide -1- out of outer backrest frame -2-.



Installing

Note

- *The head restraint guide can only be installed in one position.*
- *The guide lug -3- of the head restraint guide must engage in the recess of the mounting for the head restraint guide.*
- *Make sure retaining tab(s) engage(s) properly with outer backrest frame.*

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .***

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.4 Exploded view - head restraint", page 262

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.14 Dismantling and assembling seat pan

⇒ “2.14.1 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube”, page 310

⇒ “2.14.2 Removing and installing cover for seat rail”, page 311

⇒ “2.14.3 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle”, page 312

⇒ “2.14.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat with manual adjustment”, page 312

⇒ “2.14.5 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - folding front passenger's seat”, page 314

⇒ “2.14.6 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat with electric adjustment”, page 316

⇒ “2.14.7 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit E470 / E471 ”, page 317

⇒ “2.14.8 Removing and installing seat side trim (tunnel side)”, page 318

⇒ “2.14.9 Removing and installing mounting for drawer”, page 319

⇒ “2.14.10 Removing and installing storage compartment”, page 319

⇒ “2.14.11 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster”, page 320

⇒ “2.14.12 Renewing seat pan frame, seat with manual adjustment”, page 323

⇒ “2.14.13 Removing and installing upper seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment”, page 325

⇒ “2.14.14 Removing and installing lower seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment”, page 327

2.14.1 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube

Opening corrugated tube and removing individual wire

WARNING

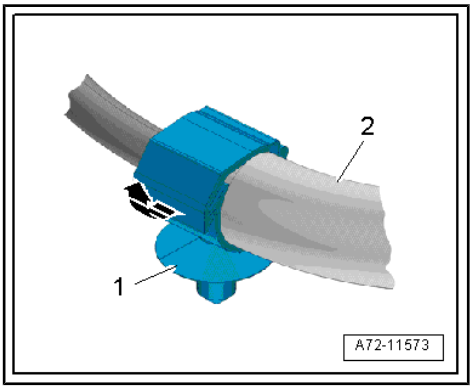
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3.*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .

– Using a screwdriver, open cable retainer (rear) -1- for modular wire routing at lower seat pan frame -arrows- and detach corrugated tube -2-.



Note

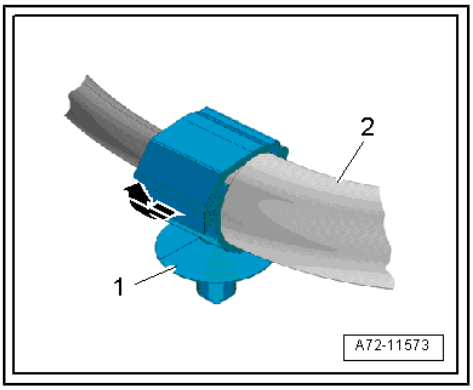
To renew a defective wire or side airbag, open corrugated tube ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors; Repairing electrical wiring harnesses and electrical connectors or ⇒ page 124 .

Fitting individual wires and closing corrugated tube

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Take care not to twist any wires when bunching the individual wires and inserting them in the corrugated tube.

– Insert corrugated tube -2- in cable retainer -1- so that it is flush with end of cable retainer.



Note

- *Re-attach all cable ties, cable retainers and retaining clips at the same locations when installing.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .***

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.5.1 Exploded view - seat pan, modular wire routing", page 263

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.14.2 Removing and installing cover for seat rail

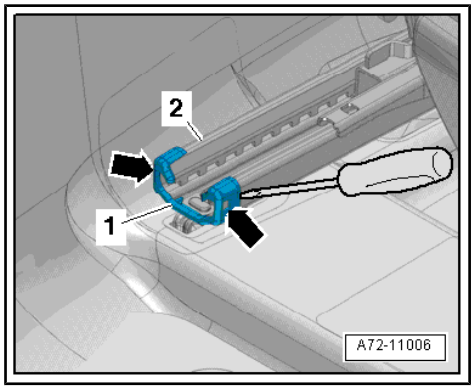
Note

Proceed very carefully when removing and installing as the cover can be damaged quite easily.

Removing

– Move front seat as far back and up as possible.

– Using a screwdriver, unclip cover -1- from retaining tabs -arrows- at sides and detach cover from seat rail -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment", page 252

2.14.3 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle

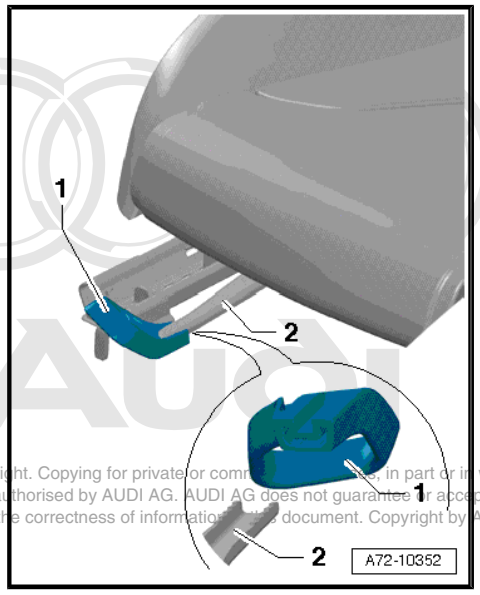
Note

- *Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.*
- *The seat longitudinal adjustment handle cannot be removed without damaging it irreparably.*

Removing

– Move front seat as far back and up as possible.

– Use a rubber-headed or plastic-headed hammer to knock seat longitudinal adjustment handle -1- off handle mounting -2-.



Note

For greater clarity, the seat longitudinal adjustment handle is turned 180° in the illustration.

Installing

– Slide seat longitudinal adjustment handle onto handle mounting.

Caution

When knocking on seat longitudinal adjustment handle, take care not to damage surface.

– Use a rubber-headed hammer to knock seat longitudinal adjustment handle onto handle mounting as far as stop.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment", page 252

2.14.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat with manual adjustment

Removing

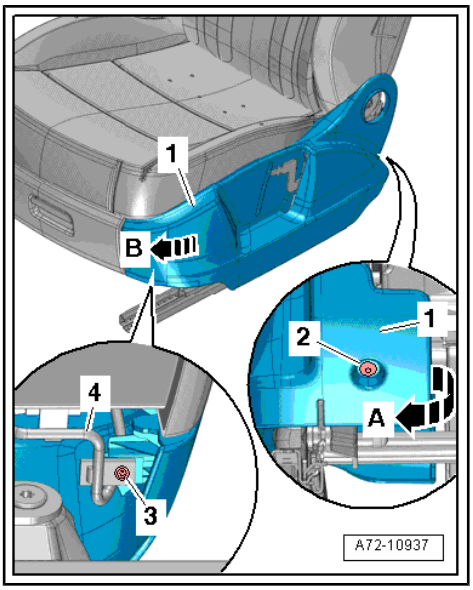
– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove backrest adjuster knob ⇒ page 297 .
– Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ page 288 .

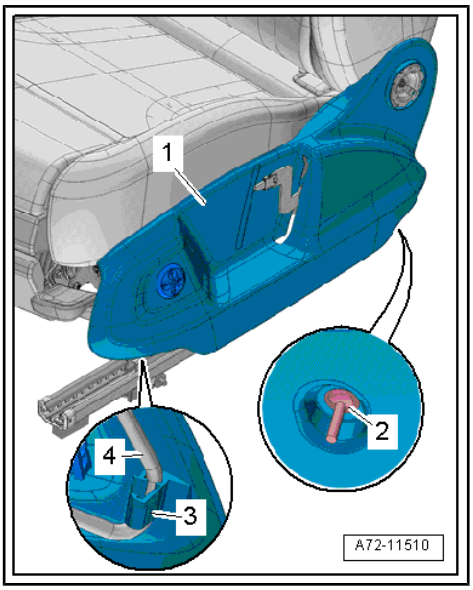
Standard seat:

– Remove spreader rivet -2- on seat side trim (sill side).
– Remove bolt -3-.
– Disengage seat side trim (sill side) -1- at rear of backrest fitting and at seat frame -arrow A-.
– Lift trim (rear) slightly, disengage it from bracket -4- and detach it towards front -arrow B-.



Sports seat:

– Remove spreader rivet -2- on seat side trim (sill side).
– Release clip -3- with a screwdriver.
– Disengage seat side trim (sill side) -1- at rear of backrest fitting and at seat frame.
– Lift trim (rear) slightly, disengage it from bracket -4- and detach it towards front.



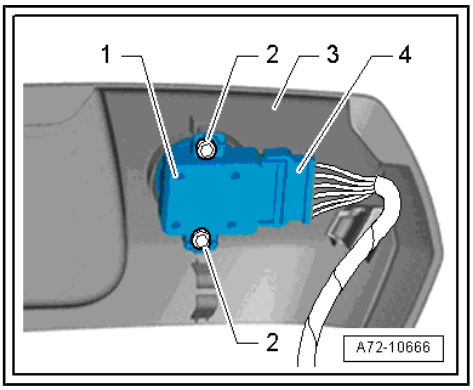
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

All seat versions (continued):

– Equipment version with lumbar support: Unplug electrical connector -4- at lumbar support adjustment switch -1-.
– Detach seat side trim (sill side) -3-.

Note

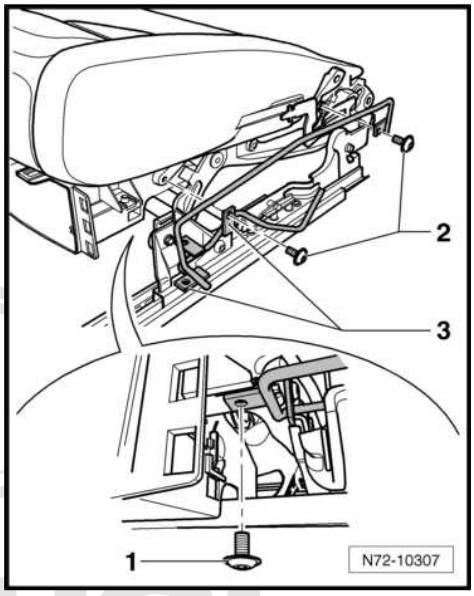
Ignore -item 2-.



Bracket for seat side trim (sill side), standard seat:

– If fitted, unscrew bolt -1-.

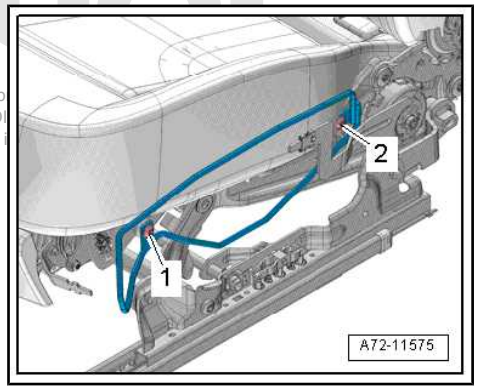
– Unscrew bolts -2- and detach bracket -3- from front seat.



Bracket for seat side trim (sill side), sports seat:

– Remove bolts -1- and -2-.

– Detach bracket -3- from front seat. Unfasten any cable ties from bracket.



Protected by copyright. Copying for p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI
with respect to the correctness of i

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with manual adjustment”, page 265

2.14.5 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - folding front passenger's seat

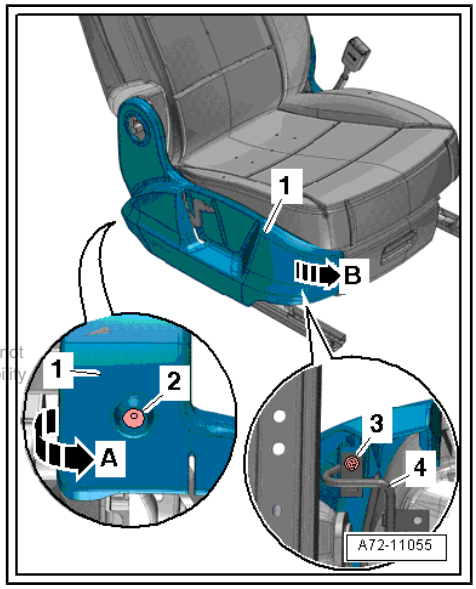
Note

Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.

Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and up as possible.
– Remove release lever ⇒ page 329 .
– Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ page 288 .
– Unscrew bolt -3- and remove fastener -2- for trim.
– Disengage trim (rear) -1- from seat -arrow A-.
– Lift trim (rear) slightly, disengage it from bracket -4- and detach it towards front -arrow B-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



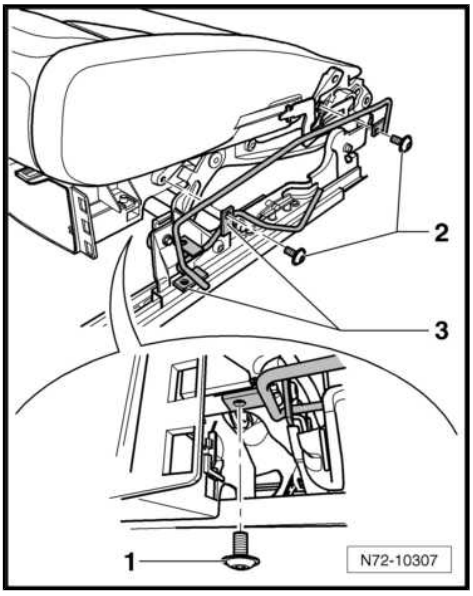
Bracket for seat side trim (sill side):

– If fitted, unscrew bolt -1-.
– Unscrew bolts -2- and detach bracket -3-.

Installing

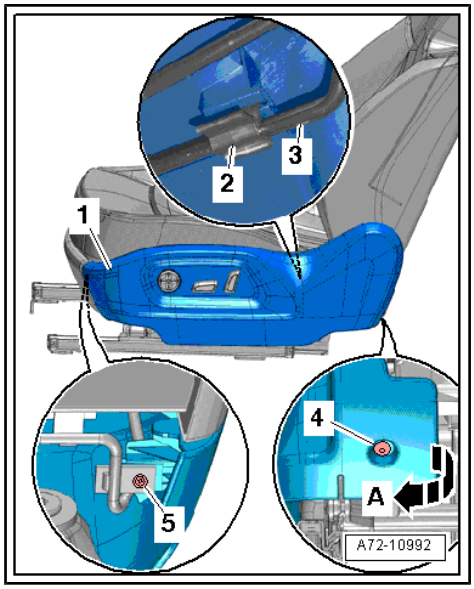
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.3 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on folding front passenger's seat", page 266



2.14.6 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side) - front seat with electric adjustment

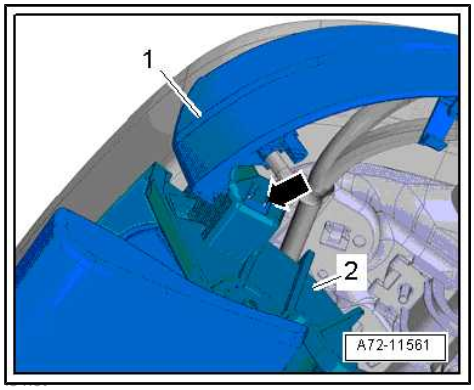
Removing



– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
– Remove spreader rivet -4- on seat side trim (sill side).
– Remove bolt -5-.
– Release clip -2- with a screwdriver.
– Disengage seat side trim (sill side) -1- at rear of backrest fitting and at seat frame -arrow A-.
– Pull trim (rear) up slightly and disengage it from bracket -3-.

Note

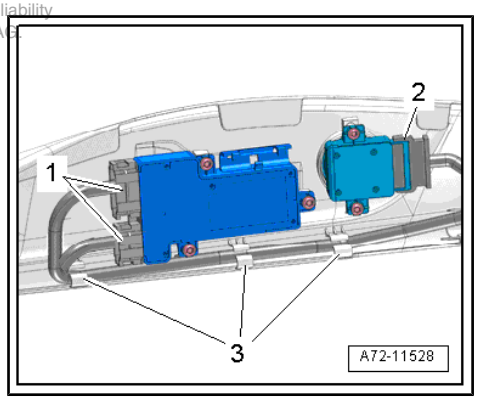
When detaching trim, take care not to damage brackets.



– Release catch -arrow- at storage compartment -2- and detach seat side trim (sill side) -1- upwards.
– Pull seat side trim (sill side) slightly off bracket towards front and lift off.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors:



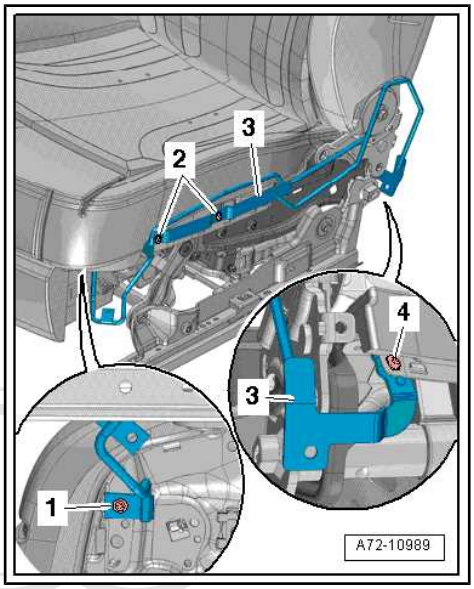
1 - Seat adjustment operating unit -E470- / -E471-
2 - Lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

– Move electrical wiring clear at bracket -3-.
– Detach seat side trim (sill side).

Bracket for seat side trim (sill side):

– Remove bolts -1, 2, 4-.

– Detach bracket -3- from front seat. Unfasten any cable ties from bracket.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Route electrical connectors and wires as shown in illustration.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with electric adjustment", page 268

2.14.7 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit -E470- / -E471-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

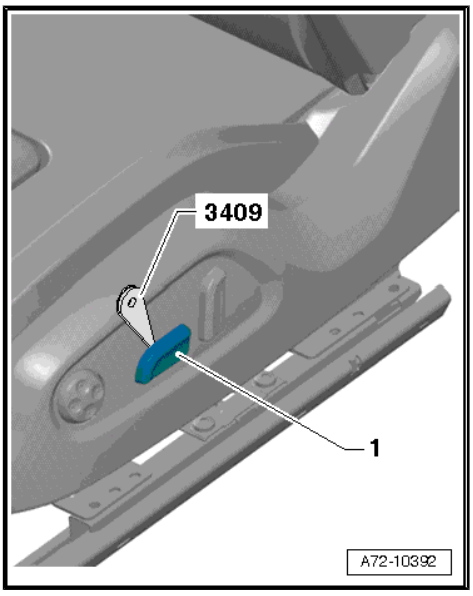
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

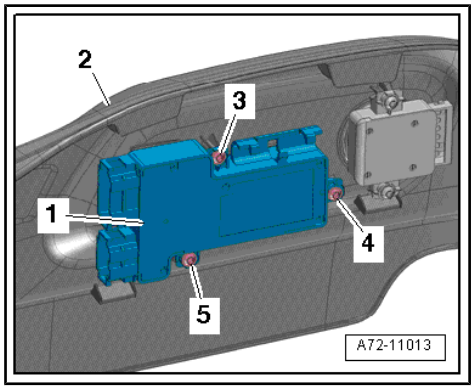
– Carefully prise seat adjustment actuator -1- and backrest adjustment actuator off fastener using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 316 .



– Remove bolts -3, 4, 5-.

– Detach operating unit -1- from seat side trim (sill side) -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.6 Exploded view - seat pan, operating unit for electric seat adjustment", page 270

2.14.8 Removing and installing seat side trim (tunnel side)

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

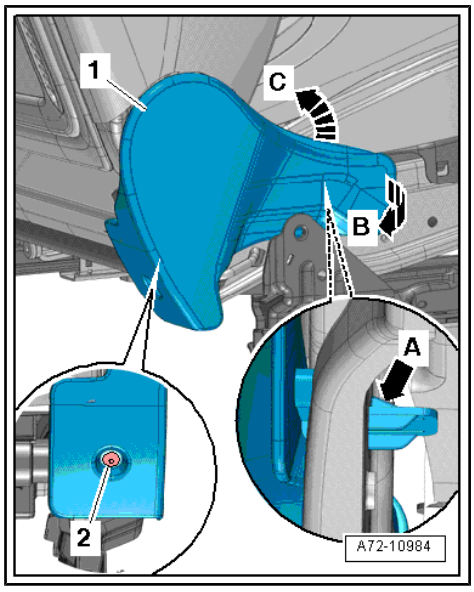
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .

– Remove spreader rivet -2- on seat side trim (tunnel side).

– Release retaining tab -arrow A- and pull trim -1- outwards -arrow B-.

– Disengage seat side trim (tunnel side) from backrest fitting in direction of -arrow C- and detach.



Installing

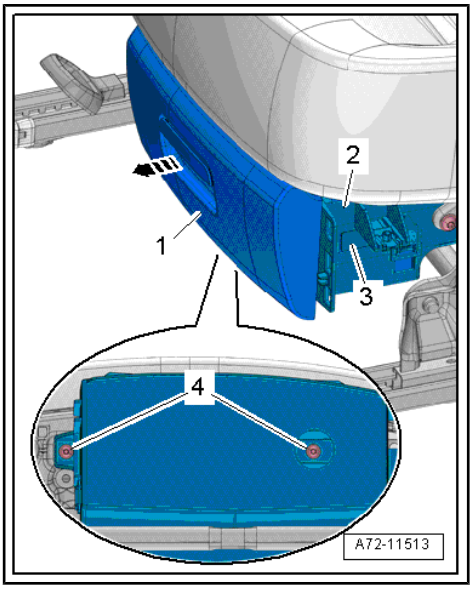
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on front seat with manual adjustment", page 265

2.14.9 Removing and installing mounting for drawer



Removing

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) with bracket:

♦ Standard seat ⇒ page 312

♦ Folding seat ⇒ page 314

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

– Pull drawer -1- as far as it will go out of mounting for drawer -arrow-.

– Using a screwdriver carefully press retaining tab -3- (left and right) outwards and at the same time pull drawer all the way out of mounting for drawer.

– Remove bolts -4-.

– Disengage mounting -2- for drawer from mountings in seat pan frame and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.5.11 Exploded view - seat pan, drawer", page 275

2.14.10 Removing and installing storage compartment

Removing

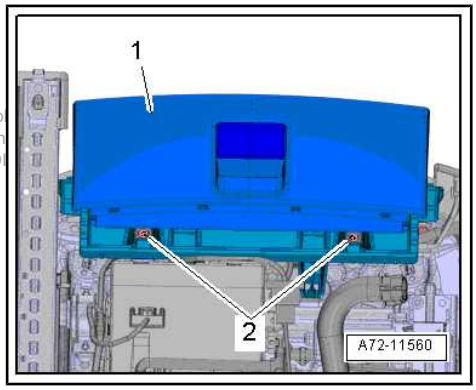
WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

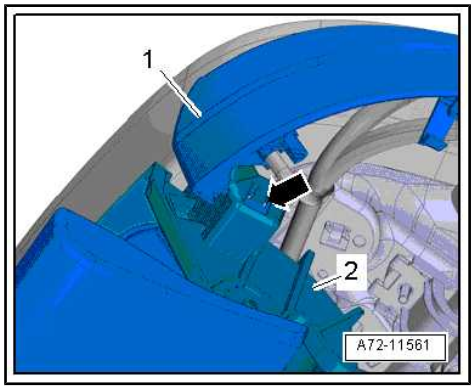
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .

– Open storage compartment -1- and unscrew bolts -2-.

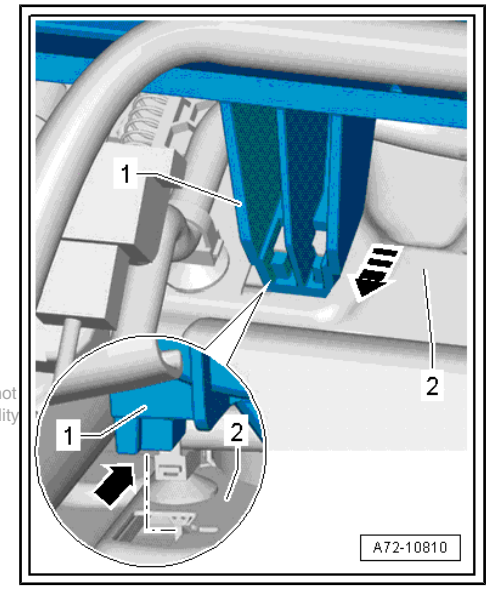


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release fastener -arrow- at storage compartment -2- and pull storage compartment slightly downwards off seat side trim (sill side) -1-.



– Push storage compartment -1- in direction of -arrow- and disengage catch -bottom arrow- of storage compartment from upper frame of seat pan -2-.
– Detach storage compartment from upper seat pan frame.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Copyright by AUDI AG. Any transmission or reproduction of this document or parts thereof to third parties without written permission by AUDI AG is prohibited. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

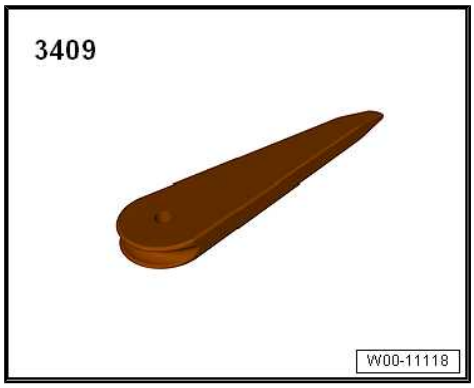
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.12 Exploded view - seat pan, storage compartment", page 276

2.14.11 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

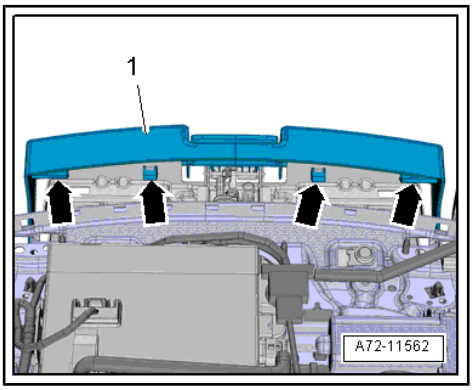
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .

– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 319 .

– Set seat depth adjuster as far forwards as it will go.

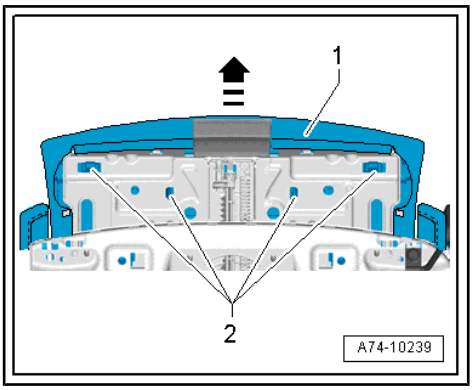
– Unclip retaining tabs -arrows- at trim -1- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Detach trim from seat depth adjuster.



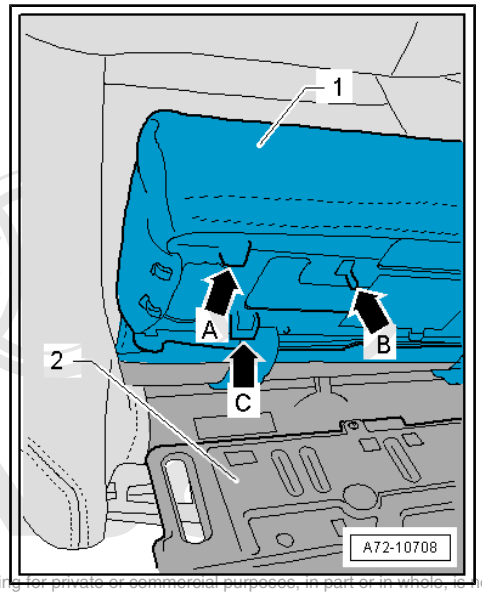
– Move seat depth adjuster -1- forwards as far as it will go -arrow-.

– Unclip fasteners -2- using removal wedge - 3409- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Swivel mounting bracket with padding and cover -1- for seat depth adjustment upwards so far that fasteners -arrow A- and -arrow B- remain disengaged.



Note

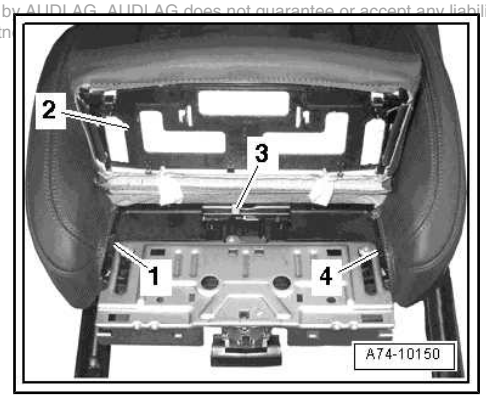
For greater clarity, the padding is shown detached in the illustration.

– Pull off mounting bracket with padding and cover for seat depth adjuster at an angle (upwards towards front).

– Disengage lugs -arrow C- at seat depth adjuster -2- and fold up mounting bracket with padding and cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctn

– Place mounting bracket -2- with padding and cover for seat depth adjustment on front seat.

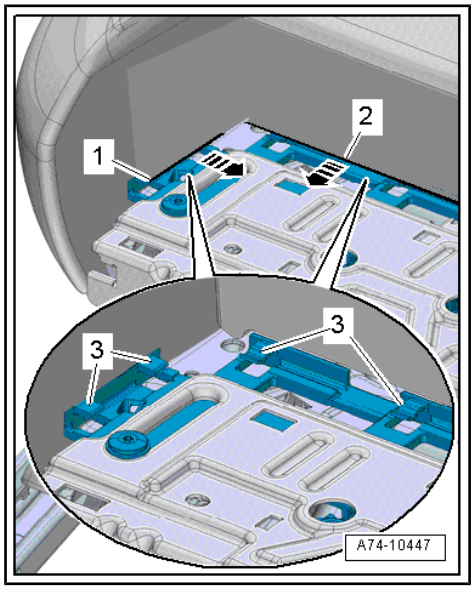


Note

For greater clarity, lower seat pan frame is not shown in illustration.

– Remove fastening strips -1, 3, 4- on seat cover from seat depth adjustment unit (diagonally and to side).

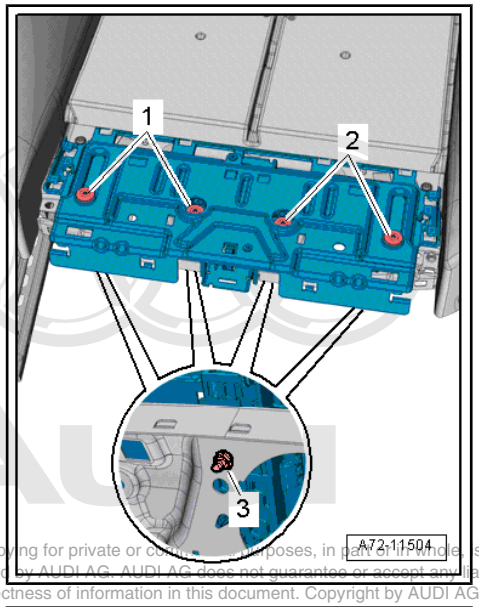
– To do so, unclip fastening strips -1- and -2- from retaining tabs -3- in direction of -arrows-.



Note

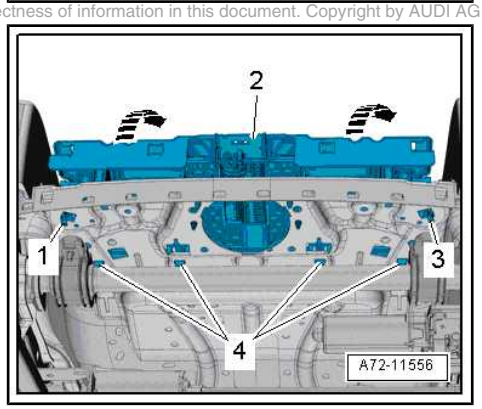
Proceed very carefully when removing and clipping in the component as the fasteners can be damaged quite easily.

– Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- and nuts -3- at seat depth adjuster.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unclip retaining tabs -1- and -3- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Pull seat depth adjuster -2- off seat pan at an angle (upwards towards front) -arrows-.
– At the same time disengage lugs -4- from seat pan.
– Detach seat depth adjuster from front seat.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.13 Exploded view - seat pan, seat depth adjuster", page 277

2.14.12 Renewing seat pan frame, seat with manual adjustment

Note

On front seats with manual adjustment, bottom part of seat should not be separated from top part of seat (seat pan).

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Caution

Move front seat to top position if possible. This reduces the spring force when removing and installing the seat height adjustment unit.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move front seat as far towards front as it will go and to highest position; then lower it by one stroke of the lever.
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 301 .
– Remove seat cover with padding:
- Standard seat/folding seat (front) ⇒ page 357
- Sports seat ⇒ page 359

Note

Remove wiring and components and install in new seat pan frame.

– Remove belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 91 .
– Remove seat height adjustment unit ⇒ page 288 .
– Remove mounting for drawer (standard seat) ⇒ page 319 .
– Remove storage compartment (sports seat) ⇒ page 319 .
– Remove seat rake adjuster (sports seat) ⇒ page 292 .
– Remove seat depth adjuster (sports seat) ⇒ page 320 .
– Detach electrical wiring harnesses and individual wires from seat pan frame.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Install all components and wires in new seat pan frame.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard/sports seat with manual adjustment", page 252

2.14.13 Removing and installing upper seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment

Note

The removal and installation procedures are described for a seat pan without seat depth adjustment. The procedures are similar for a seat pan with seat depth adjustment.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Caution

Move front seat to top position if possible. This will reduce the spring force when removing and installing the torsion bar and minimise the risk of damage to the bolt fittings between the seat pan upper and lower frame.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 302 .
– Remove seat cover with padding:
- Standard seat ⇒ page 357
- Sports seat ⇒ page 359

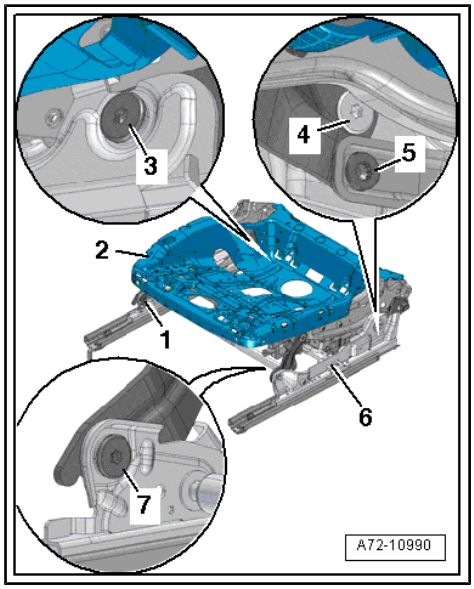
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.
– Unclip bracket for modular wire routing at lower seat pan frame.
– Unplug electrical connector for belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 91 .
– Unclip electrical wiring from lower seat pan frame and move to one side.

Caution

Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- ***A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.***



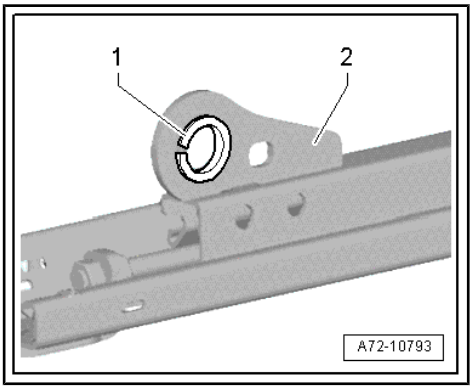
– Remove bolt -5-.
– Remove bolts -1, 3, 4 and 7- and detach upper seat pan frame -2- from lower frame -6-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*



– Equipment version with seat depth adjustment: Remove seat depth adjuster ⇒ page 320 .

– Remove seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246- ⇒ page 289 .

– Remove seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244- ⇒ page 294 .

– Detach electrical wiring harnesses and individual wires from upper seat pan frame.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.14 Exploded view - seat pan, front seat with electric adjustment", page 278 ,
⇒ "2.5.8 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjustment motor", page 272

2.14.14 Removing and installing lower seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment

The seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- is integrated into the lower seat pan frame and can only be renewed together with the lower seat pan frame.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– If possible, move front seat to topmost position in order to minimise pre-tension of torsion bar.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Remove belt buckle (front) ⇒ page 91 .

– Unclip electrical wiring from lower seat pan frame and move to one side.

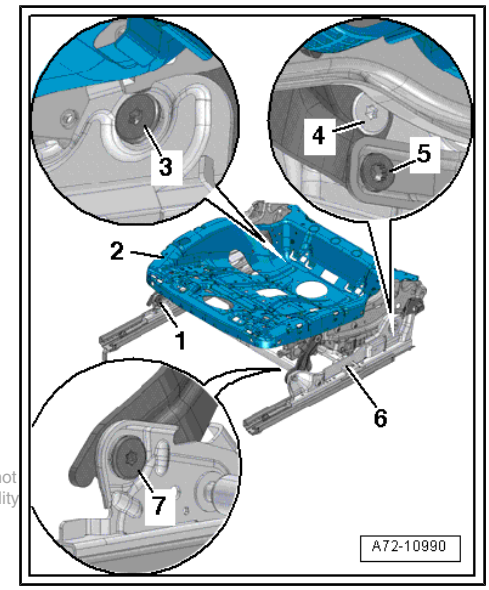
– Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.

– Unclip bracket for modular wire routing at lower seat pan frame.

Caution

Risk of damage to threaded holes or bushes in pivot points (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *A second mechanic is required to take hold of the backrest and press the seat downwards slightly when removing the bolts listed below.*



– Remove bolt -5-.

– Remove bolts -1-, -3-, -4- and -7-.

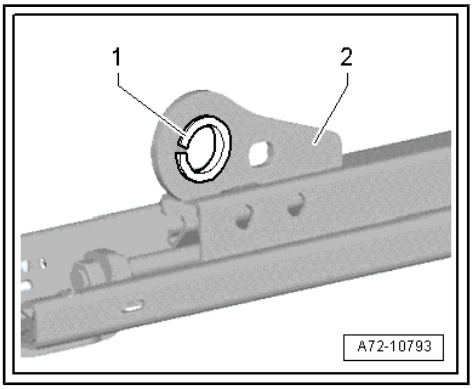
– Detach upper frame -2- from lower frame -6-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.14 Exploded view - seat pan, front seat with electric adjustment", page 278 ,
⇒ "2.5.8 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjustment motor", page 272

2.15 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism

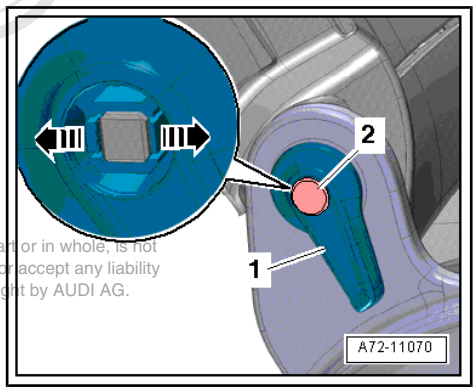
Note

Release mechanism only fitted on folding front passenger's seat.

Removing

– Use a screwdriver to remove cap -2-.

– Release retaining tabs -arrows- with a screwdriver and detach release lever -1- from backrest.



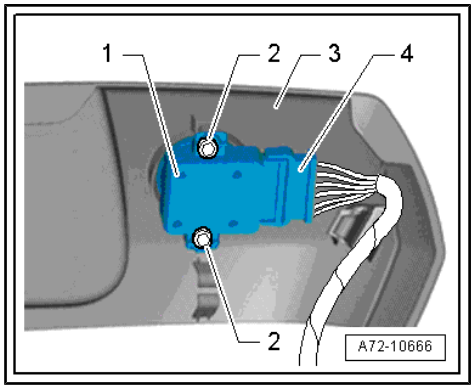
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.3 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side) on folding front passenger's seat", page 266

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.16 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-



Removing

– Remove seat side trim (sill side):

◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ page 312

◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 316

– Unplug electrical connector -4-.

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Detach switch -1- from trim -3-.

Installing

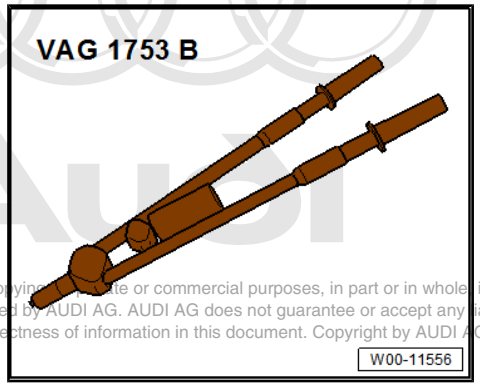
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.5.5 Exploded view - seat pan, lumbar support adjustment switches”, page 269

2.17 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor -V125- / -V126- / -V129- / -V130-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

◆ Drill

◆ Safety goggles

Removing

WARNING

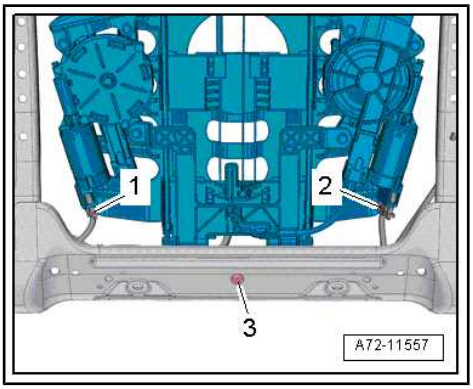
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .

– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 360 .

– Unplug electrical connectors -1- and -2- at longitudinal and height adjustment motors of lumbar support.



WARNING

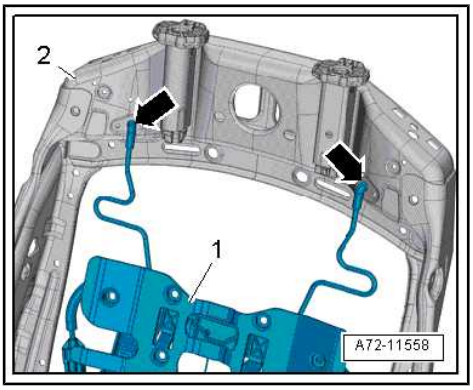
Risk of eye injuries.

- *Wear safety goggles!*

– Drill out rivet -3-.

– Move electrical wiring harness clear at lumbar support.

– Swivel lumbar support -1- forwards at bottom, disengage from top of outer backrest frame -2- -arrows- and detach.



Installing

– Engage lumbar support -1- at top of outer backrest frame -2- -arrows- and swivel to rear at bottom.

– Rivet lumbar support to outer backrest frame.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.3.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support”, page 260

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.18 Removing and installing heated front seats control unit - J774-

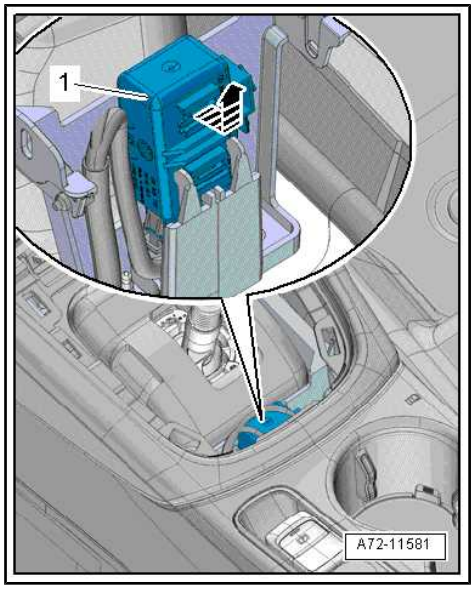
Removing

– Remove insert for centre console ⇒ page 40 .

– Pull heated front seats control unit - J774- -item 1- slightly to rear until retaining tabs are disengaged and then lift out control unit -arrow-.

– Release catch and unplug electrical connector.

– Detach heated front seats control unit - J774- .



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ page 250

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Rear seats

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 333

⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism”, page 335

⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide”, page 336

⇒ “3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest”, page 337

⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 339

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats”, page 340

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 340

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 341

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 342

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism”, page 346

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest”, page 347

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing trim frame for load-through hatch”, page 347

⇒ “3.13 Removing and installing flap for load-through hatch”, page 348

⇒ “3.14 Removing and installing centre armrest”, page 349

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats

1 - Mounting (front)

- ❑ For securing rear seat bench
- ❑ Welded to vehicle floor

2 - Cover

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 97
- ❑ Must be seated firmly in anchor

3 - Guide

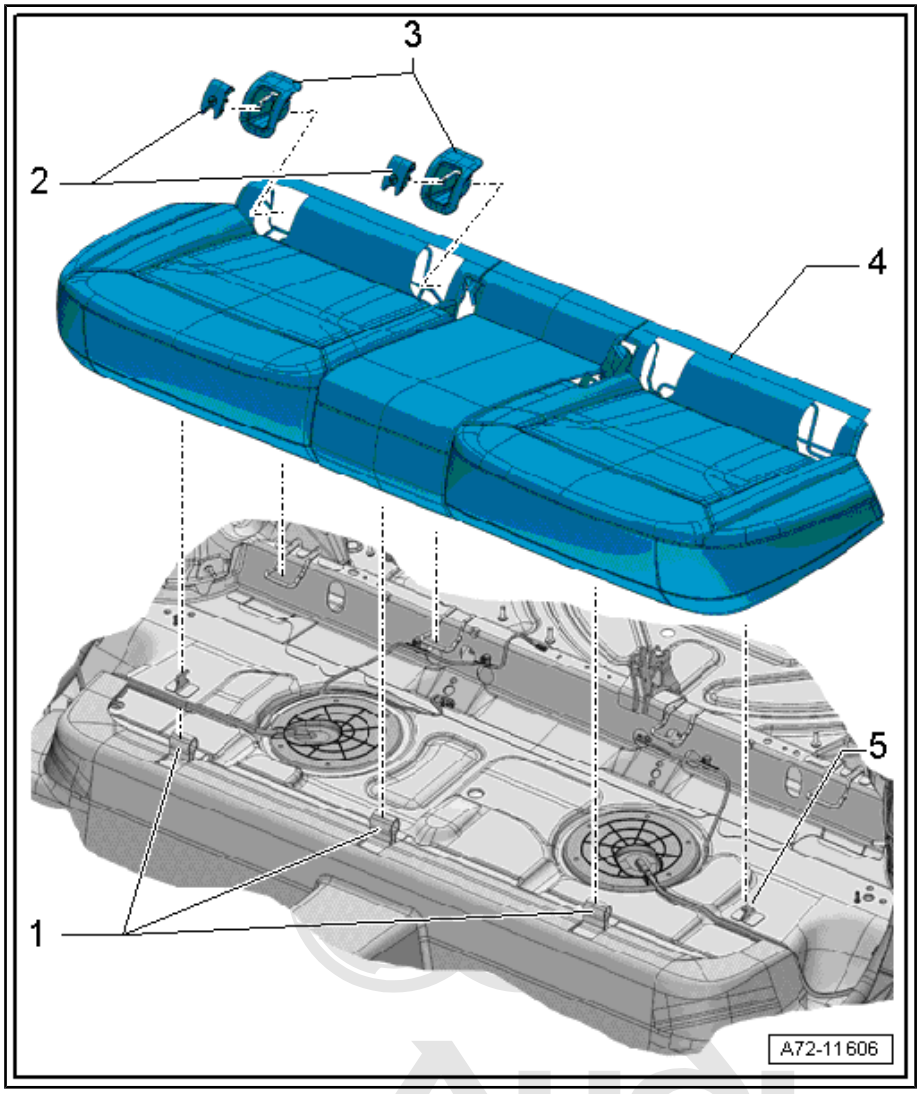
- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 97
- ❑ Must be seated firmly in anchor

4 - Rear seat bench

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340
- ❑ Seat frame must engage correctly in mountings

5 - Mounting (side)

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For securing rear seat bench
- ❑ Welded to vehicle floor



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism

Note

The exploded view refers to the locking mechanism for the 1/3 section (left-side) of the rear seat backrest. The locking mechanism for the 2/3 section (right-side) of the rear seat backrest is similar.

1 - Outer backrest frame of rear seat

2 - Trim

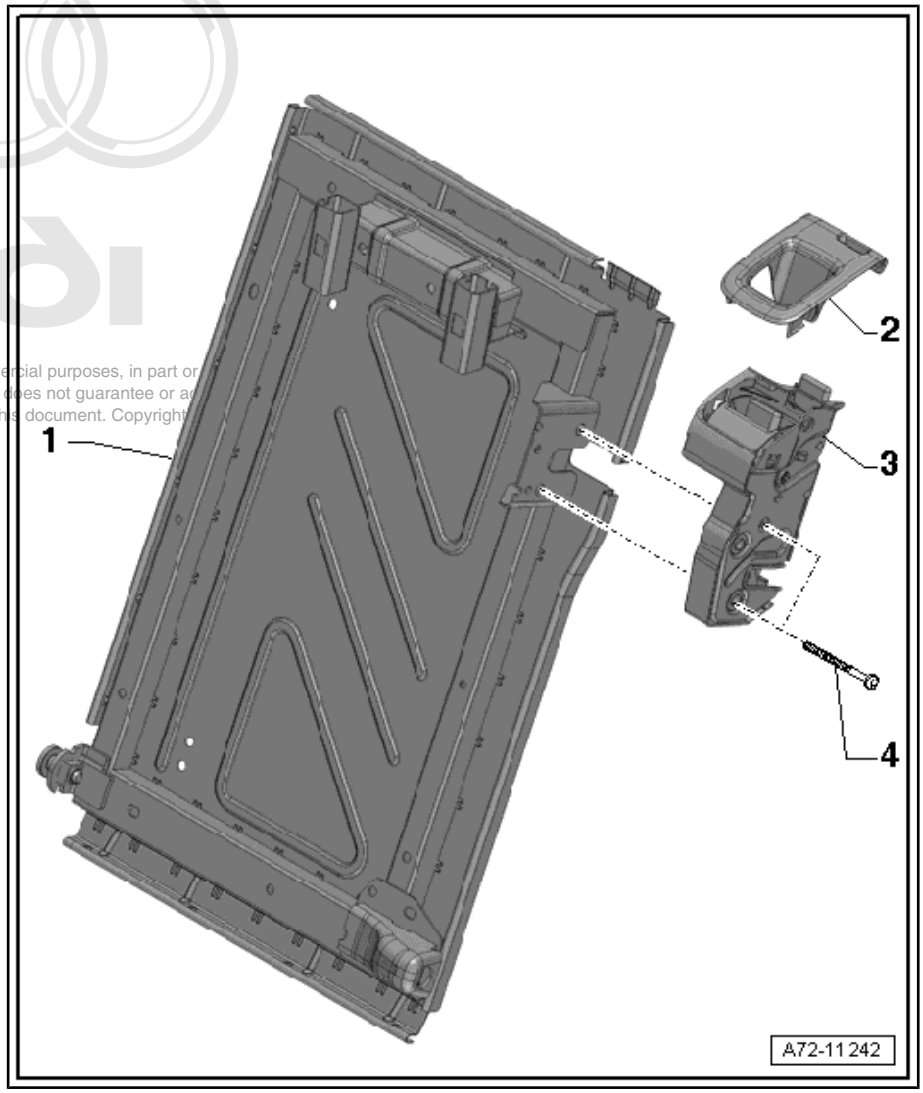
- For locking mechanism
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 346
- Press on until it engages audibly

3 - Locking mechanism

- For rear seat backrest
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 347

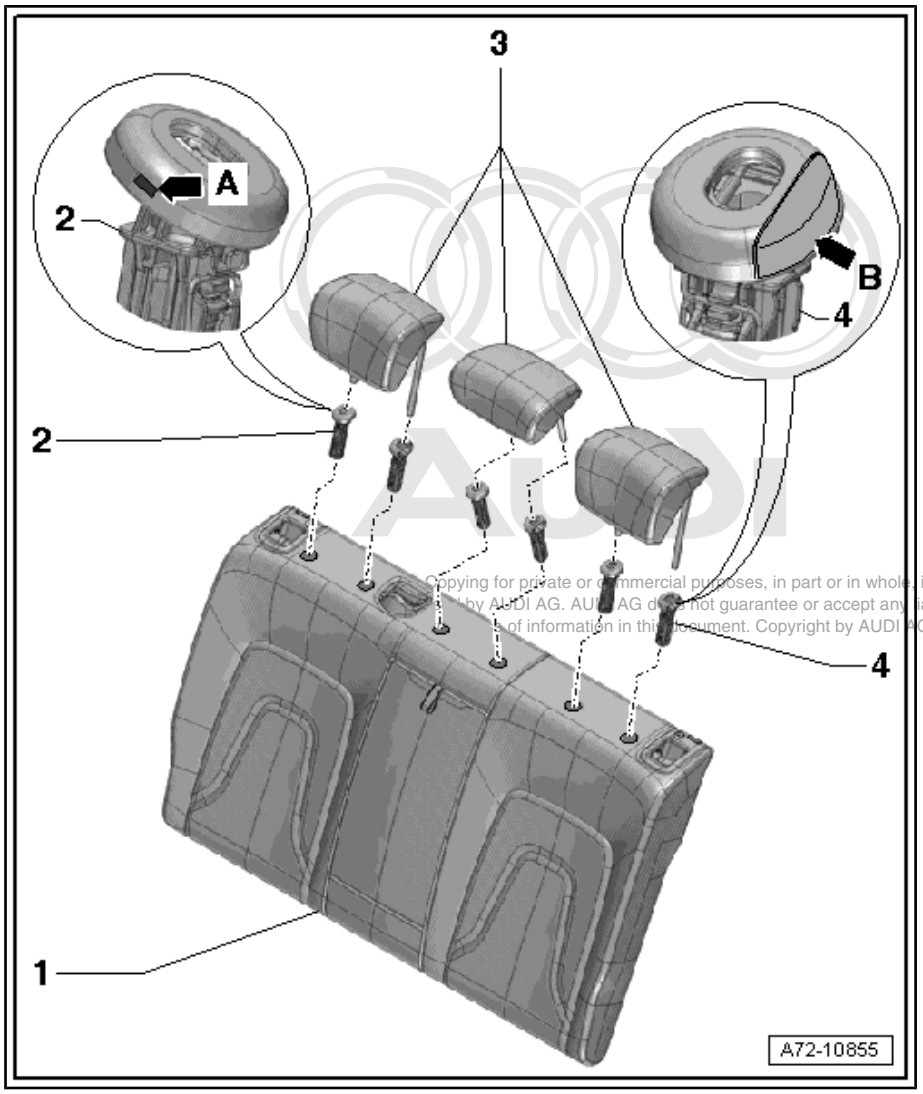
4 - Bolt

- 2x
- 25 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide



1 - Rear seat backrest

2 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With retaining clip -arrow A-
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341
- ❑ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting at head restraint frame
- ❑ Slide in until retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame of rear seat

3 - Head restraints

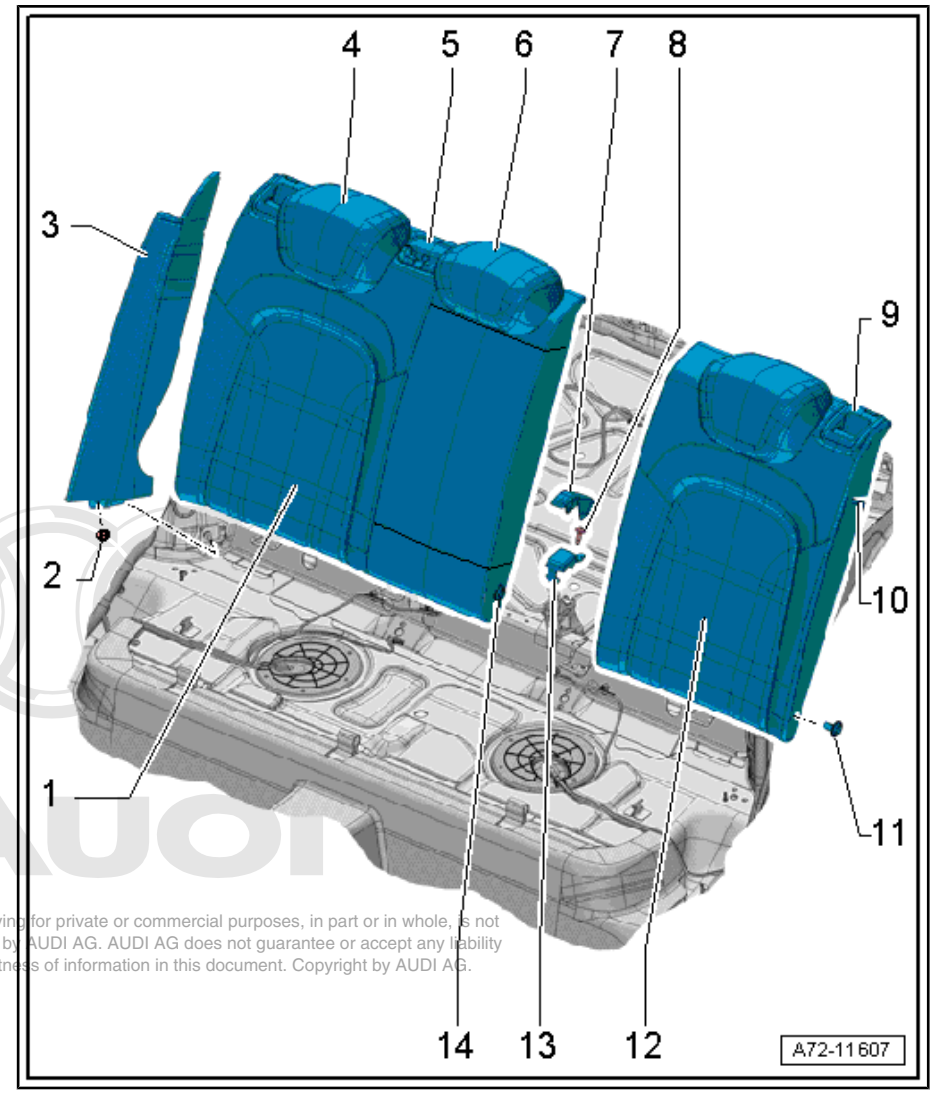
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340
- ❑ Must be locked in head restraint guides

4 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With button for head restraint height adjustment -arrow B-
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341
- ❑ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting at head restraint frame
- ❑ Slide in until retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame of rear seat

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest



1 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

2 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Side padding with side airbag (rear)

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Driver side: with rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ❑ Passenger side: with rear side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N202-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 344
- ❑ First engage in belt guide (top)

4 - Outer head restraint

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340

5 - Centre belt guide (rear)

- ❑ Renew entire belt guide if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 86

6 - Head restraint (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340

7 - Cover

- ❑ For centre bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

9 - Trim

- ❑ For locking mechanism
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 346
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

This is a copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Locking mechanism

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 347

11 - Outer bearing sleeve

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in outer backrest frame of rear seat and press on as far as stop

12 - 1/3 section of rear seat backrest (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

13 - Retaining clip

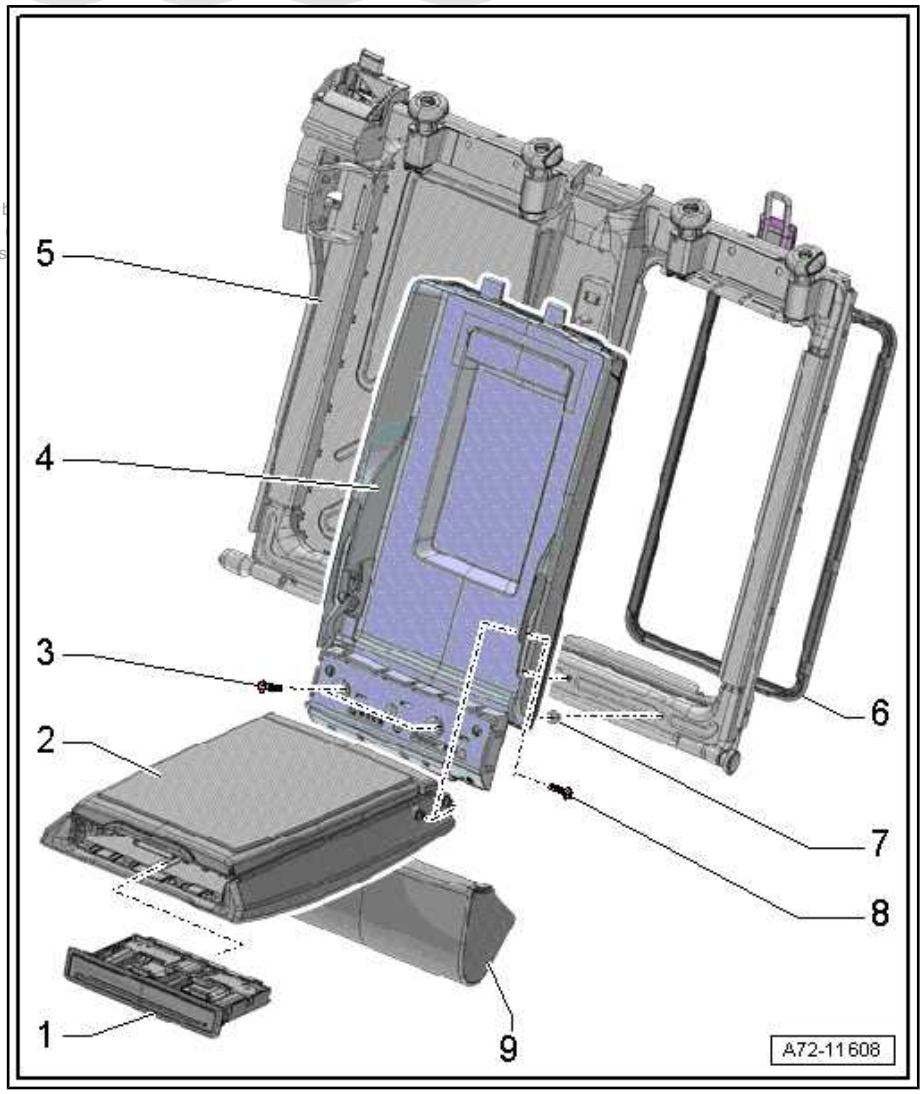
- ❑ For centre bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

14 - Inner pivot pin

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 13.5 Nm
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.9.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 342

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest



1 - Cup holder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 349
- ❑ Insert and press on until it engages audibly

2 - Centre armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 349

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Secured with securing clip -item 7-
- ❑ 9 Nm

4 - Flap

- ❑ For load-through hatch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 348

5 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)

- ❑ With load-through hatch
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

6 - Trim frame

- ❑ For load-through hatch
- ❑ Clipped into rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 347
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

7 - Securing clip

- ❑ For bolt -item 3-
- ❑ 2x

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 12 Nm

9 - Intermediate padding

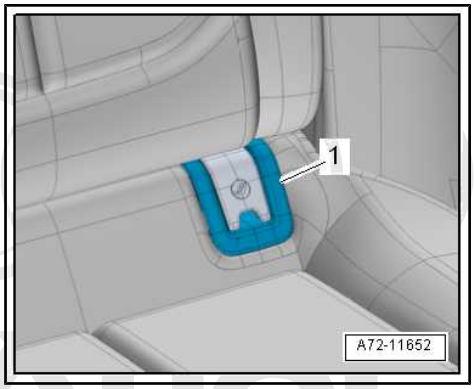
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 377
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

3.6 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats

Removing

– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.

– Unclip guides for child seat anchor (4x) -1- from anchors ⇒ page 97 .



– Reach underneath rear seat bench frame on one side with both hands.

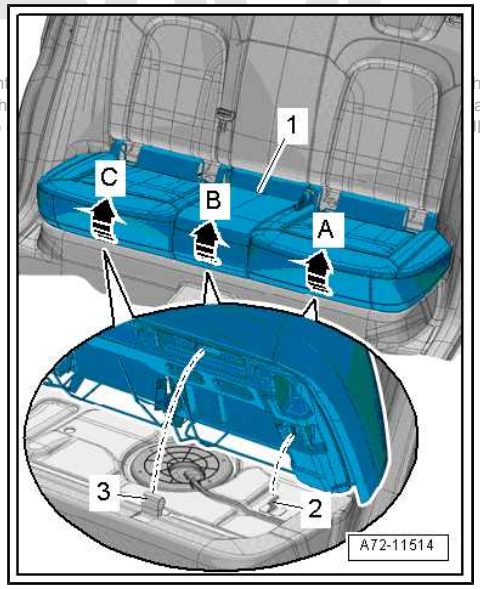
– Using both hands, pull rear seat bench -1- firmly and abruptly upwards -arrow A- to disengage frame for rear seat bench from mounting (front) -3-.

– Repeat procedure in centre and on opposite side of rear seat bench -arrows B and C-.

– Press side of rear seat bench to rear to disengage frame for rear seat bench from mounting (side) -2-.

– Repeat procedure on opposite side of rear seat bench.

– Take rear seat bench out of vehicle.



Installing

– Fit rear seat bench, guide in belt buckle and press seat frame -1- firmly into mountings -2, 3-.

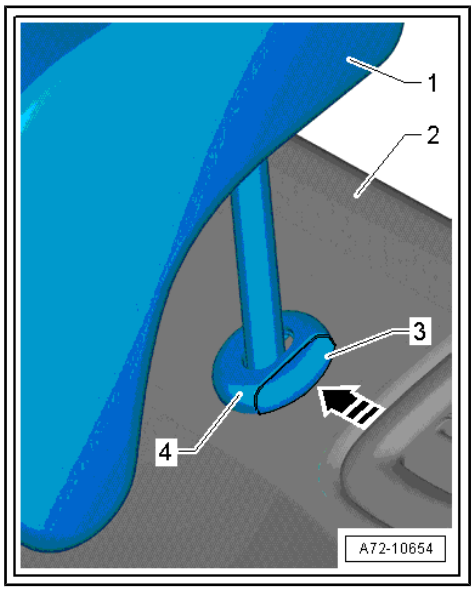
Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 333

3.7 Removing and installing head restraint

Removing

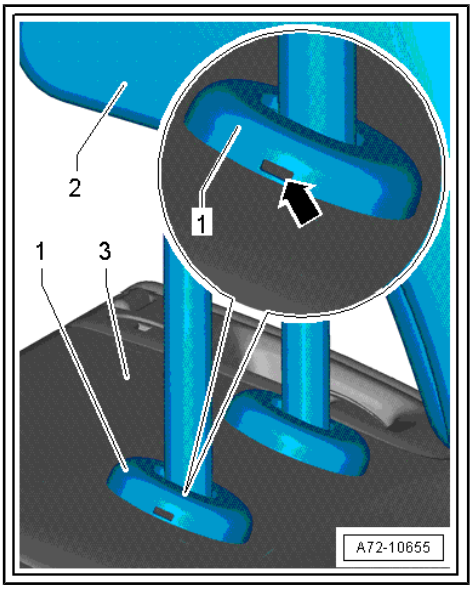
– Press release button -3- for height adjustment at head restraint guide -4- in direction of -arrow- and at the same time pull head restraint -1- as far as possible out of rear seat backrest -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Use a small flat screwdriver to press locking spring as far as it will go in opening -arrow- of head restraint guide -1-.

– At the same time, pull head restraint -2- out of rear seat backrest -3- and detach.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide", page 336

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.8 Removing and installing head restraint guide

Removing

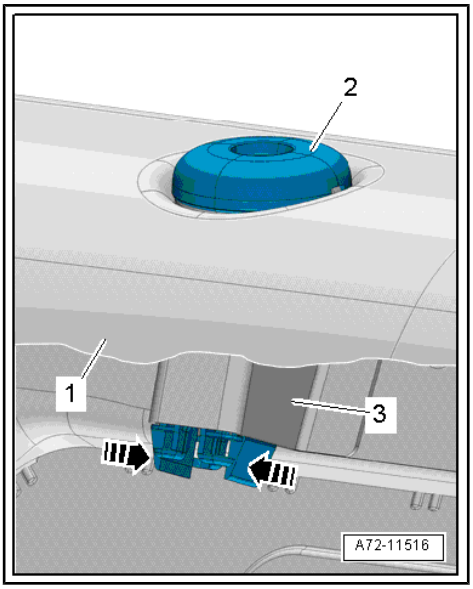
– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 340 .

– Unfasten backrest cover with backrest padding from outer backrest frame of rear seat ⇒ page 375 .

Head restraint guide (right-side):

– Fold backrest cover with padding -1- upwards until head restraint post -3- welded into outer backrest frame of rear seat with head restraint guide -2- is visible.

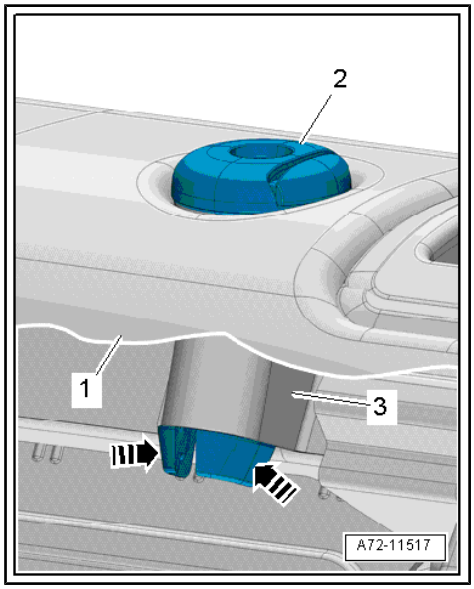
– Press in retaining tabs of head restraint guide with pliers -arrows- and at the same time pull head restraint guide out of outer backrest frame of rear seat.



Head restraint guide (left-side):

– Fold backrest cover with padding -1- upwards until head restraint post -3- welded into outer backrest frame of rear seat with head restraint guide -2- is visible.

– Press in retaining tabs of head restraint guide with pliers -arrows- and at the same time pull head restraint guide out of outer backrest frame of rear seat.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.3 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide", page 336

3.9 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

⇒ "3.9.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest", page 342

⇒ "3.9.2 Removing and installing side padding with side airbag (rear)", page 344

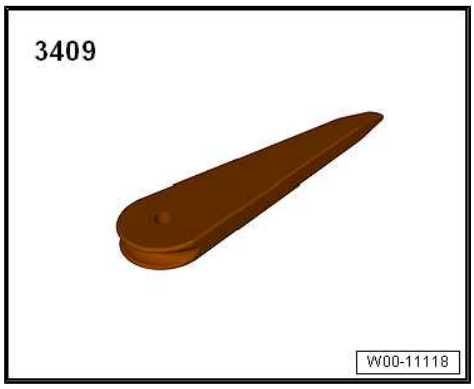
3.9.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

Note

Removal and installation are described for the 2/3 section of the rear seat backrest (right-side). The procedures are similar for the 1/3 section of the rear seat backrest (left-side).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

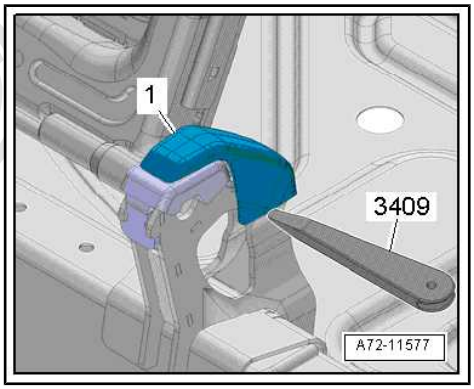
– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 340 .

– 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side): Remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 92 .

– Fold down backrests (rear).

– Remove cover -1- for centre bracket.

– To do so, release side retaining tabs on cover using removal wedge - 3409- .



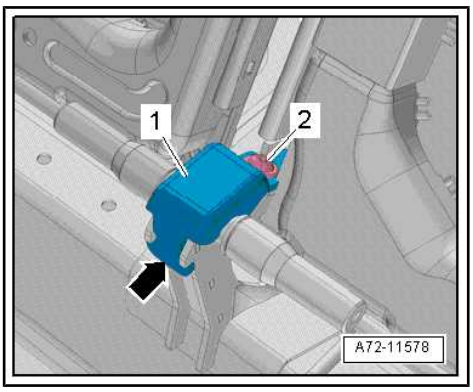
Note

For greater clarity the padding and cover are not shown in the illustration.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolt -2- for retaining clip.

– Disengage retaining clip -1- from centre bracket -arrow- and detach.



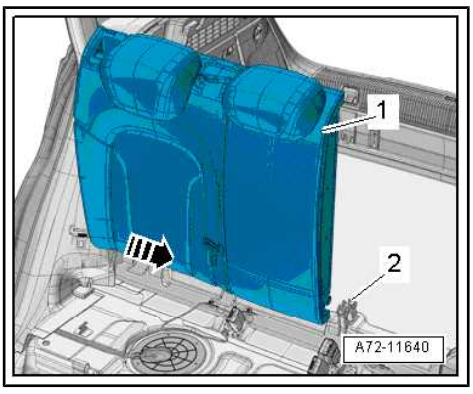
Note

For greater clarity the padding and cover are not shown in the illustration.

– Fold down rear seat backrest -1- slightly.

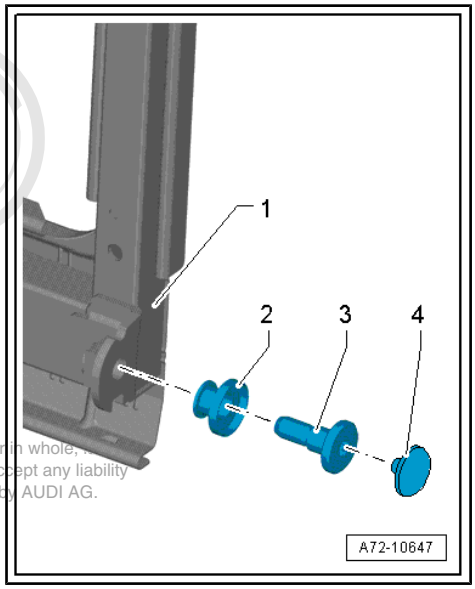
– Lift rear seat backrest out of centre bracket -2-.

– Pull rear seat backrest out of outer mounting towards centre of vehicle -arrow- and remove from vehicle.



Remove inner pivot pin:

– Detach abrasion guard -4- and remove pivot pin -3- from outer backrest frame -1- of rear seat.



Note

For greater clarity the padding and cover are not shown in the illustration.

– Detach bearing sleeve -2- from pivot pin.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 337

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.9.2 Removing and installing side padding with side airbag (rear)

Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 340 .

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 4 .*

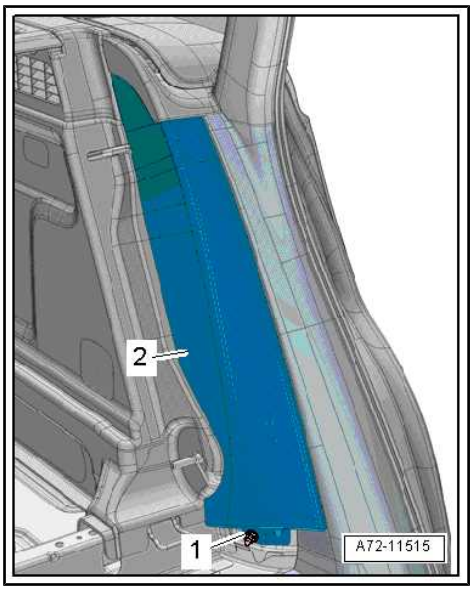
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

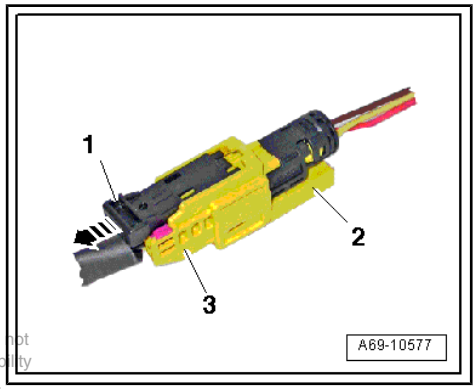
– Unscrew nut -1-.

– Hold belt to one side and pull bottom of side padding -2- off studs.

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Pull side padding downwards and take out of belt guide.





WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug electrical connector (yellow) for side airbag (rear).
– To do so, pull catch -1- in direction of -arrow- and disconnect electrical connectors -2- and -3-.
– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 286 .

Technical data is for copyright of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Note

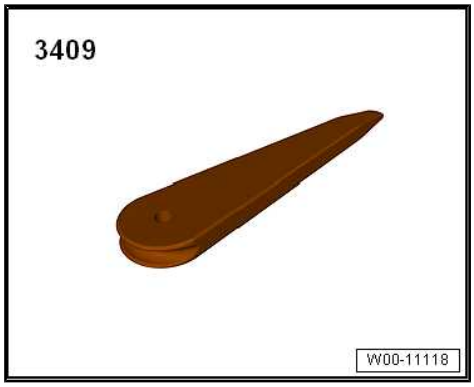
If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 337 , ⇒ "8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)", page 124

3.10 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



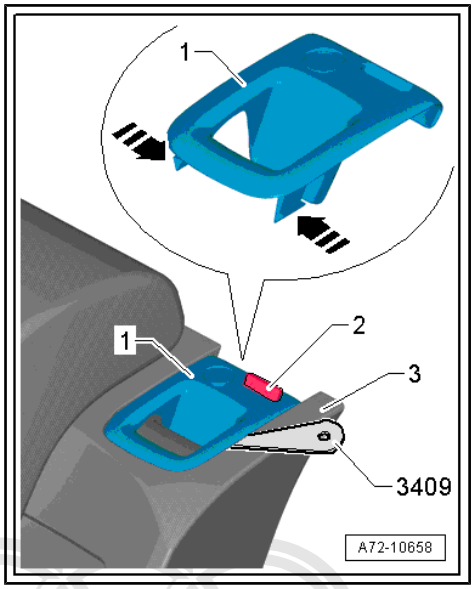
Removing

– Release rear seat backrest.

– Make sure button -2- (indicator) is in »top« position.

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , press fasteners in direction of -arrows- on both sides of trim.

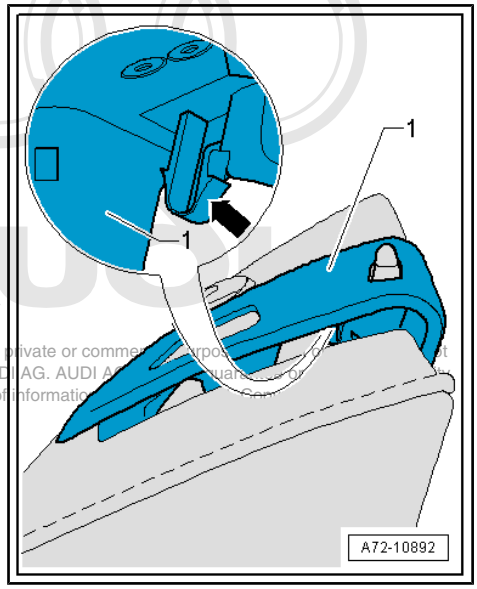
– At the same time lift trim -1- off rear seat backrest -3-.



– Lift trim -1- at front as far as possible off rear seat backrest.

– Use a flat screwdriver to prise catch -arrow- at rear of trim out of locking mechanism.

– Lift trim off rear seat backrest.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure button moves freely after installing trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism”, page 335

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

3.11 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest

Removing

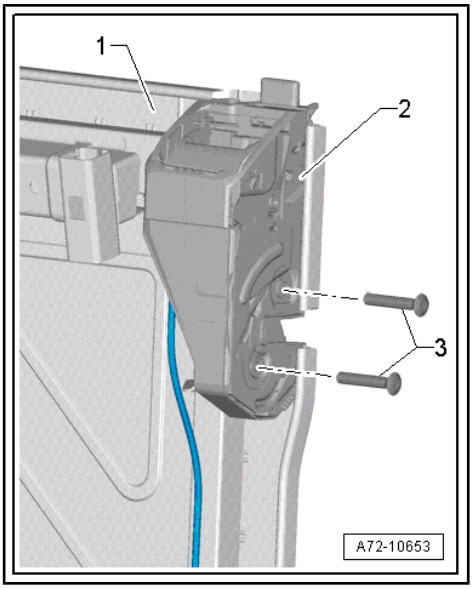
– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 342 .

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 340 .

– Remove padding from rear seat backrest in area of locking mechanism ⇒ page 375 .

– Remove bolts -3-.

– Detach locking mechanism -2- from outer backrest frame -1- of rear seat.



Installing

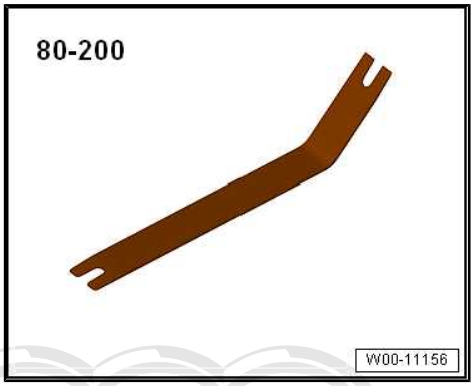
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism", page 335

3.12 Removing and installing trim frame for load-through hatch

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



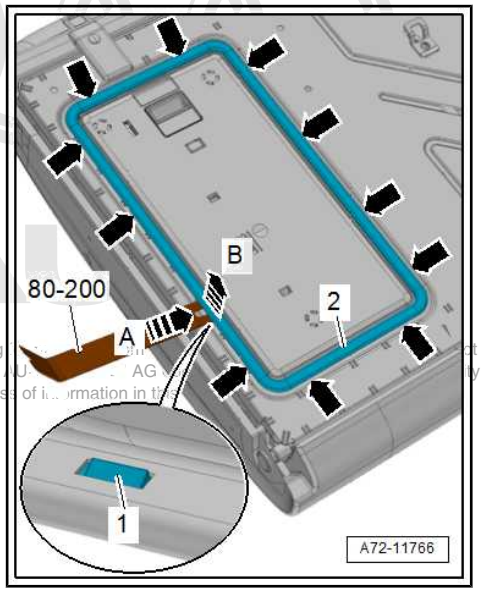
Removing

– Fold down centre armrest (rear) and open flap for load-through hatch.

– Press removal lever - 80-200- against trim frame -arrow A- to release retaining tab -1- for trim frame on rear seat backrest.

– At the same time, prise trim frame -2- off rear seat backrest -arrow B-.

– Repeat process for other retaining tabs -arrows-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

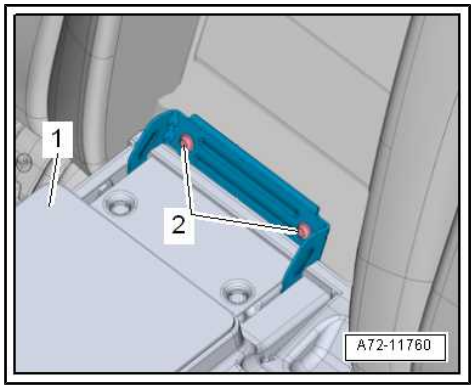
– Make sure trim frame engages fully in rear seat backrest.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest", page 339

Protected by copyright. Copying ... AG ... with respect to the correctness of ... information in t...

3.13 Removing and installing flap for load-through hatch

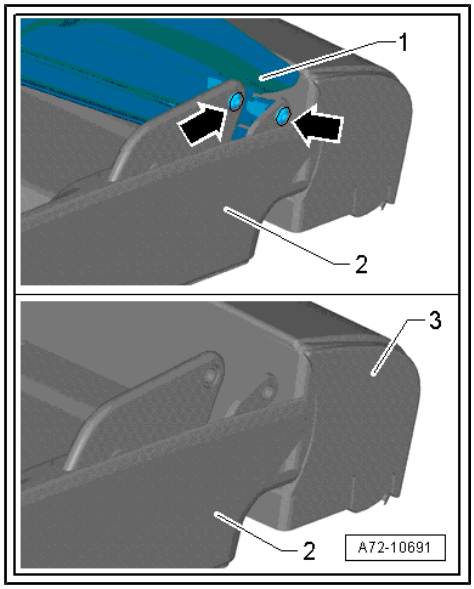
Removing



– Fold down centre armrest and open flap for load-through hatch.
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Detach centre armrest with flap -1- for load-through hatch.

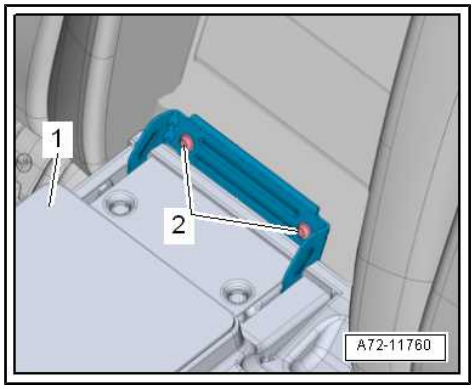
Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Fold up centre armrest (rear) -1- so that it is 2/3 open.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach flap for load-through hatch -2- from centre armrest.
– Remove intermediate padding -3- at bottom ⇒ page 377 .

Installing



– Position flap -1- for load-through hatch with centre armrest and only hand-tighten bolts.
– Close and align flap for load-through hatch.
– Tighten bolts -2- at rear seat backrest.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 339

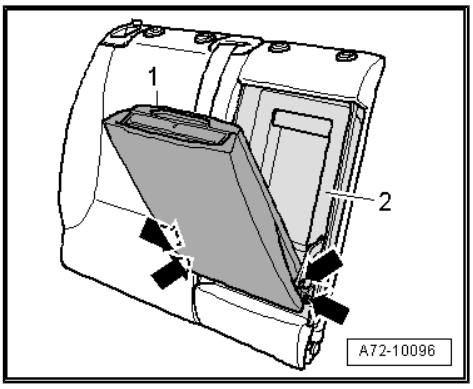
3.14 Removing and installing centre armrest

⇒ “3.14.1 Removing and installing centre armrest”, page 349

⇒ “3.14.2 Removing and installing cup holder”, page 349

3.14.1 Removing and installing centre armrest

Removing



– Open centre armrest (rear) by $^{2}/_{3}$.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach centre armrest (rear) -1- from flap of load-through hatch -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

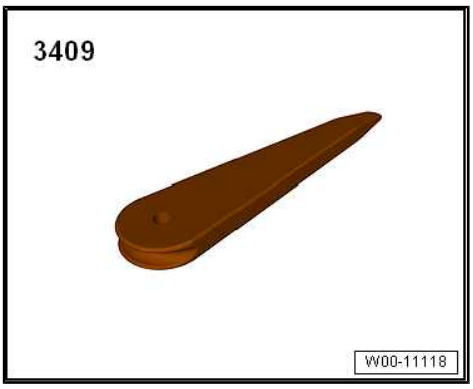
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 339

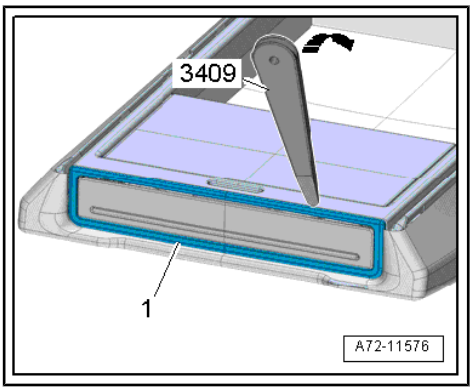
3.14.2 Removing and installing cup holder

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

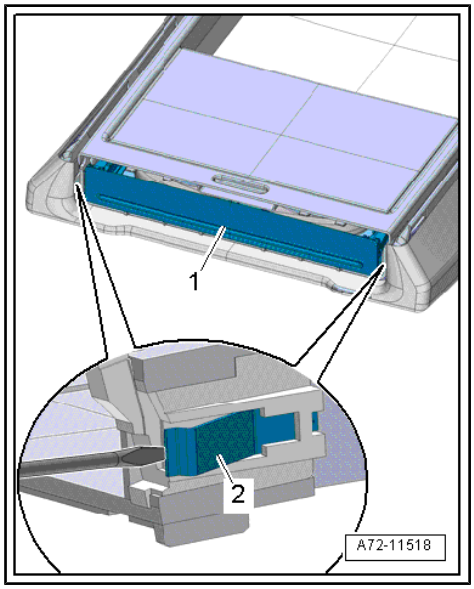


– Fold down centre armrest.

– Prise off trim -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow-.

– Detach trim from centre armrest.

– Open cup holder flap -1-.
– Using a screwdriver, release each spring -2- and remove cup holder by carefully pulling alternately on both sides.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest", page 339

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

74 – Seat - padding, covers

1 Covers and padding on front seats

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding”, page 351

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding”, page 354

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding”, page 355

⇒ “1.4 Overview - seat heating elements”, page 356

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding”, page 357

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding”, page 360

⇒ “1.7 Separating seat pan cover and padding”, page 362

⇒ “1.8 Separating backrest cover and padding”, page 364

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding”, page 364

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 ”, page 367

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 ”, page 369

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding

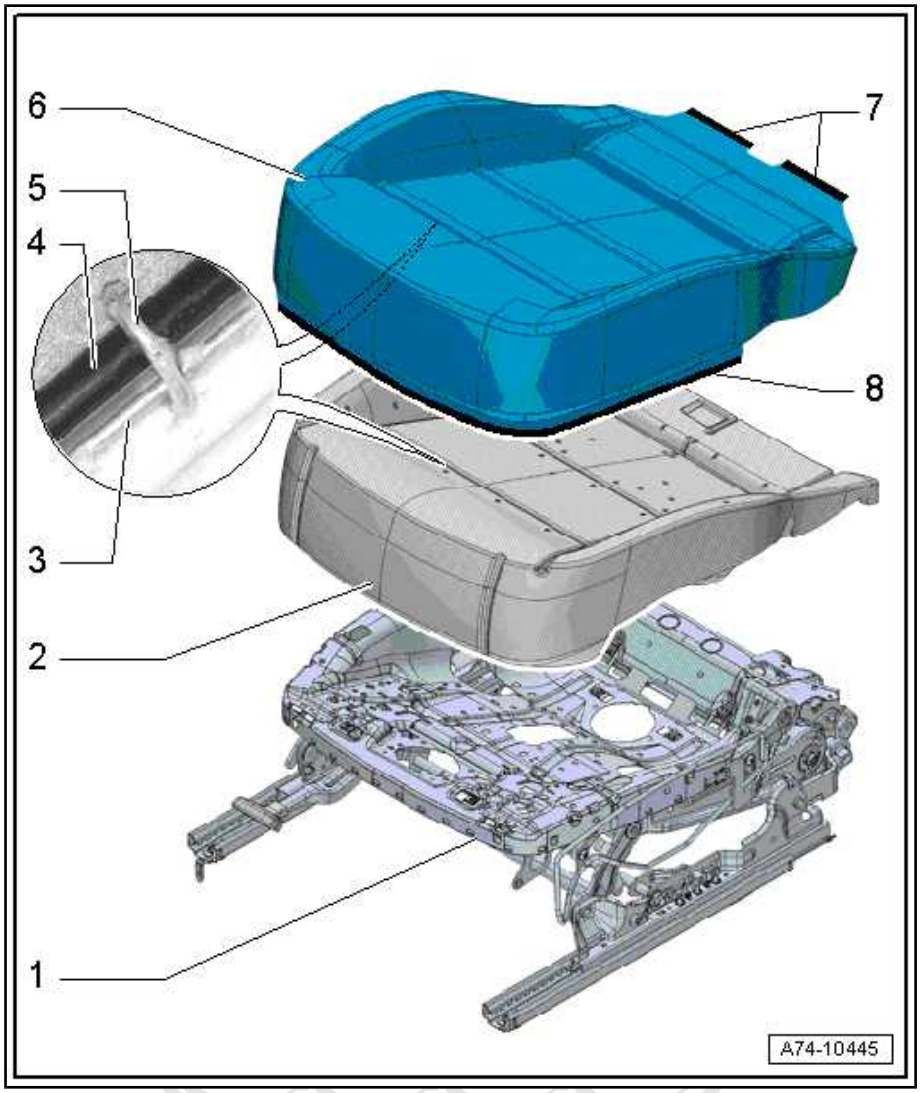
⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat/folding seat”, page 351

⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat”, page 353

1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat/folding seat

Note

The illustration shows the seat with fabric cover (equipment version).



1 - Seat pan

2 - Seat padding

- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 357
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 362
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in seat padding
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

4 - Contour strip

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

5 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

6 - Seat cover

- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 357
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 362
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

7 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

8 - Piping

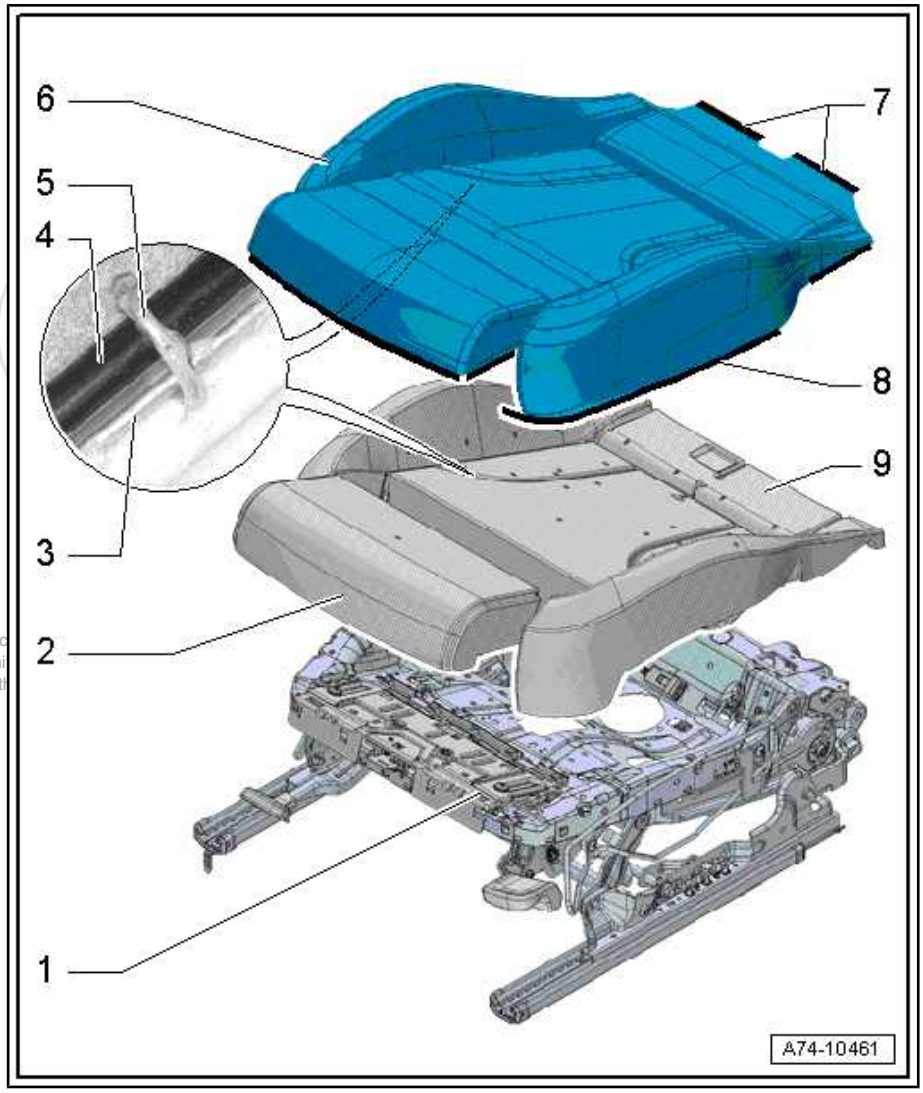
- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat

Note

The illustration shows the seat with leather cover (equipment version).



1 - Seat pan

2 - Seat padding

- For seat depth adjustment
- Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 359
- Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 363
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Wire

- Foam-fitted in seat padding
- For attaching seat cover to seat padding

4 - Contour strip

- Stitched to seat cover
- For attaching seat cover to seat padding

5 - Upholstery clip

- For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- Renew
- Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

6 - Seat cover

- Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 359
- Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 363
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- After installing, make sure there are no creases

7 - Piping

- Stitched to seat cover
- For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

8 - Piping

- Stitched to seat cover
- For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

9 - Seat padding

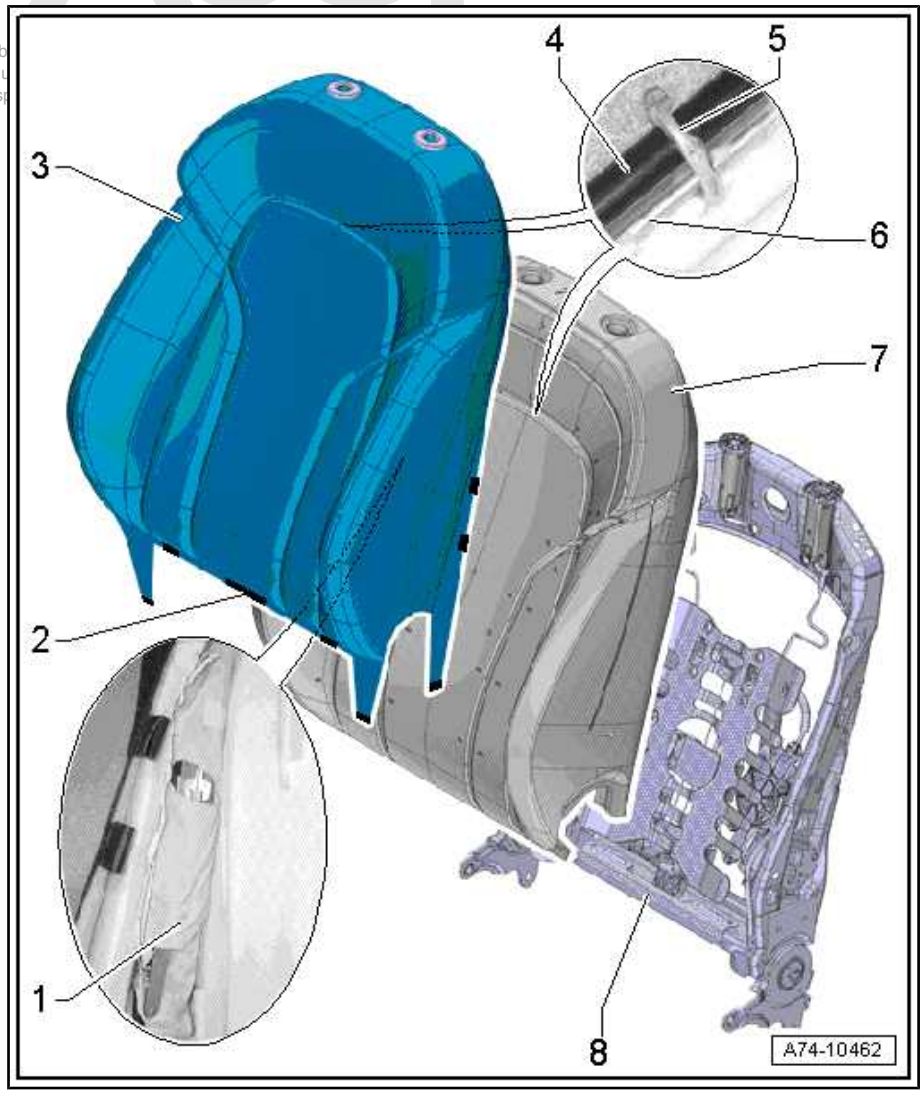
- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 359
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 363
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding

Note

The illustration shows the seat with leather cover (equipment version).

Protected b
permitted u
with resp



1 - Pouch

- ❑ For side airbag
- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover

2 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in outer backrest frame

3 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 360
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 364
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

4 - Contour strip

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

5 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

6 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

7 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 360
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 364
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

8 - Outer backrest frame

1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding

1 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Flat strip and U-strip

2 - Cover

- ❑ Equipment version: leather
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 364

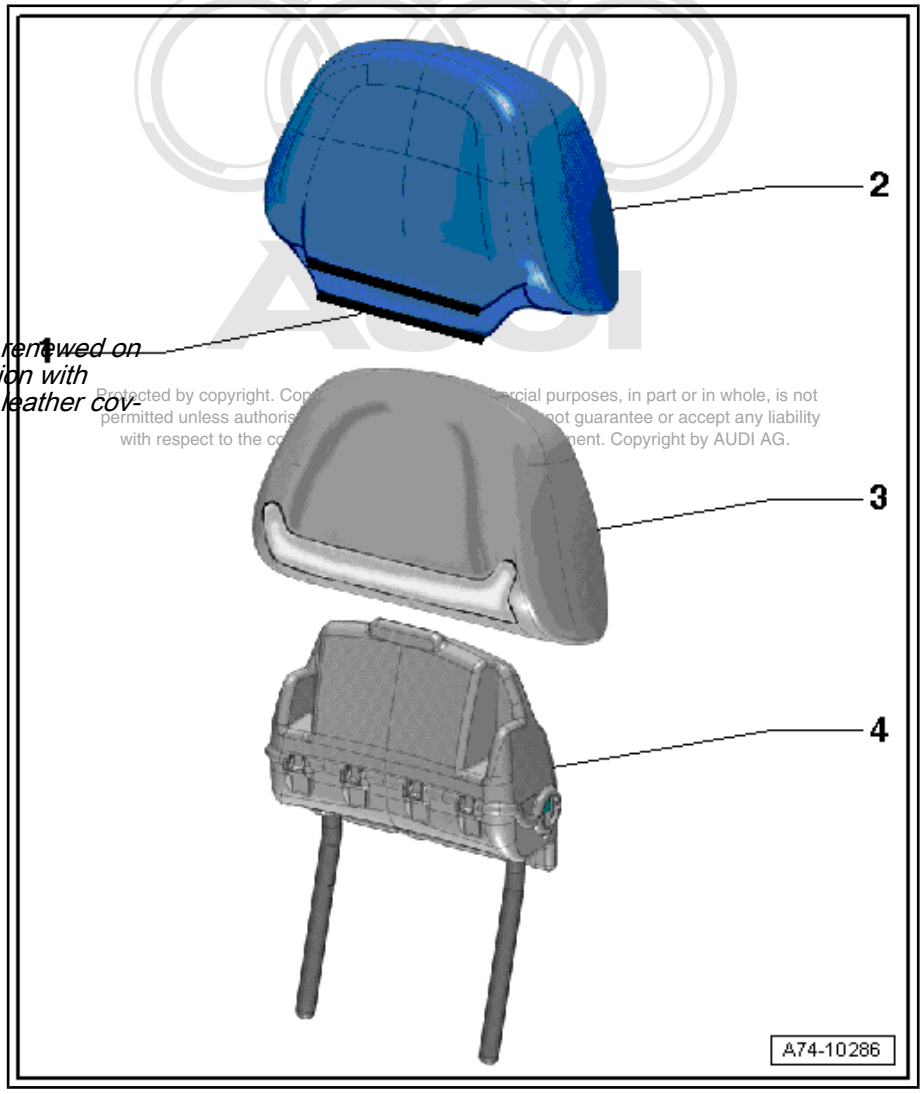
Note

The cover can only be renewed on the head restraint version with height adjustment and leather cover.

3 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 364

4 - Mounting bracket for head restraint



Protected by copyright. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Overview - seat heating elements

⇒ "1.4.1 Overview - seat heating elements, seat heating/backrest heating for equipment version with fabric cover", page 356

⇒ "1.4.2 Overview - seat heating elements, seat heating/backrest heating for equipment version with leather cover", page 357

1.4.1 Overview - seat heating elements, seat heating/backrest heating for equipment version with fabric cover

Note

The illustration shows the sports seat.

1 - Seat padding

- For seat depth adjustment
- For sports seat only
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Heating element for heated seat cushion for front left seat - Z45-

- Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front right seat - Z46-
- Renewing ⇒ page 367
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Heating element for heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

- Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- Renewing ⇒ page 369
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

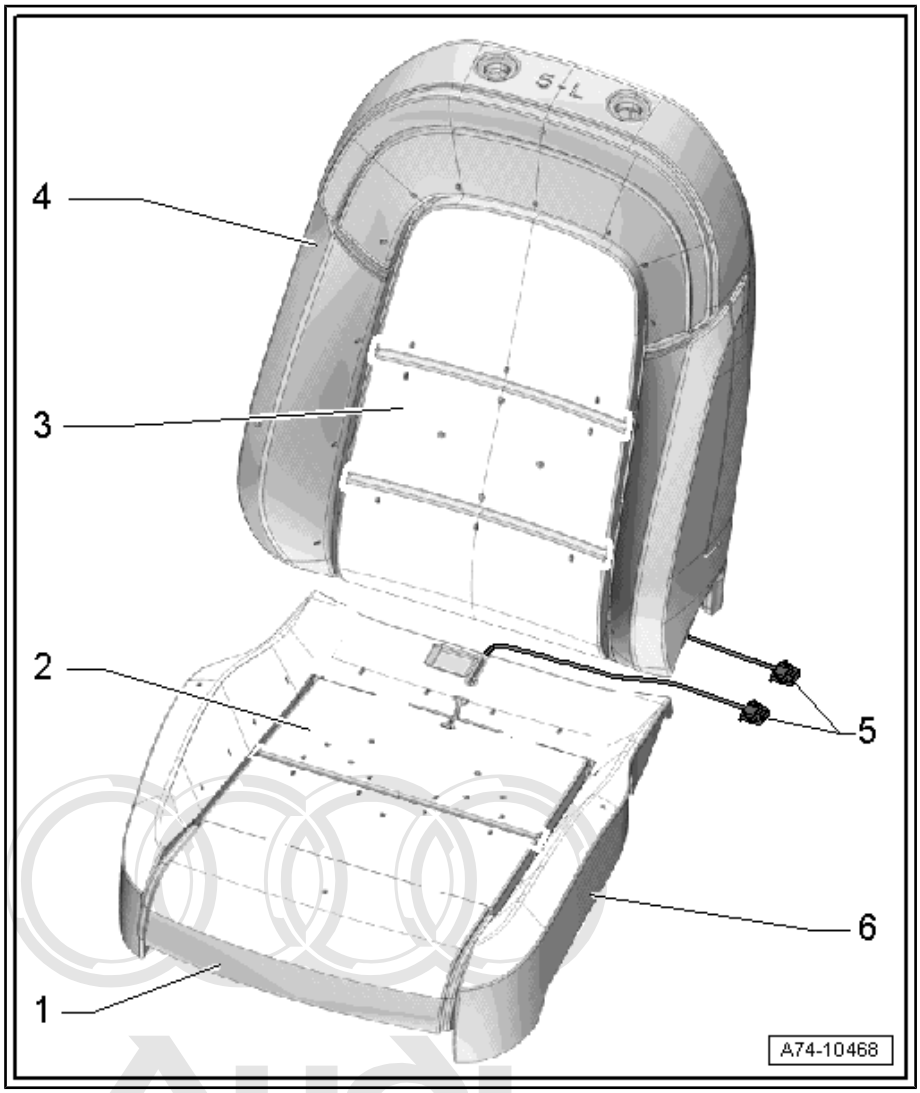
4 - Backrest padding

- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Electrical wiring

6 - Seat padding

- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.2 Overview - seat heating elements, seat heating/backrest heating for equipment version with leather cover

Note

The illustration shows the sports seat.

1 - Seat padding

- For seat depth adjustment
- For sports seat only
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Heating element for heated seat cushion for front left seat - Z45-

- Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front right seat - Z46-
- Renewing ⇒ page 368
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Heating element for heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

- Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- Renewing ⇒ page 370
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

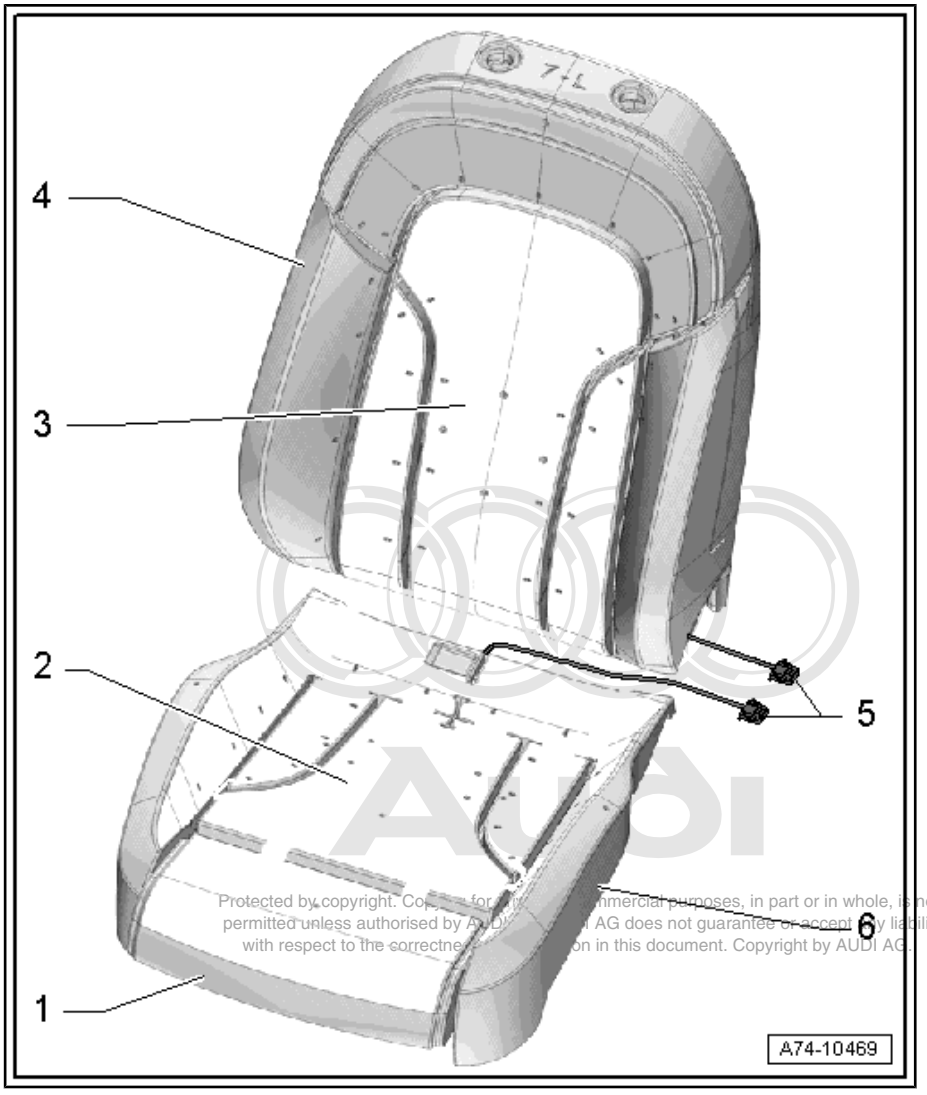
4 - Backrest padding

- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

5 - Electrical wiring

6 - Seat padding

- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding

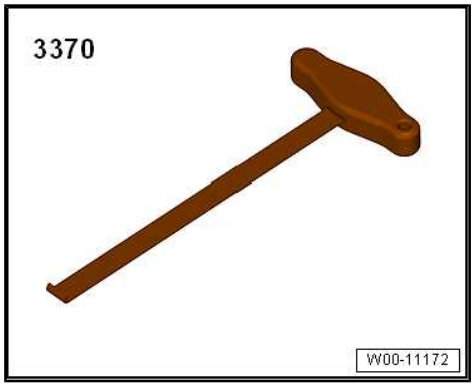
⇒ "1.5.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - standard seat/folding seat", page 357

⇒ "1.5.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - sports seat", page 359

1.5.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - standard seat/folding seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front-end hook - 3370-



Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .
– Remove backrest ⇒ page 301 .
– Equipment version with front passenger seat with child seat anchor: Remove child seat anchor ⇒ page 96 .
– Equipment version with drawer: Remove drawer ⇒ page 319 .
– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 319 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) with bracket:

- Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ page 312
- Folding seat ⇒ page 314
- Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 316

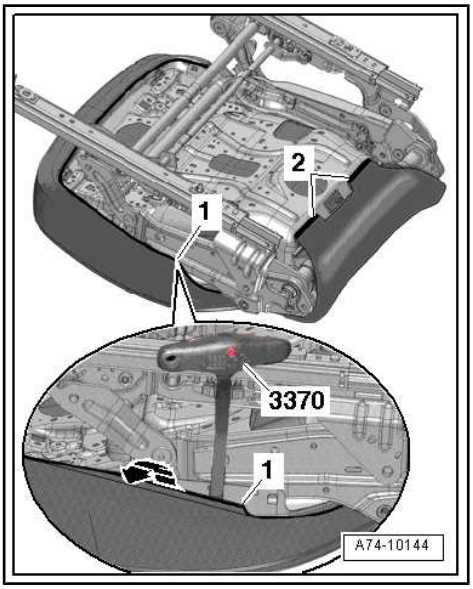
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connectors and move clear.

– Disengage piping -1- of seat cover using front-end hook - 3370- (front and side sections) -arrow-.

– Disengage piping -2- of seat cover using front-end hook - 3370- (rear section).

– Detach seat cover with padding from seat pan and at the same time move clear wiring harness for seat heating and seat occupied sensor (if fitted).



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat/folding seat", page 351

1.5.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - sports seat

Front-end hook - 3370-



Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Audi
The commercial purpose in part or in whole, is not allowed by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 302 .

– Remove mounting bracket with seat padding and cover for seat depth adjustment ⇒ page 320 .

– Equipment version with front passenger seat with child seat anchor: Remove child seat anchor ⇒ page 96 .

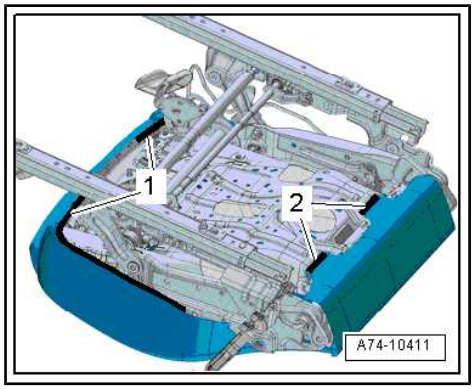
– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 319 .

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) with bracket:

♦ Sports seat with manual adjustment ⇒ page 312

♦ Sports seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 316

– Unplug electrical connectors and move clear.
– Disengage piping -1- from side and piping -2- from rear of seat cover using front-end hook - 3370- .
– Detach seat cover with padding from seat pan and at the same time move clear wiring harness for seat heating and seat occupied sensor (if fitted).



Note

(Plastic) mounting bracket of seat depth adjuster remains on seat padding.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Install in reverse order of removal.

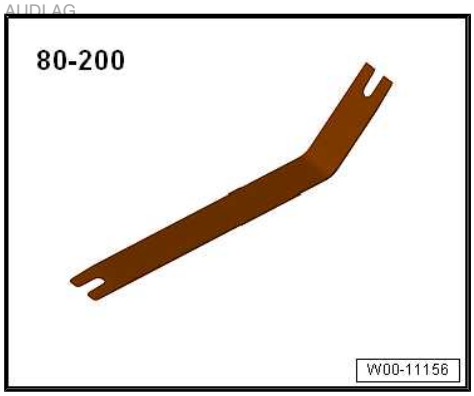
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat", page 353

1.6 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 278 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 246 .

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 301 .

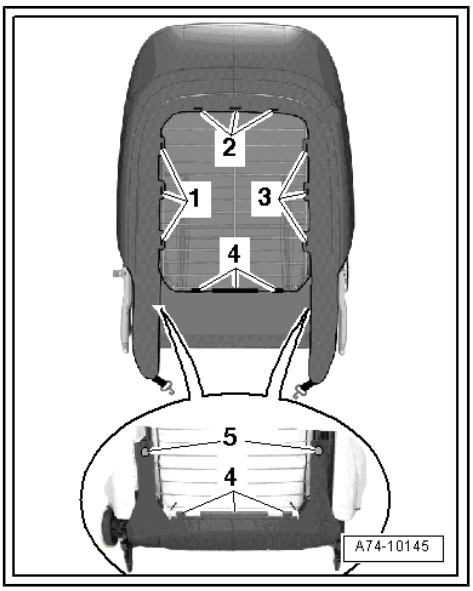
– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 308 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 301 .

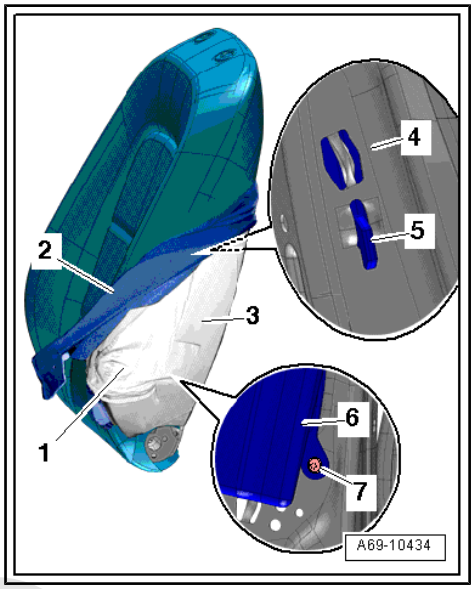
– Disengage piping -1 ... 4- on back of outer backrest frame.

– Release clips -5- for backrest cover at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80-200-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– In area of side airbag, carefully pull backrest cover -2- with backrest padding -3- forwards as far as possible until bolt -7- for side airbag is accessible.
– Remove bolt -7-.
– Disengage hook -5- of side airbag -6- from outer backrest frame -4- and leave in pouch -1- (sewn into cover).
– Take backrest cover and padding upwards off outer backrest frame, at the same time guiding out wiring harness for side airbag and wiring harness for backrest heating (if fitted).



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 278 .*

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding”, page 354

1.7 Separating seat pan cover and padding

⇒ “1.7.1 Separating seat pan cover and padding - standard seat/ folding seat”, page 362

⇒ “1.7.2 Separating seat pan cover and padding - sports seat”, page 363

Protected by copyright. Copying for private and commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7.1 Separating seat pan cover and padding - standard seat/folding seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

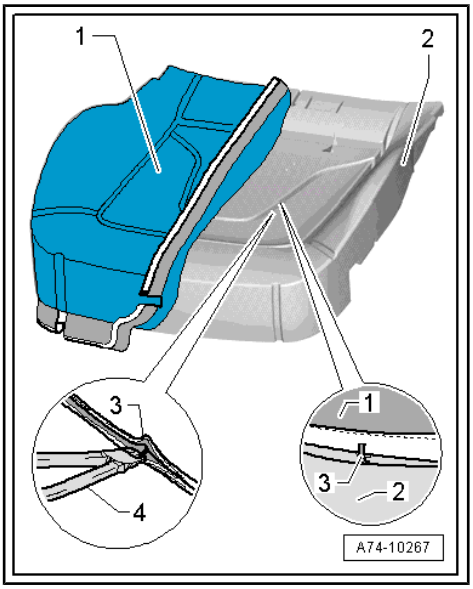
- Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

– Remove seat cover with padding for seat pan ⇒ page 357 .

– Detach seat cover -1- from rear and sides of seat padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -3- with pliers -4-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat/folding seat", page 351

1.7.2 Separating seat pan cover and padding - sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



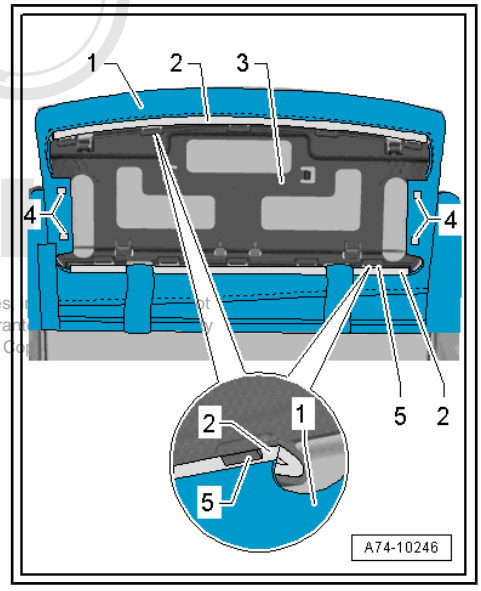
Removing

– Remove seat cover with padding for sports seat with seat depth adjustment ⇒ page 359 .

– Unclip fastening strips -2- from fasteners -5-.

– Disengage seat cover from tabs -4- on both sides.

– Pull mounting bracket -3- with seat padding for seat depth adjustment off seat cover -1-.



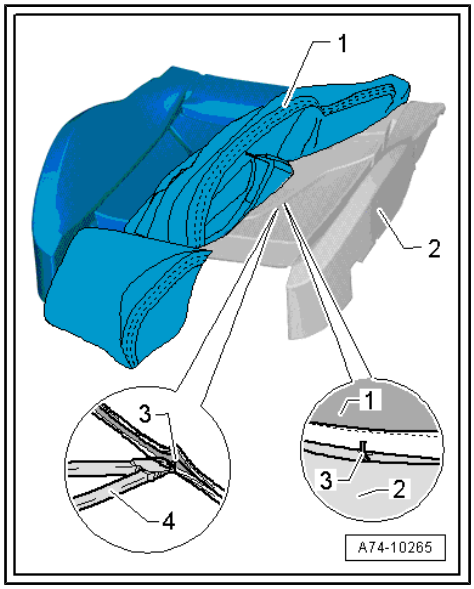
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Detach seat cover -1- from seat padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -3- with pliers -4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat", page 353



1.8 Separating backrest cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

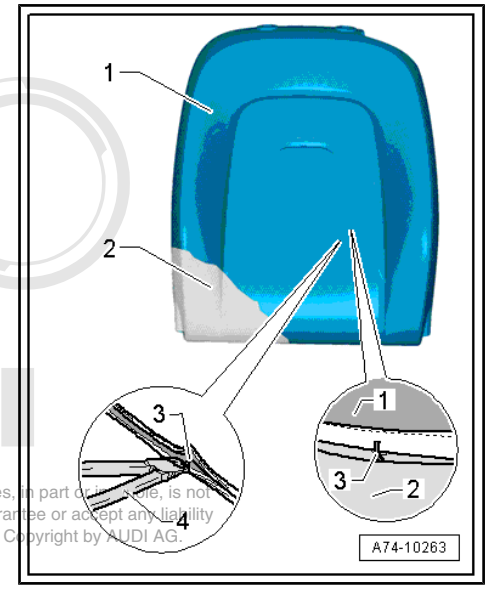
– Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ page 360 .

– Detach backrest cover -1- as far as possible from backrest padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -3- using pliers -4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding", page 354

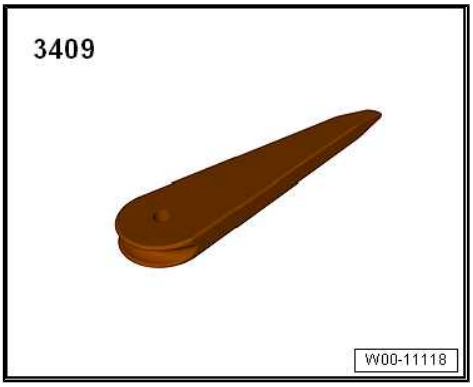


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.9 Removing and installing head restraint cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

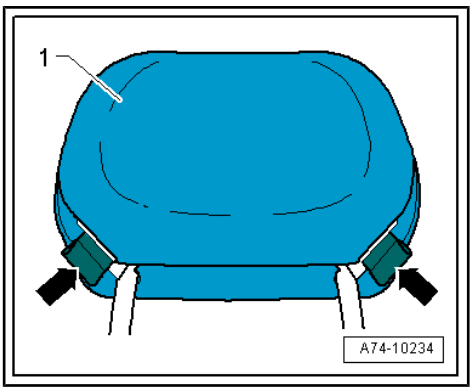
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 308 .

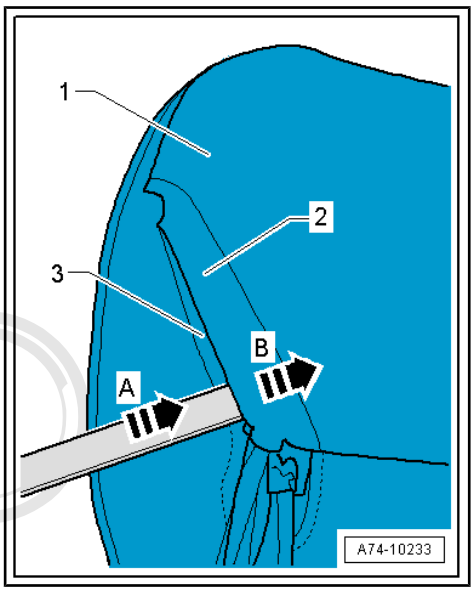
– Open side fasteners -arrows- on cover -1-.



– To do so, insert removal wedge - 3409- or a flat screwdriver in between fastening ring of cover -1- in direction of -arrow A-.

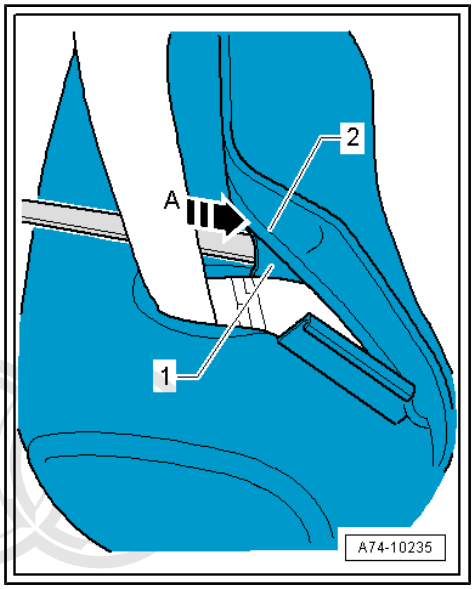
– Apply tension to bottom U-profile -3- in direction of -arrow B-.

– Pull upper side of cover with flat profile -2- out of U-profile.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Open main fastener by inserting removal wedge - 3409- or flat screwdriver in between fasteners for cover.
– Apply tension to bottom U-profile -1- in direction of -arrow A-.
– Pull upper side of cover with flat profile -2- out of U-profile -1-.



Note

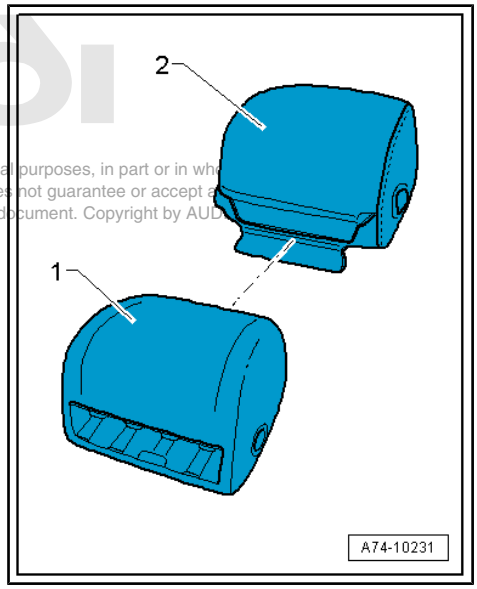
To take out padding cover must be fully open.

– Detach cover and padding from head restraint mounting bracket.

– Remove padding -1- from cover -2-.

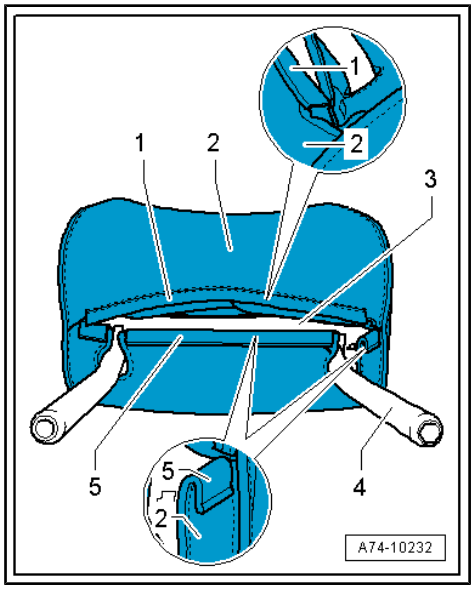
Installing

– Insert padding -1- in cover -2-, making sure it is correctly aligned.
– Insert head restraint mounting bracket in padding with cover.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Close main fastener by folding over upper flat profile -1- of cover -2-.
– Insert edge of fabric with flat profile into U-profile -5-.
– The procedure for closing the side fasteners is similar to that for closing the main fastener.
– After closing main fastener and side fasteners, use a needle or a pointed object to align cover and profiles.
– Make sure cover is positioned on padding -3- without creases or seam marks.



Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - head restraint cover and padding”, page 355

1.10 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8-

⇒ "1.10.1 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 , equipment version with fabric cover", page 367

⇒ "1.10.2 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 , equipment version with leather cover", page 368

1.10.1 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- , equipment version with fabric cover

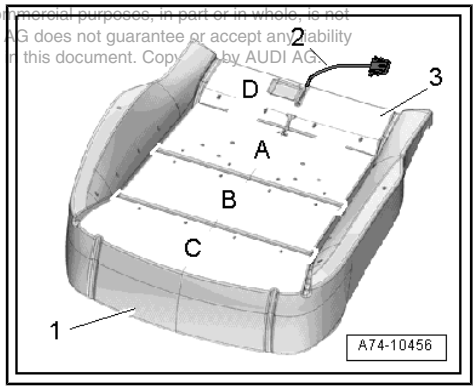
Procedure

– Separate seat cover and padding ⇒ page 362 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Standard seat and folding seat:

– Cut off electrical wire -2- directly at old heating element -3-.

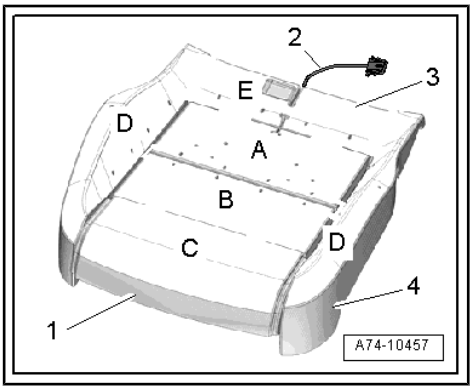


Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -1-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

Sports seat:

– Cut off electrical wire -2- directly at old heating element -3-.



Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -1- and -4-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

All seat versions (continued):

– Align new heating elements on seat padding.

– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases in the sequence -A, B, C, D, E-.

– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

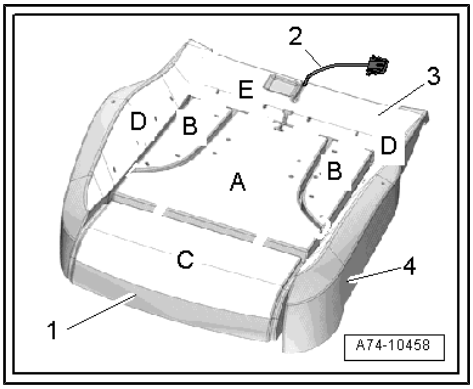
⇒ "1.4.1 Overview - seat heating elements, seat heating/backrest heating for equipment version with fabric cover", page 356

1.10.2 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- , equipment version with leather cover

Procedure

– Separate seat cover and padding ⇒ page 362 .

– Cut off electrical wire -2- directly at old heating element -3-.



Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -1- and -4-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

– Align new heating elements on seat padding.

– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases in the sequence -A, B, C, D, E-.

– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4.2 Overview - seat heating elements, seat heating/backrest heating for equipment version with leather cover”, page 357

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9-

⇒ "1.11.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 , equipment version with fabric cover", page 369

⇒ "1.11.2 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 , equipment version with leather cover", page 370

1.11.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- , equipment version with fabric cover

Procedure

– Separate backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 364 .

– Cut off electrical wire -1- directly at old heating element -2-.

Note

Leave old heating element on backrest padding -3- and cover it with new heating element.

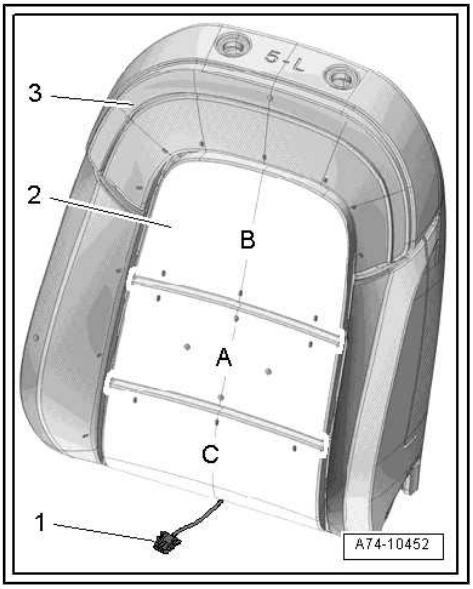
– Align new heating element on backrest padding.

– Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases in the sequence -A, B, C-.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.4.1 Overview - seat heating elements, seat heating/backrest heating for equipment version with fabric cover", page 356



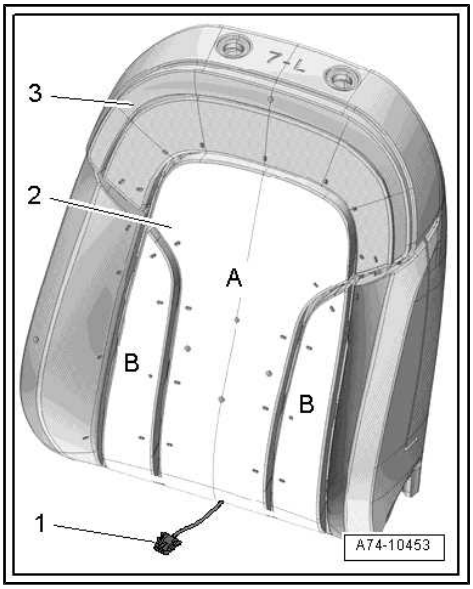
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.11.2 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- , equipment version with leather cover

Procedure

– Separate backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 364 .

– Cut off electrical wire -1- directly at old heating element -2-.



Note

Leave old heating element on backrest padding -3- and cover it with new heating element.

– Align new heating element on backrest padding.

– Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases in the sequence -A, B-.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4.2 Overview - seat heating elements, seat heating/backrest heating for equipment version with leather cover”, page 357

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Covers and padding on rear seats

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding”, page 371

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing cover and padding”, page 374

⇒ “2.3 Detaching cover from padding”, page 377

2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding

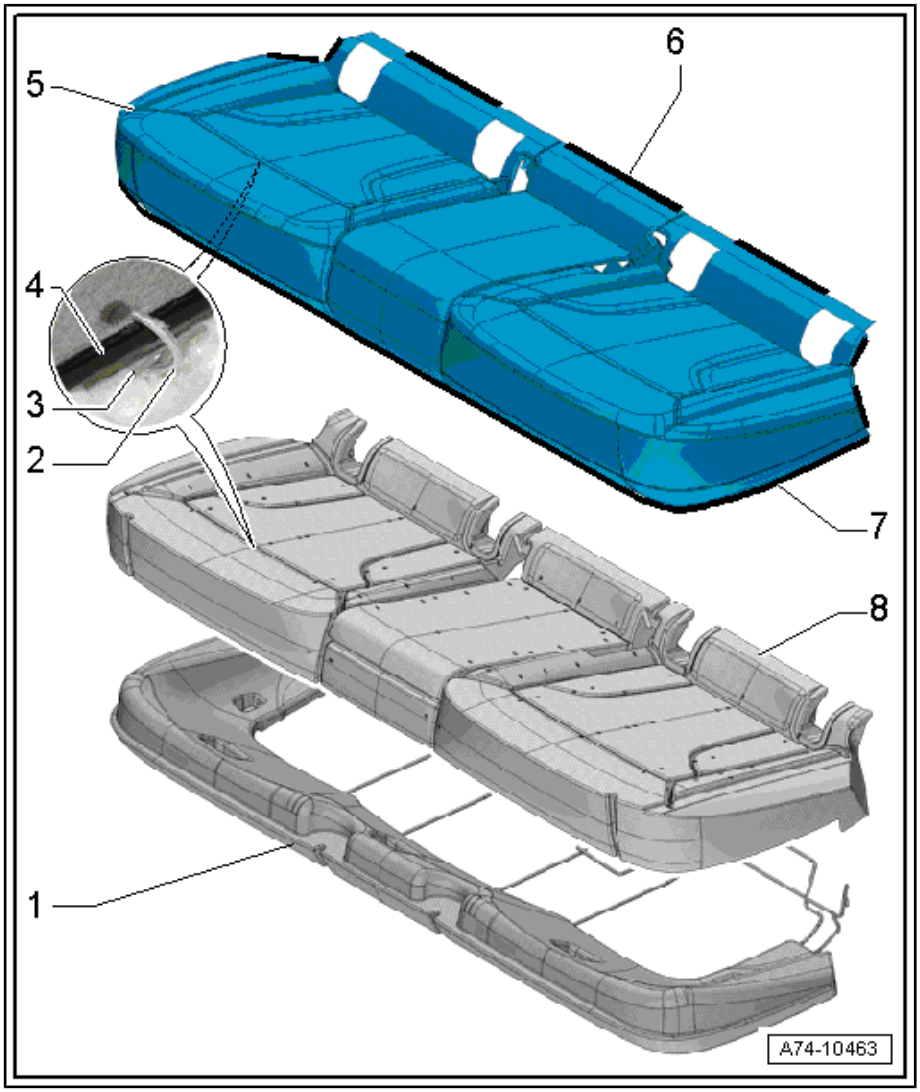
⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding”, page 371

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, backrest without load-through hatch”, page 372

⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, backrest with load-through hatch”, page 373

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding



1 - Seat frame

- ❑ With moulded section

2 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

3 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in seat padding
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

4 - Contour strip

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

5 - Seat cover

- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 374
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 377
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

6 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For engaging seat cover at seat frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat frame

7 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to seat cover
- ❑ For securing seat cover to seat frame
- ❑ Fold over inwards by 180° and engage in groove in moulded section ⇒ page 375

8 - Seat padding

- ❑ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ page 374
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 377
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2.1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, backrest without load-through hatch

Note

The exploded view refers to the 2/3 section (right-side) of the rear seat backrest. The 1/3 section (left-side) of the backrest is similar.

1 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 375
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 378
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

2 - Wire

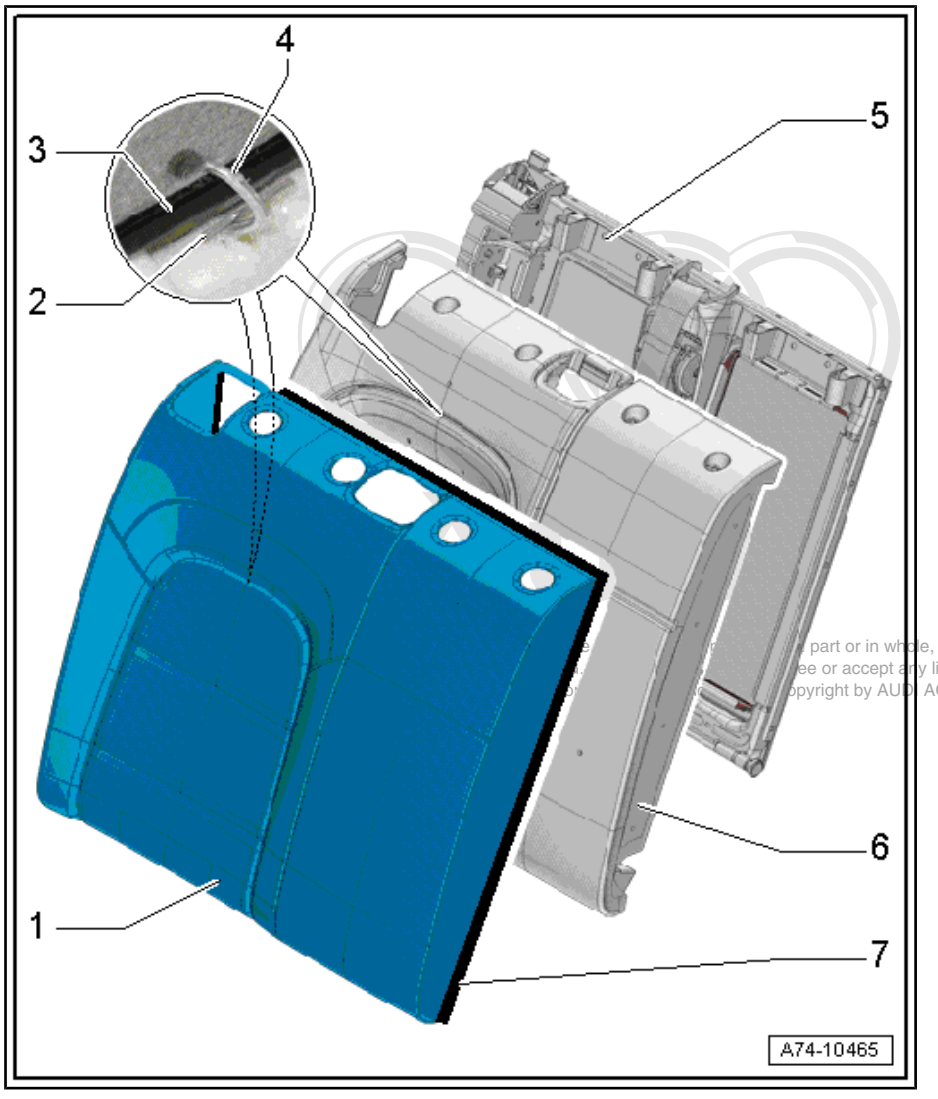
- ❑ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

3 - Contour strip

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

4 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing



part or in whole, is not
ee or accept any liability
opyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Outer backrest frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 375

6 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 375
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 378
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

7 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame

2.1.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, backrest with load-through hatch

1 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 375
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 378
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2 - Wire

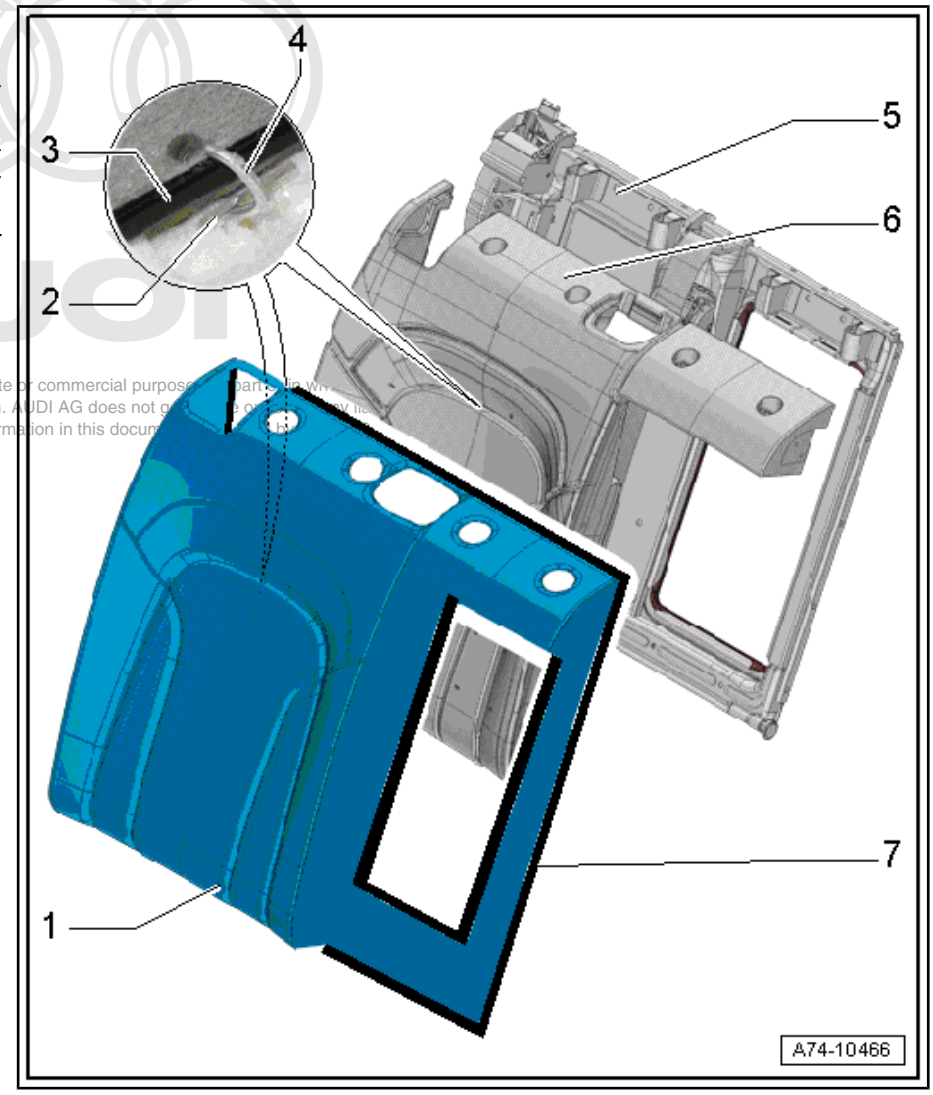
- ❑ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

3 - Contour strip

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover
- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

4 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing



5 - Outer backrest frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 375

6 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 375
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 378
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

7 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to backrest cover

❑ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame

2.2 Removing and installing cover and padding

⇒ “2.2.1 Removing and installing seat bench cover and padding”, page 374

⇒ “2.2.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding”, page 375

⇒ “2.2.3 Removing and installing intermediate padding”, page 377

2.2.1 Removing and installing seat bench cover and padding

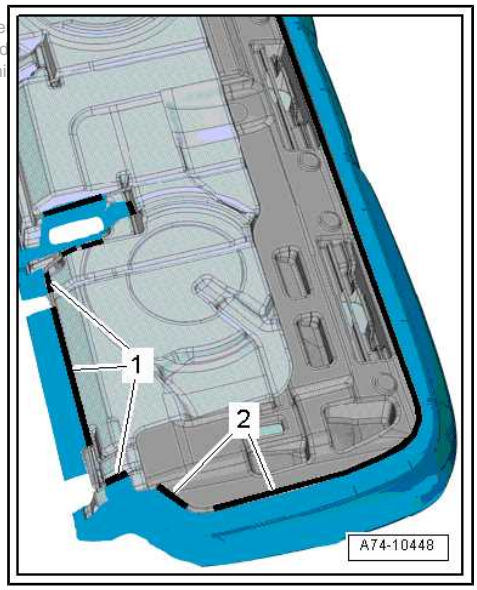
Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d
with respect to the correctness of information in thi

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 340.

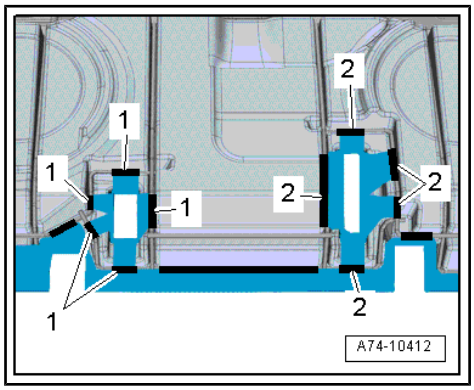
– Using a screwdriver, prise fastening strip -2- of seat cover off moulded section all along seat frame.

– Disengage piping -1- of seat cover along seat frame (rear section).



– Disengage piping -1- and -2- of seat cover at openings for belt buckles in seat padding.

– Detach seat cover with seat padding from seat frame.



Installing

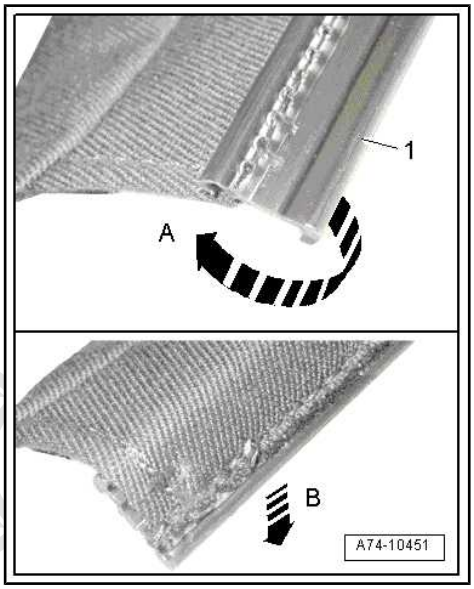
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– First engage piping at rear of seat frame, and then pull seat cover so it is taut.

– Fold fastening strip -1- around inwards -arrow A- by 180°.

– Engage fastening strip in groove in moulded section -arrow B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding", page 371



2.2.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 342.

– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 340.

– Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ page 346 .

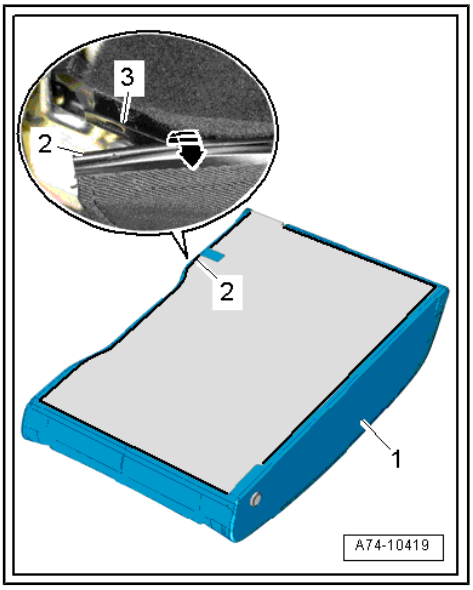
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1/3 section of rear seat backrest (left-side):

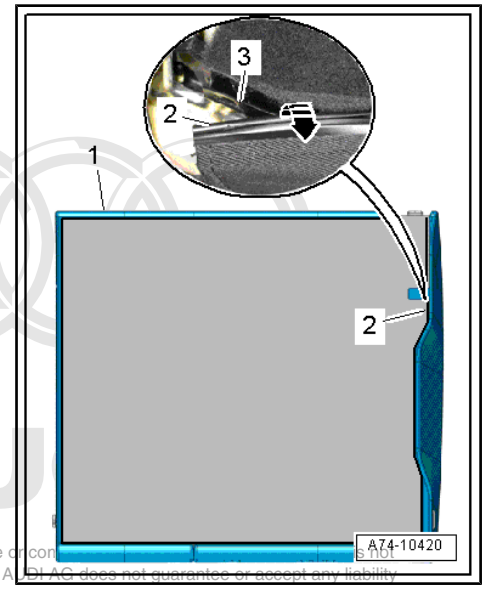
– Starting at locking mechanism, prise fastening strip -2- for backrest cover off outer backrest frame -3- all around -arrow- using a screwdriver.

– Remove head restraint guides (rear) ⇒ page 341 .

– Detach backrest cover -1- with backrest padding from outer backrest frame.



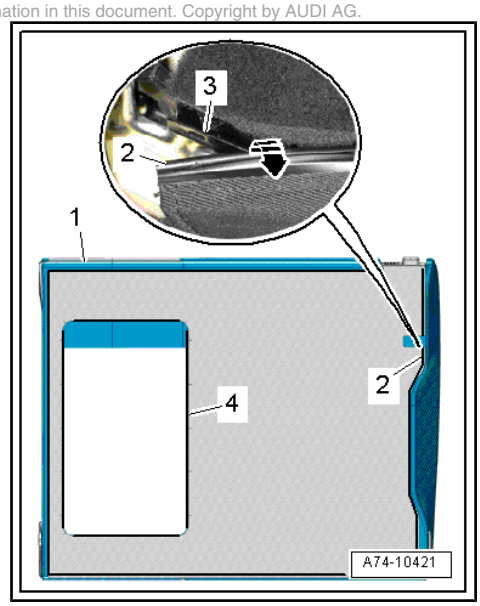
2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side):



- Remove centre belt guide (rear) ⇒ page 86 .
- Starting at locking mechanism, prise fastening strip -2- for backrest cover off outer backrest frame -3- all around -arrow- using a screwdriver.
- Remove head restraint guides (rear) ⇒ page 341 .
- Detach backrest cover -1- with backrest padding from outer backrest frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

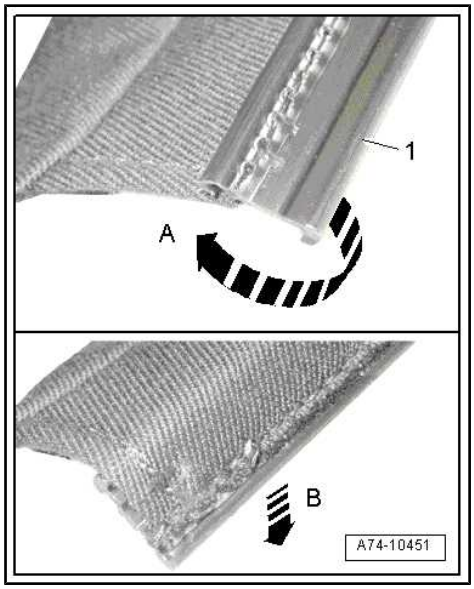
2/3 section (right-side) of rear seat backrest with load-through hatch:



- Remove centre belt guide (rear) ⇒ page 86 .
- Remove centre armrest (rear) with flap for load-through hatch ⇒ page 348 .
- Remove trim frame for load-through hatch ⇒ page 347 .
- Starting at locking mechanism, prise fastening strip -2- for backrest cover off outer backrest frame -3- all around -arrow- using a screwdriver.
- Using a screwdriver, prise fastening strip -4- for backrest cover off load-through hatch all around.
- Remove head restraint guides (rear) ⇒ page 341 .
- Detach backrest cover -1- with backrest padding from outer backrest frame.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

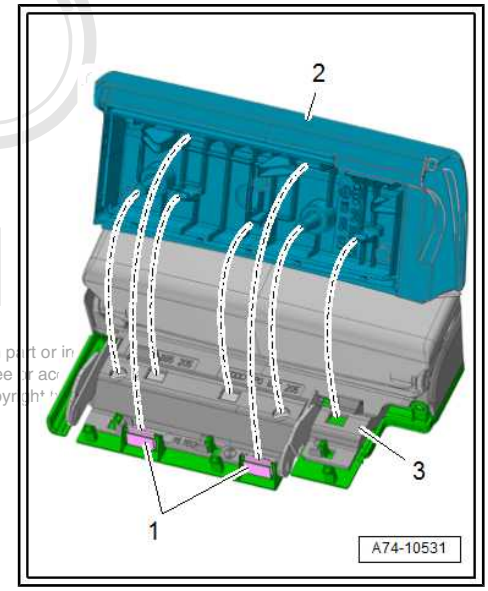


- Fold fastening strip -1- around inwards -arrow A- by 180°.
- Engage fastening strip in groove in outer backrest frame -arrow B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, backrest without load-through hatch", page 372

2.2.3 Removing and installing intermediate padding

Removing



– Place one hand under the intermediate padding.
– Pull intermediate padding -2- sharply out of clips -1- towards front.
– Disengage other retaining hooks -3- on load-through hatch and remove intermediate padding.

Note

For illustration purposes, the load-through hatch is shown after removal.

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee for acc
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on intermediate padding until it engages audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 339

2.3 Detaching cover from padding

⇒ “2.3.1 Detaching seat bench cover from padding”, page 377

⇒ “2.3.2 Detaching backrest cover from padding”, page 378

2.3.1 Detaching seat bench cover from padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

– Remove rear seat bench ⇒ page 340 .

– Remove cover with padding for rear seat bench ⇒ page 374 .

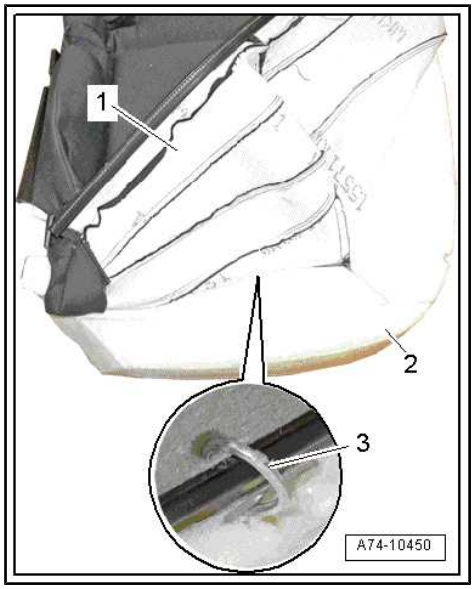
– Detach seat cover -1- as far as possible from padding -2- and use pliers to cut through upholstery clips -3-.

– Detach seat cover from padding.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

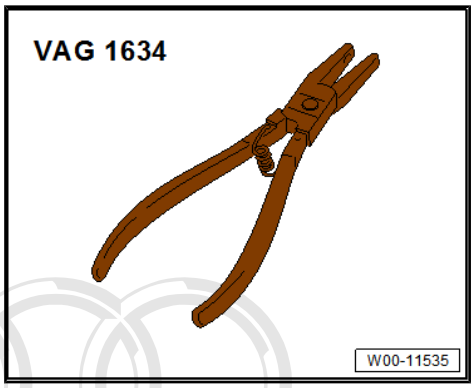
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding", page 371



2.3.2 Detaching backrest cover from padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 342 .

– Remove backrest cover with padding for rear seat backrest ⇒ page 375 .

– Detach backrest cover -1- as far as possible from backrest padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -3- using pliers.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU
with respect to the correctness of informati

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, backrest without load-through hatch", page 372

